

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
Central Archaeological Library  
Archaeological Survey of India  
JANPATH, NEW DELHI

3397

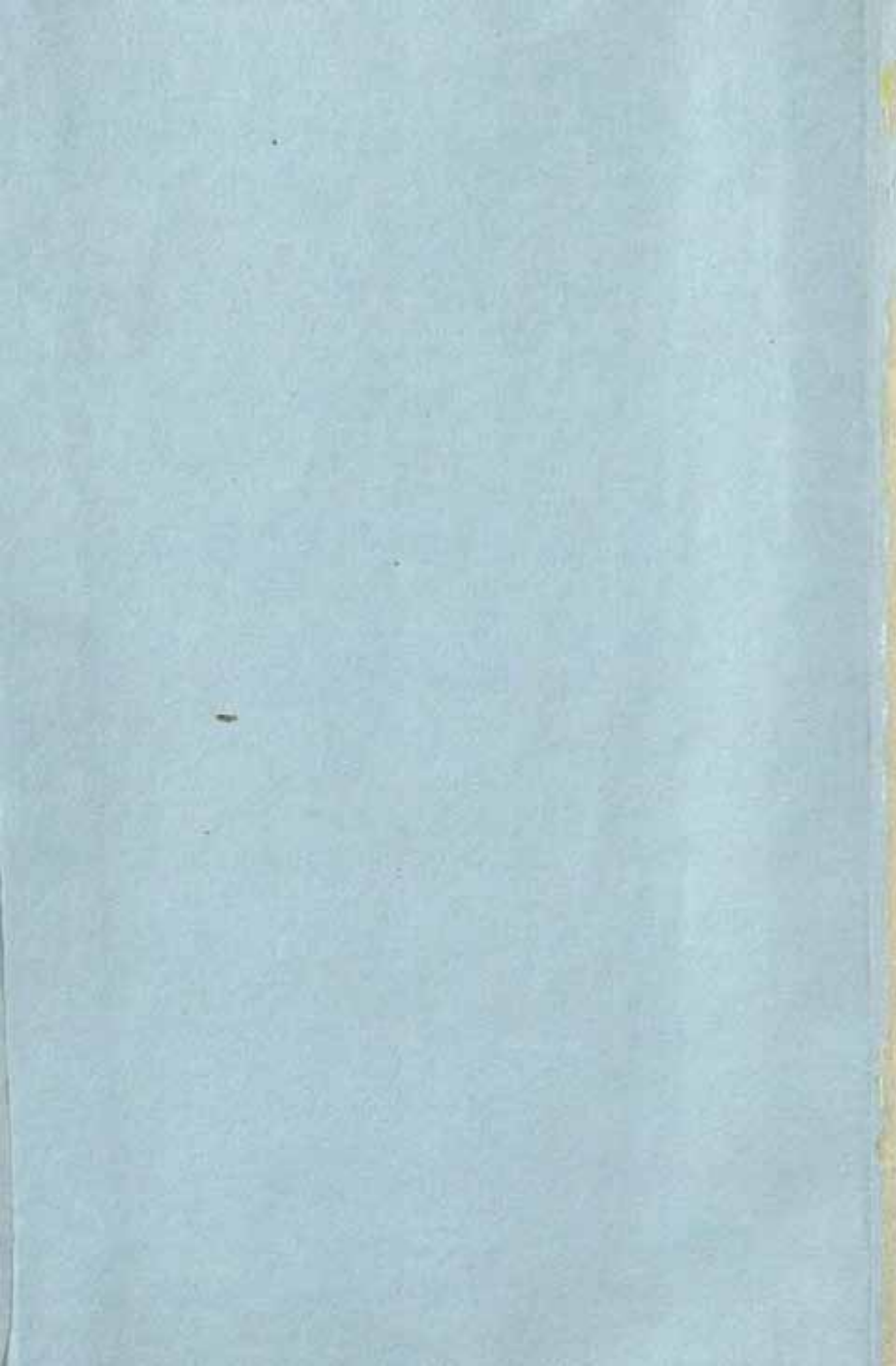
Accession No.

929.79995

Call No.

LAN





THE  
MOHAMMADAN  
DYNASTIES

CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL  
TABLES WITH HISTORICAL  
INTRODUCTIONS

BY  
STANLEY LANE-POOLE



3397

LIBRAIRIE ORIENTALISTE  
PAUL GEUTHNER

13, RUE JACOB-PARIS VI-e

1925

129.79995

Lam



IMPRIME EN ALLEMAGNE

92/53  
K. L. Mukherjee  
P. L. Calcutta  
10/10/92

## PREFACE

THE following Tables of Mohammadan Dynasties have grown naturally out of my twenty years' work upon the Arabic coins in the British Museum. In preparing the thirteen volumes of the *Catalogue of Oriental and Indian Coins* I was frequently at a loss for chronological lists. Prinsep's *Useful Tables*, edited by Edward Thomas, was the only trustworthy English authority I could refer to, and it was often at fault. I generally found it necessary to search for correct names and dates in the Arabic historians, and the lists of dynasties prefixed to the descriptions of their coins in my *Catalogue* were usually the result of my own researches in many Oriental authorities. It has often been suggested to me that a reprint of these lists would be useful to students, and now that the entire *Catalogue* is published I have collected the tables and genealogical trees in the present volume.

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 3397  
Date 13. 9. 55  
Call No. 929. 79995/Lan.

The work is, however, much more than a reprint of these tables. I have not only verified the dates and pedigrees by reference to the Arabic sources and added a number of dynasties which were not represented in the Catalogue of Coins, but I have endeavoured to make the lists more intelligible by prefixing to each a brief historical introduction. These introductions do not attempt to relate the internal history of each dynasty: they merely show its place in relation to other dynasties, and trace its origin, its principal extensions, and its downfall; they seek to define the boundaries of its dominions, and to describe the chief steps in its aggrandisement and in its decline. In the space at my command these facts could only be stated with the utmost brevity, but in the absence of any similar attempt to arrange, define, and explain the relative positions and successions of all the Mohammedan Dynasties in every part of the Muslim world, I hope the manual may be useful to students of history. To the collector of Arabic coins and

Saracenic antiquities I know, from personal experience, that it will be practically indispensable.

The plan I have followed is to arrange the dynasties in geographical order, beginning with Spain, which first threw off the control of the Caliphs of Baghdād. From the extreme west of the kingdoms of Islām I gradually work eastwards, till the end is reached in India and Afghānistān. Certain deviations from the strict geographical order are explained as they arise (see p. 107). Each dynasty has its historical introduction, a chronological list of its princes, and (when necessary) a genealogical tree. The years of the Christian era are given as well as those of the Hijra,\* and when the latter occur in the introductory notices they are distinguished by italic

\* The Hijra date is of course the more exact, as it is derived from Arabic historians; whilst the date A.D. is merely *the year in which that Hijra year began*, and does not necessarily correspond with it for more than a few months. The correspondence is near enough, however, for practical purposes; and a reference to the conversion tables in my *Catalogue of Indian Coins* will render it more precise. When the Hijra year began at the close of the Christian year the following year A.D. is given.



type. Beneath each chronological list is given [in square brackets] the name of the succeeding dynasty.

The two synoptic Tables of the Moḥammadan Dynasties, (1) during and (2) after the Caliphate, will give a general idea of their relative positions, and roughly indicate the comparative extent of their dominions. The numismatist will find almost all the coin-striking dynasties within the limits of time assigned; and the Oriental student in general may find this map of the Moḥammadan Empire instructive in its rough delineation of the relative territorial extent of the various dynasties, its assignment of each dynasty to its proper geographical position in the Muslim world, and its attempt to indicate the interweaving of the several houses and the supplanting of one by another in the various kingdoms and provinces of the East. It is interesting to trace the gradual absorption of the vast empire of the Caliphs from the opposite quarters of Africa and the Oxus provinces. We see how the



Omayyads of Cordova were the first to divide the authority of the head of the religion, and then how the Idrīsids, Aghlabids, Ṭulūnids, Ikhshīdids, Fāṭimids, and many others, destroyed the supremacy of the ‘Abbāsīd Caliphs of Baghdād in their Western provinces; and how, meanwhile, the Persian dynasties of Ṭāhirids, Ṣaffārīds, Sāmānīds, Ziyārīds, and Buwayhīds gradually advanced from the Oxus nearer and nearer to the City of Peace, until, when the Buwayhīds entered Baghdād on Dec. 19, 945, the Caliph ruled little more than his own palace, and often could not even rule there. Then a fresh change comes over the scene. The Turkish tribes begin to overrun the Moḥammadan Empire. The Ghaznawīds establish themselves in Afghānistān, and the Seljūks begin their course of conquest, which carries them from Herāt to the Mediterranean, and from Bukhārā to the borders of Egypt. When the Seljūk rule comes to be divided among many branches of the family, and division brings its invariable con-

sequence of weakness, we find several dynasties of Atābegs, or generals of Seljūkiān armies, springing up in the more western provinces of Syria and Diyār-Bakr and Al-'Irāk, whilst the Shāh of Khwārizm founds further East a wide empire, which increases with extraordinary rapidity, and eventually includes the greater part of the countries conquered by the Seljūks as well as that portion of Afghānistān which the Ghaznawids, and after them the Ghōrids, had subdued to their rule. And then comes the greatest change of all. The Mongols come down from their deserts and carry fire and sword over the whole eastern Moḥammadan Empire; the Turkish slaves, or Mamlūks, of Saladin found their famous dynasty in Egypt; the Berber houses of Marīn and Ziyān and Ḥafṣ are established along the north coast of Africa; and the Christians are rapidly recovering Andalusia from the Moors, who had given it so much of its beauty and renown. And here the epoch is chosen for beginning the second table, which begins at

the Mongol invasion and brings the history down to the present day.

Vertically the tables are divided under the headings of the chief divisions of the Mohammadan Empire. The various dynasties have been placed as nearly as possible, not only under their proper geographical head, but in the proper portion of the space allotted to that head: but the difficulties of arrangement and the necessity of economizing space have brought about a certain number of exceptions. The Turkish and Mongol tribes who wandered in Siberia, Turkistān, Kipchak, etc., are altogether omitted, because no exercise of ingenuity availed to provide a convenient place for them.

Horizontally the tables are divided, though the lines are not ruled through, into centuries, an inch representing one hundred years. The date of the beginning is taken at A.H. 41, the year of the foundation of the Omayyad Caliphate, because the Mohammadan Empire



was scarcely organized until this house came into power, and it would have been very difficult to indicate in any satisfactory manner the tide of Muslim conquest with its flow and ebb. Where space permits the names of a few leading kings and caliphs are inserted in the space allotted to their dynasty, especially when such names are familiar to European students.

In the orthography of Oriental names I have thought it best to be precise and consistent, except in some instances of names which have been adopted into the English language and cannot now be amended. Every letter of the Arabic and Persian alphabet is represented as a rule by one character, as shown in the table on p xix. The final *h*, which has an inflexional use, is omitted, since it serves no purpose in Roman writing: but it must be remembered that every name ending in short *a* (as -Baṣra, but not *ā* as Ṣan'ā) has a final *h* in Arabic. To indicate the elision of the *l* in the article *al* before certain letters, (as *d*, *s*, *r*),

the *l* is printed in italic type: thus 'Abd-al-Raḥmān is to be pronounced 'Abd-ar-Raḥmān.\* The *l* is retained (though not pronounced) because it is so written in Arabic. On the other hand I omit the article altogether *before* a name. All the Caliphs and a multitude of other dynasts have names with the prefixed *al*, and a considerable saving of space and some added clearness is gained by omitting it. To show, however, that the article is to be used in the original I retain the hyphen: thus -Ḥākim stands for Al-Ḥākim. The only sign not generally employed by Orientalists is the Greek colon (·) which I use to denote the quiescent *hamza* in the middle of a word: as -Ma'mūn, where there is a catch in the breath between the *a* and *m*.

To students who are not Orientalists, and who wish to be accurate without elaboration in the orthography of

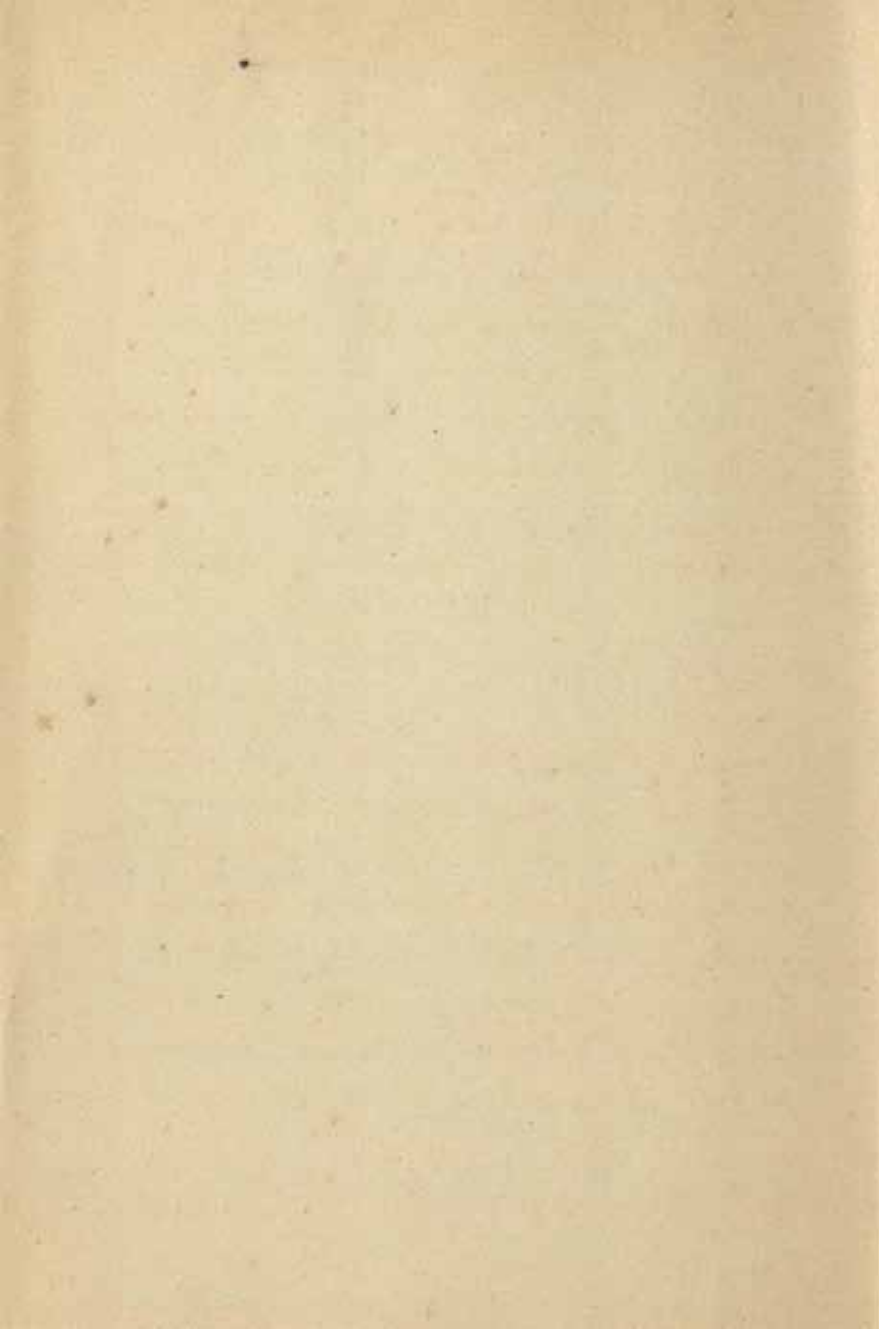
\* If the inflexion of the Arabic is to be reproduced the name would be 'Abdu-r-Raḥmān, and would require to be modified in accordance with its government in the sentence; but this would be carrying accuracy to an extreme of pedantry.



of the Faith,' were prefixed to the proper name; and adjectives or participles such as *Al-Manşūr* 'the victorious,' *Al-Sa'id* 'the Fortunate,' *Al-Rashīd* 'the Orthodox,' were appended to the title *Khalīfa* (caliph) or *Malik* (king). Thus we find the caliph Hārūn *al-Rashīd*, 'the Orthodox,' or 'rightly-directed,' caliph Aaron; and Saladin's full title was *Al-Malik Al-Nāşir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf b. Ayyūb*, 'The Victorious\* King, Redresser of the Faith, Joseph son of Job.' In the case of compound names such as these, the owner is generally called either by the participial title *Al-Nāşir*, *Al-Manşūr*, *Al-Rashīd*, etc., or by the laqab with the termination *al-dīn* ('of the Faith') or *al-dawla* ('of the State'), etc. Thus the brother of Saladin is known both as *Al-Ādil*, 'the Just [King]' and as *Sayf-al-dīn*, 'Sword of the Faith.' On the other hand the Atābegs of *Al-Mōşil* are generally cited by both

\* Lit. 'Helping': one who helps the religion of Islām by his victories.





the proper name and the epithet, as 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd; though the epithet by itself is sufficient. As a general rule the first name given in the chronological lists (omitting the patronymic Abū-such an one) may be used to designate the ruler, to the exclusion of the rest. When there are several similar titles it is better to add the proper name: for instance there are eight Al-Manṣūrs among the Mamlūk Sulṭāns, and it is necessary to distinguish them as Al-Manṣūr Kalā'ūn, Al-Manṣūr Lājīn, etc.

To give a list of the authorities I have used in compiling the lists of dynasties and historical notices would involve publishing a catalogue of an Orientalist's library. I have referred to all the leading Arabic historians, consulted special histories, and derived considerable help from articles in the Asiatic and numismatic journals. Where I am specially indebted to a particular author I refer to his work in a footnote. The coins, however, are the backbone of the book and the



historian's surest documents, and upon them I have relied throughout.

In a work abounding in names and figures it would be strange if misprints and mistakes did not occur. I shall be grateful to any scholar who will convict me of error; for those who 'serve tables' know the danger and annoyance of even slight inaccuracy.

S. L.-P.

THE ATHENÆUM,  
1st October, 1893.



TABLE OF TRANSLITERATION

ا	.	ض	d
ب	b	ط	t
پ	p	ظ	z
ت	t	ع	'
ث	th	غ	gh
ج	j	ف	f
چ	ch	ق	k
ح	h	ک	k
خ	kh	گ	g
د	d	ل	l
ذ	dh	م	m
ر	r	ن	n
ز	z	ه	h
س	s	و	w
ش	sh	ی	y
ص	ṣ		

VOWELS

ا	a (rarely e)	آ	ā	او	aw (rarely ō)
و	u (rarely o)	و	ū	ای	ay
ی	i	ی	ī		

## PREFACE (1925)

---

The original edition of this work, published in London by Messrs. Constable in 1893, has long been out of print, and the present reproduction is in response to requests from professors and students of oriental history and numismatics, not only in Europe, but especially in the United States of America. The photographic process by which it is now produced does not admit of additions or corrections in the text; otherwise some of the results of the researches of Prof. Sachau, Sir E. Denison Ross, Sir T. Wolseley Haig, and others, particularly in reference to some minor dynasties in Asia Minor, northern Persia, and the Deccan, would have been included. I can only hope that, unrevised, the book may continue to be useful.

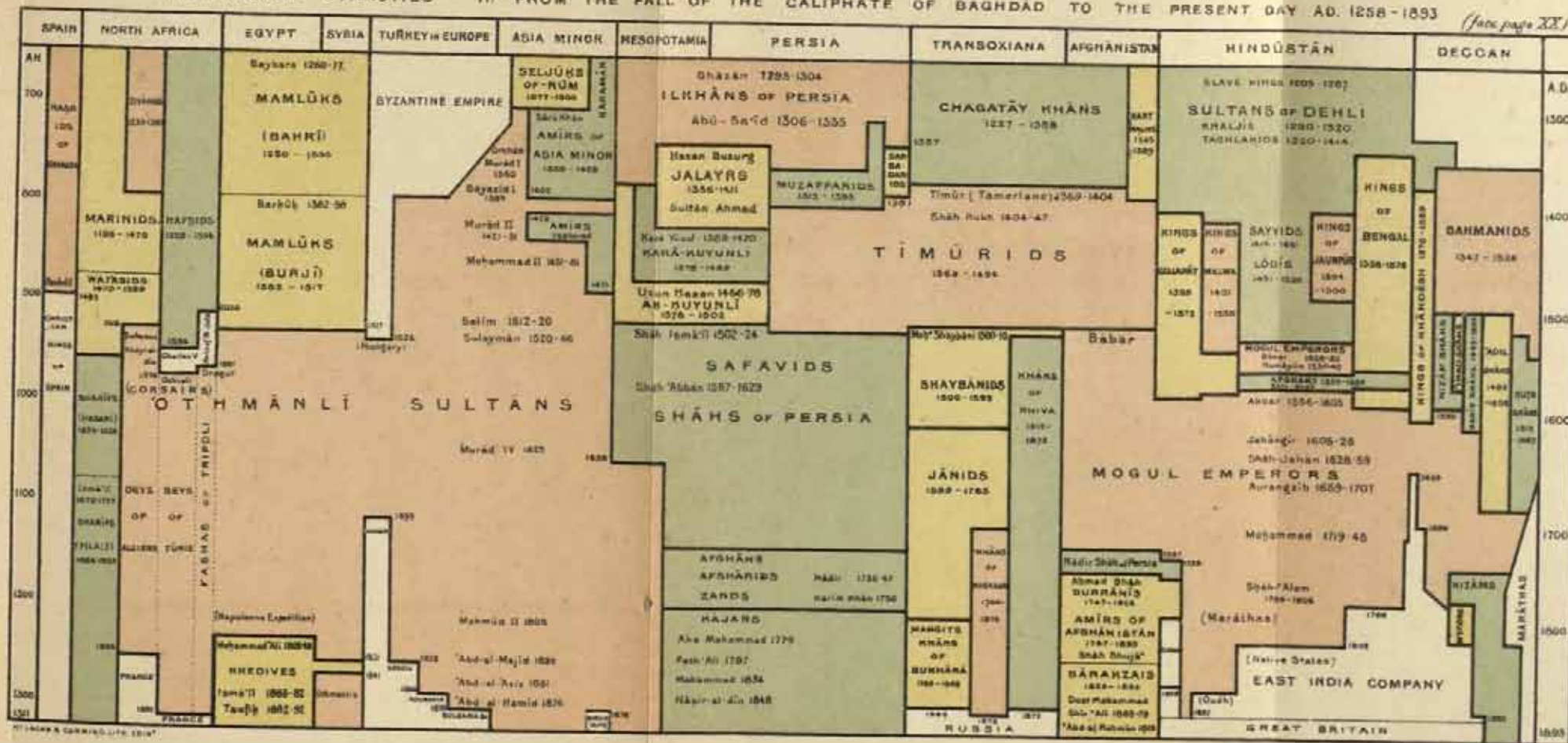
10 Brompton Square,  
London, S.W.  
1. August, 1925.

STANLEY LANE-POOLE.

# MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES

## II. FROM THE FALL OF THE CALIPHATE OF BAGHDAD TO THE PRESENT DAY AD. 1258-1893

(face page XX)





# CONTENTS

---

PREFACE		v
<i>Table of Dynasties during the Caliphate</i>		<i>face xviii</i>
<i>Table of Dynasties after the Caliphate</i>		<i>face xx</i>
 THE CALIPHS	SÆC. VII—XIII	 1
Orthodox		9
Omayyads		9
<i>Table of Connexion of Lines of Caliphs</i>		10
<i>Genealogy of Omayyads</i>		11
'Abbāsids		12
<i>Genealogy of 'Abbāsids</i>		14
 SPAIN	SÆC. VIII—XV	 16
Omayyads of Cordova		21
<i>Genealogy</i>		22
 MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES (REYES DE TALPAS)		 23
Hammūdids (Malaga)		23
<i>Genealogy</i>		24



Ḥammūdids (Algeciras)	25
‘Abbādids (Seville)	25
Zayrids (Granada)	25
Jahwarids (Cordova)	25
Dhū-l-Nūnids (Toledo)	25
‘Āmirids (Valencia)	26
Tojibids (Zaragoza)	26
Hūdids (Zaragoza)	26
Denia, Kings of	26
Naṣrids (Granada)	28
<i>Genealogy</i>	29
 NORTH AFRICA      SEC. VIII—XIX	 31
Idrisids (Morocco)	35
Aghlabids (Tunis)	36
<i>Genealogy</i>	38
Zayrids (Tunis)	40
Ḥammādids (Algiers)	40
Almoravides (Morocco, Algiers, Spain)	41
<i>Genealogy</i>	44
Almohades (North Africa, Spain)	45
<i>Genealogy</i>	48
Ḥafṣids (Tunis)	49
<i>Genealogy</i>	52
Ziyānids (Algiers)	51
<i>Genealogy</i>	54
Corsairs	55
Marinids (Morocco)	57
<i>Genealogy</i>	59
Sharifs (Morocco)	60
<i>Genealogy</i>	62

# CONTENTS

xxiii

EGYPT AND SYRIA	SÆC. IX—XIX	65
Ṭūlūnids . . . . .		68
Ikhshidids . . . . .		69
Fātimids . . . . .		70
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		72
Ayyūbids . . . . .		74
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	<i>face</i>	76
Mamlūks . . . . .		80
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		82
Khedives . . . . .		84
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		85
ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)	SÆC. IX—XVIII	87
Ziyādids (Zabīd) . . . . .		90
Yaʿfurids (Ṣanʿā and Janad) . . . . .		91
Najābids (Zabīd) . . . . .		92
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		93
Ṣulayḥids (Ṣanʿā) . . . . .		94
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		94
Hamdānids (Ṣanʿā) . . . . .		95
Mahdids (Zabīd) . . . . .		96
Zurayʿids (ʿAden) . . . . .		97
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		97
Ayyūbids . . . . .		98
Rasūlids . . . . .		99
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		100
Ṭāhirids . . . . .		101
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .		101
Rasīd Imāms (Saʿda) . . . . .		102
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	<i>face</i>	102
Imāms of Ṣanʿā . . . . .		103

SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA (Arab Period)	SÆC. X—XII	105
<i>Classification of Asiatic Dynasties</i>		107
<i>Arab tribes</i>		109
Ḥamdānids (-Mōṣil, Aleppo)		111
<i>Genealogy</i>		113
Mirdāsids (Aleppo)		114
<i>Genealogy</i>		115
'Oḡaylids (-Mōṣil, etc.)		116
<i>Genealogy</i>	face	116
Marwānids (Diyār-Bakr)		118
<i>Genealogy</i>		118
Mazyadids (-Ḥilla)		119
<i>Genealogy</i>		120
PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA (Persian Period)	SÆC. IX—XI	121
Dulafids (Kurdistān)		125
<i>Genealogy</i>		125
Sājids (Adharbījān)		126
'Alids (Ṭabaristān)		127
Ṭāhirids (Khurāsān)		128
<i>Genealogy</i>		128
Šaffārids (Persia)		129
Sāmānids (Transoxiana and Persia)		131
<i>Genealogy</i>		133
Īlak Khāns (Turkistān)		134
Ziyārids (Jurjān)		136
<i>Genealogy</i>		137
Hasanwayhids (Kurdistān)		138
Buwayhids (S. Persia and -'Irāk)		139
<i>Geographical distribution</i>		143
<i>Genealogy</i>		144
Kākwayhids (Kurdistān)		145
<i>Genealogy</i>		145

# CONTENTS

XXV

## THE SELJÜKS (Western Asia) S.M.C. XI—XII . . . 147

<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	<i>face</i> 152
Great Seljüks . . . . .	153
Seljüks of Kirmān . . . . .	153
Seljüks of Syria . . . . .	154
Seljüks of -Irāk and Kurdistan . . . . .	154
Seljüks of -Rūm (Asia Minor) . . . . .	155
Dānishmandids (Asia Minor) . . . . .	156

## THE ATĀBEGS (Seljūk Officers) S.M.C. XII—XIII . . . 157

Bārīds (Damascus) . . . . .	161
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	161
Zangīds (Mesopotamia and Syria) . . . . .	162
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	164
Begtiginids (Arbela) . . . . .	165
Ortūqīds (Diyār-Bakr) . . . . .	166
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	169
Armenia, Shāhs . . . . .	170
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	170
Adharbījān, Atābegs. . . . .	171
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	171
Salgharīds (Fārs) . . . . .	172
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	173
Hazāraspīds (Lūrīstān) . . . . .	174
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	175
Khwarizm Shāhs . . . . .	176
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	178
Ḳutlugh Khāns (Kirmān) . . . . .	179
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	180



## THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX . . . . .	181
Amirs of Asia Minor . . . . .	face 184
'Othmānī Sultāns . . . . .	186
<i>Table of growth and decay of the Ottoman Empire</i> . . . . .	190
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	196
THE MONGOLS SÆC. XIII—XVIII . . . . .	199
<i>Sketch-tree of Mongol Dynasties</i> . . . . .	206
Great Khāns . . . . .	207
Ogotāy's line . . . . .	207
Tulāy's line . . . . .	211
<i>Genealogy of Great Khāns</i> . . . . .	face 216
Mongols of Persia . . . . .	217
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	221
Golden Horde . . . . .	222
Bātā's line (Blue Horde) . . . . .	224
Orda's line (White Horde) . . . . .	226
Rival Families . . . . .	229
<i>Table</i> . . . . .	232
Khāns of the Krim (Crimea) . . . . .	233
Shaybān's line (Czars of Tiumen, etc.) . . . . .	236
<i>Genealogy of the House of Jāī</i> . . . . .	face 240
Chagutāy Khāns (Transoxiana) . . . . .	241
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	face 242
PERSIA SÆC. XIV—XIX . . . . .	243
Jalayrs (-'Irāk, etc.) . . . . .	246
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	248
Muḥaffarids (Fārs, etc.) . . . . .	249
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	250

# CONTENTS

xxvii

Sarbadārīds (Khurāsān) . . . . .	251
Karta (Herāt) . . . . .	252
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	252
Ḳarā-Ḳuyunlī (Black Sheep Turkomāns) . . . . .	253
Āḳ-Ḳuyunlī (White Sheep Turkomāns) . . . . .	254
Shāhs of Persia . . . . .	255
Ṣafavīds . . . . .	259
Afghāns . . . . .	259
Afshārīds . . . . .	259
Zands . . . . .	260
Ḳājārs . . . . .	260
<i>Genealogies</i> . . . . .	261-2
 TRANSOXIANA    S.ÆC. XIV—XIX . . . . .	263
Timūrīds . . . . .	265
<i>Table of the descendants of Timūr</i> . . . . .	face 268
<i>Table of connexion of the Transoxian Khānates</i> . . . . .	269
Shaybānīds . . . . .	270
Sub-dynasties of Bukhārā and Samarḳand . . . . .	272
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	273
Jānīds . . . . .	274
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	276
Mangīts . . . . .	277
Khiva, Khāns of . . . . .	278
Khoḳand, Khāns of . . . . .	280
 INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN    S.ÆC. X—XIX . . . . .	281
Ghaznawīds (Afghānistān and Panjāb) . . . . .	285
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	290
Ghōrīds (Afghānistān, Hindūstān) . . . . .	291
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	face 294

Sultāns of Dehlī (Hindūstān) . . . . .	295
Slave Kings . . . . .	299
Khaljīs . . . . .	299
Taghlakids . . . . .	300
Sayyids . . . . .	300
Lōdis . . . . .	300
Afghāns . . . . .	300
<i>Genealogies</i> . . . . .	301-3
PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA . . . . .	304
Governors and Kings of Bengal . . . . .	305
Sharḡi Kings of Jaunpūr . . . . .	309
Kings of Mālwa . . . . .	310
Kings of Gujarāt . . . . .	312
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	314
Kings of Khāndēsh . . . . .	315
Bahmanids (Kulbarga, etc.) . . . . .	316
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	319
‘Imād Shāhs (Berār) . . . . .	320
Nizām Shāhs (Aḥmadnagar) . . . . .	320
Barid Shāhs (Bīdar) . . . . .	321
‘Ādil Shāhs (Bijāpūr) . . . . .	321
Ḳuṭb Shāhs (Golkonda) . . . . .	321
Mogul Emperors of Hindūstān . . . . .	322
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	329
Amīrs of Afghānistān . . . . .	330
Durrānīs . . . . .	334
Bārakzais . . . . .	334
<i>Genealogy</i> . . . . .	335
Index to Rulers . . . . .	337

## I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

1. ORTHODOX

2. OMAYYADS

3. 'ABBĀSIDS





## I. THE CALIPHS

### SÆC. VII—XIII

ON the death of the Prophet Moḥammad in A.D. 632, in the eleventh year after his Flight (Hijra, 622) from Mecca to -Medīna, his father-in-law Abū-Bakr was elected head of the Muslims, with the title of *Khalīfa* or Caliph ('successor'). Three other Caliphs, 'Omar, 'Othmān, and 'Alī, were similarly elected in turn, without founding dynasties, and these first four successors are known as the Orthodox Caliphs (*Al-Khulafā Al-Rāshidūn*). On the murder of 'Alī in 661 (A.H. 40), Mo'āwiya, a descendant of Omayya of the Prophet's tribe of the Quraysh, assumed the Caliphate, and founded the dynasty of the *Omayyad Caliphs*, fourteen in number, whose capital was Damascus. In 750 (132) this dynasty was supplanted (except in Spain) by that of the *Abbāsid Caliphs*, numbering thirty-seven, descended from 'Abbās, an uncle of the Prophet, and having Baghdād (founded 762, 145) as their capital. The 'Abbāsid Caliphate at Baghdād was exterminated by the Mongol Hūlāgū in 1258 (656). A line of their descendants, the *Abbāsid Caliphs of Egypt*, held a shadowy spiritual dignity

at Cairo, until the last of the house was carried to Constantinople by the Ottoman Sulṭān Salīm I., after the conquest of Egypt in 1517, and surrendered his title of Caliph to the conqueror.

At the accession of the first Caliph, Abū-Bakr, the rule of Islām comprised no territory outside Arabia; but during his brief reign of two years the tide of Moḥammadan conquest had already begun to swell. In 633 (12) the Battle of the Chains, followed by other victories, admitted the Muslims into Chaldaea (-'Irāk -'Arabī), and gave them the city of -Hīra. In 634 (13) the Battle of the Yarmuk opened Syria to their arms; Damascus fell in 635 (14); Emesa, Antioch, and Jerusalem in 636; and the conquest of Caesarea completed the subjugation of Syria in 638 (17). Meanwhile the victory of Kādīsīya in 635 (14) was followed by the conquest of Madā'in (Seleucia-Ctesiphon), the old double capital of Chaldaea, 637 (16); Mesopotamia was subdued, and the cities of -Basra and -Kūfa founded; and Khūzistān and Tustar were annexed in 638-40. The decisive Battle of Nahawand in 642 (21) put an end to the Sāsānid dynasty, and gave all Persia to the Muslims. By 661 (41) they were at Herāt, and soon carried their arms throughout Afghānistān and as far as the Indus, where they established a government in

Sind. In 674 (54) they occupied Bukhārā, and two years later Samarkand, but these early raids in Transoxiana were not converted into settled conquests until 711 (93). On the East the Caliphate had reached its utmost limits in little more than forty years after the Muslims first led a campaign outside Arabia.

On the West their progress was slower. In 641 (20) Egypt was conquered, and by 647 (26) the Barbary coast was overrun up to the gates of Roman Carthage; but the wild Berber population was more difficult to subdue than the luxurious subjects of the Sāsānids of Persia or the Greeks of Syria and Egypt. Ḳayrawān was founded as the African capital in 670 (50); Carthage fell in 693 (74), and the Arabs pushed their arms as far as the Atlantic. From Tangier they crossed into Spain in 710 (91), and the conquest of the Gothic kingdom was complete on the fall of Toledo in 712. Southern France was overrun in 725, and in spite of Charles the Hammer's victory near Tours in 732 (114), the Muslims continued to hold Narbonne and to ravage Burgundy and the Dauphiné. Thus in the West the Caliphate attained its widest extent within a century after its commencement.

To the North, the Greeks retained Anatolia, which



never belonged to the Caliphate, but the Muslims invaded Armenia, and reached Erzerûm about 700. Cyprus had been annexed as early as 649 (28), and Constantinople was several times besieged from 670 (50) onwards.

Thus the empire of the Caliphs at its widest extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abd-al-Rahmân, a member of the suppressed Omayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in 755 (138), and the 'Abbâsid Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idris, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Ali, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbāsids and Omayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco, with Tudgha for its capital, 788 (172). The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Kayrawân in 800 (184). In the following century, Egypt, together with Syria, attained independence under the rule of Ibn-Ṭūlūn, by the year 877 (264). It is true that after the collapse of the Ṭūlūnids, governors were again appointed over Syria and Egypt by the 'Abbâsid Caliphs for thirty years; but in 934 (323) -Ikhsîd founded

his dynasty, and thenceforward no country west of the Euphrates ever recognized the temporal authority of the Caliphs of Baghdād, though their spiritual title was generally acknowledged on the coins and in the public prayer (*khuṣṣa*), except in Spain and Morocco.

In the East, the disintegration of the 'Abbāsid empire proceeded with equal rapidity. The famous general of -Ma'mūn, Ṭāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, on being appointed Viceroy of the East in 819 (204), became to most intents independent; and his house, and the succeeding dynasties of the Saffārids, Sāmānids, and Ghaznawids, whilst admitting the spiritual lordship of the Caliphs, reserved to themselves all the power and wealth of the eastern provinces of Persia and Transoxiana. From the middle of the ninth century the 'Abbāsids had fallen more and more under the baneful influence of mercenary Turkish bodyguards and servile *maires du palais*; and the absorption of the whole of their remaining territory by the Buwayhids, who occupied even the 'City of Peace,' Baghdād itself, in 945 (334), was little more than a change in their alien tyrants. From this date the Caliphs merely held a court, but governed no empire, until their extinction by the Mongols in 1258 (656). Occasionally, however, as in the Caliphate of -Nāṣir, they

extended their authority outside the palace walls, and even ruled the whole province of Arabian -'Irāk (Chaldaea).

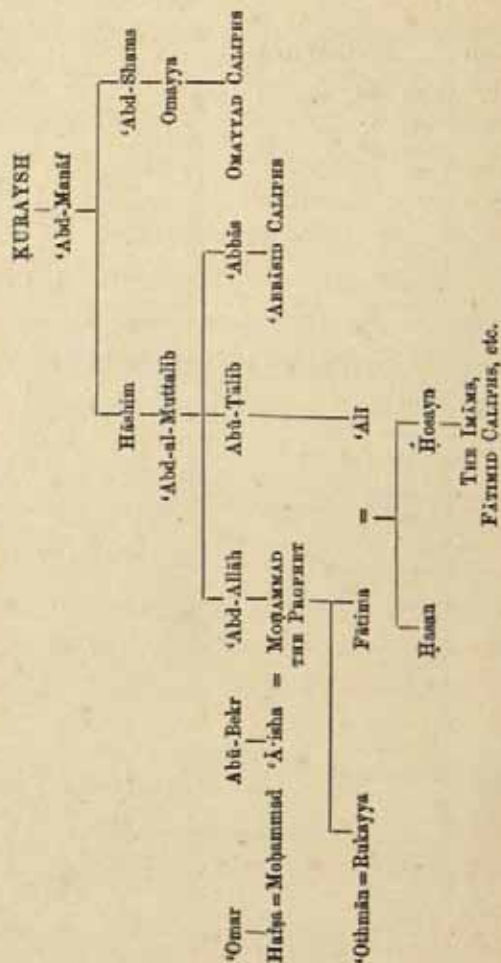
In classifying the dynasties which thus absorbed the 'Abbāsid empire, a geographical system is both natural and convenient. Beginning with the earliest secession, Spain, the dynasties of Andalusia and North Africa are placed first; those of Egypt and Syria come next; then follow the Persian and Transoxiane dynasties; whilst those of India, which spread over a dominion never subdued to the Caliphate, are placed last. In dealing with the Persian and Syrian sections, however, the geographical arrangement is necessarily modified, since the wide sweep of the Seljūks and Mongols temporarily obliterated the older divisions and formed fresh starting points in the dynastic history. The relative positions, both geographical and chronological, of the various dynasties are shown in the table prefixed to the volume.

A.H.		A.D.
11—40	1. ORTHODOX CALIPHS	632—661
11	Abū-Bakr . . . . .	632
13	‘Omar . . . . .	634
23	‘Othmān . . . . .	644
35	‘Alī . . . . .	656
—40		—661
[Succeeded by Omayyads.]		

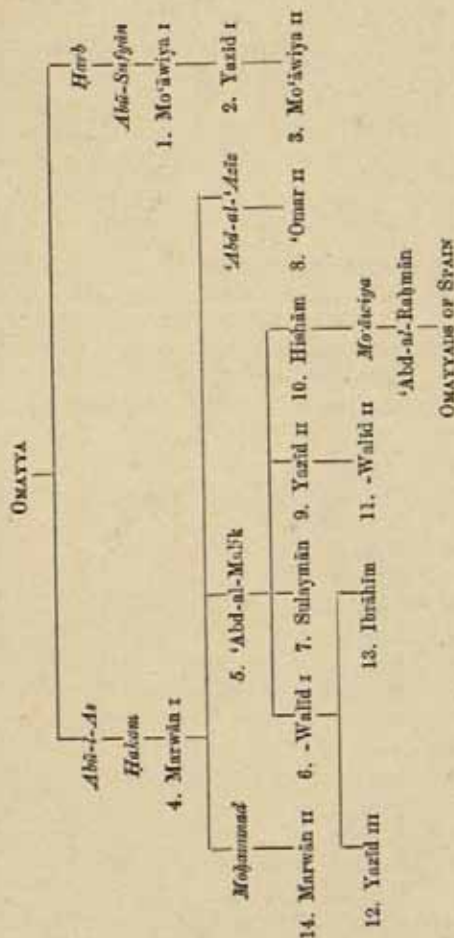
A.H.		A.H.
41—132	2. OMAYYAD CALIPHS	661—750
41	Mo‘āwiya I . . . . .	661
60	Yazīd I . . . . .	680
64	Mo‘āwiya II . . . . .	683
64	Marwān I . . . . .	683
65	‘Abd-al-Malik . . . . .	685
86	Walid . . . . .	705
96	Sulaymān . . . . .	715
99	‘Omar . . . . .	717
101	Yazīd II . . . . .	720
105	Hisham . . . . .	724
125	Walid II . . . . .	743
126	Yazīd III . . . . .	744
126	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	744
127	Marwān II . . . . .	744
—132		—750
[‘Abbasids; Omayyads of Cordova]		



## CONNECTION OF THE LINES OF CALIPHS



## OMAYYAD CALIPHS



A.H.		A.D.
132—656	3. 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS	750—1258
132	-Saffāh . . . . .	750
136	-Maṣṣūr . . . . .	754
158	-Mahdī . . . . .	775
169	-Hādī . . . . .	785
170	-Rashīd . . . . .	786
193	-Amīn . . . . .	809
198	-Ma'mūn . . . . .	813
218	-Mu'taṣim . . . . .	833
227	-Wāthiq . . . . .	842
232	-Mutawakkil . . . . .	847
247	-Muntaṣir . . . . .	861
248	-Musta'in . . . . .	862
251	-Mu'tazz . . . . .	866
255	-Muhtadī . . . . .	869
256	-Mu'tamid . . . . .	870
279	-Mu'tadid . . . . .	892
289	-Muḳtafi . . . . .	902
295	-Muḳtadir . . . . .	908
320	-Kāhir . . . . .	932
322	-Rāḍī . . . . .	934
329	-Muttakī . . . . .	940
333	-Mustakfi . . . . .	944
334	-Muṭi' . . . . .	946
363	-Ṭā'i' . . . . .	974
381	-Kādir . . . . .	991
422	-Kā'im . . . . .	1031
467	-Muḳtadī . . . . .	1075
487	-Mustaḡhir . . . . .	1094
512	-Mustarshid . . . . .	1118
529	-Rashid . . . . .	1135

530	-Muḩtafi	.	.	.	.	.	.	1136
555	-Mustanjid	.	.	.	.	.	.	1160
566	-Mustaḩi	.	.	.	.	.	.	1170
675	-Nâsir	.	.	.	.	.	.	1180
622	-Zâhir	.	.	.	.	.	.	1225
623	-Mustanşir	.	.	.	.	.	.	1226
640	-Musta'şim	.	.	.	.	.	.	1242
—656								—1258

[*Idriside, Aghlabide, Tûlûnide, Tûkiride, Şaffûride, Buwayhids,*  
*ḩamdânide, Ghaznawide.*]

## ‘ABBĀSID CALIPHS

‘Abbās

‘Abd-Allāh

‘Alī

Moḥammad  
 ‘Abd-Allāh  
 Mūsā  
 Sulaymān

Ibrāhīm  
 1. -Saʿīd  
 2. -Manṣūr  
 3. -Mahdī

4. -Hādī  
 5. -Rashīd  
 6. -Amin  
 7. -Marʾūn  
 8. -Muʿtaṣim  
 9. -Wāthiq  
 10. -Mutawakkil

Ibrāhīm  
 (rival Caliph, 202-3)

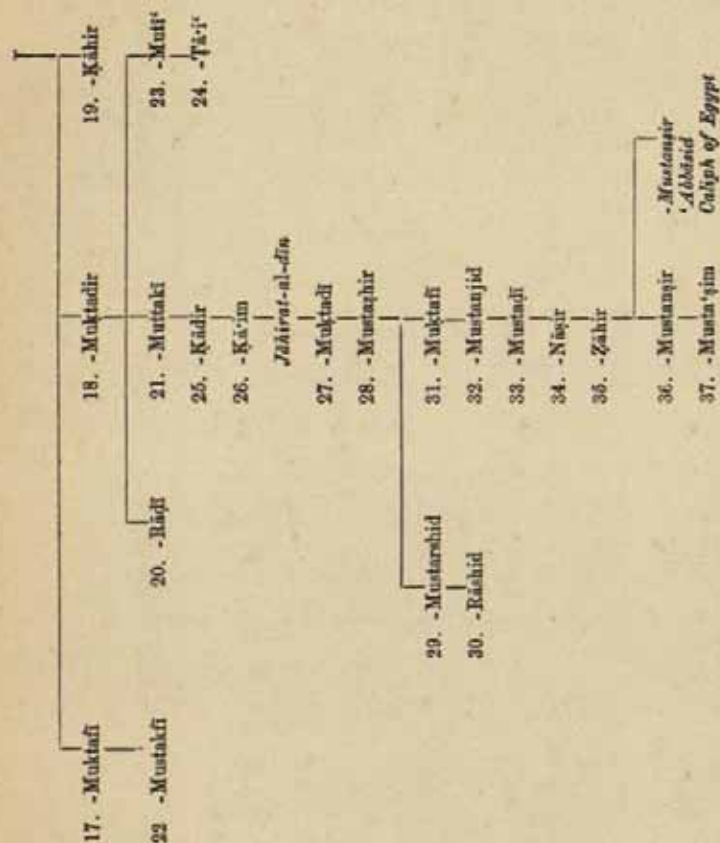
-Manṣūr

12. -Mustaʿīn  
 13. -Muʿtazz  
 14. -Muḥtadī  
 15. Muʿtamid  
 16. -Muʿtadid

Ibn-al-Muʿtazz

-Muwaffaq







## II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

### 4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

#### MINOR DYNASTIES

### 5. HAMMŪDIDS (MALAGA)

### 6. HAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)

### 7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)

### 8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA)

### 9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)

### 10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)

### 11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)

### 12. TOJIBIDS AND HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)

### 13. KINGS OF DENIA

ALMORAVIDES (*See NORTH AFRICA*)

ALMOHADES " " "

### 14. NASRIDS (GRANADA)



## II. SPAIN

### SÆC. VIII—XV

Spain was conquered by the Muslims in 710-12 (91-3), and ruled, like the other provinces of the Moḥammadan empire, by a series of governors appointed by the Omayyad Caliphs, until 756 (138). Among the few members of the Omayyad family who escaped from the general massacre which signalized the accession of the 'Abbāsids was 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, a grandson of Hishām, the tenth Omayyad Caliph. After some years of wandering, he took advantage of the disordered state of Spain, which was divided by the jealousies of the Berbers and the various Arab tribes, to offer himself as king. He met with an encouraging response, and landed in Andulasia at the close of 755. In the following year (138) he received the homage of most of Moḥammadan Spain, and successfully repelled an invasion of 'Abbāsid troops. His successors maintained themselves on the throne of Cordova with varying success against the encroachments of the Christians of the north, and the insurrections of the many factions among their own



subjects, for two centuries and a half. They contented themselves with the titles of Amīr and Sulṭān, until 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III adopted that of Caliph in 929 (317). He was the greatest of the line, and not only exercised absolute sway over his subjects and kept the Christian kings of Leon, Castile and Navarre in check, but warded off the chief danger of Moorish Spain, invasion from Africa, and maintained his authority on the Mediterranean by powerful fleets. After his death, no great Omayyad carried on his work, but the famous minister and general, Almanzor (Al-Manṣūr), preserved the unity of the kingdom. After this, at the beginning of the eleventh century, Moorish Spain became a prey to factions and adventurers, and a number of petty dynasties arose, who are known in Spanish history as the *Reyes de Taifas* or Party Kings. Most of these were absorbed by the most distinguished of their number, the cultured house of the 'Abbāids of Seville, who were the leaders of the Spanish Moors against the encroachments of the Christians, until they were forced to summon the *Almoravides* to their aid, and discovered that they had invited a master instead of an ally.

A.H.		A.D.
138—422	4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA	756—1031
138	'Abd-al-Rahmān I . . . . .	756
172	Hishām I . . . . .	788
180	-Hakam I . . . . .	796
206	'Abd-al-Rahmān II . . . . .	822
238	Moḥammad I . . . . .	852
273	-Mundhir . . . . .	886
275	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	888
309	'Abd-al-Rahmān III. (Al-Khalifa Al-Nāṣir) . .	912
350	-Hakam II -Mustanṣir . . . . .	961
366	Hishām II -Mu'ayyad . . . . .	976
399	Moḥammad II -Mahdī . . . . .	1009
400	Sulaymān -Musta'in . . . . .	1009
400	Moḥammad II (again) . . . . .	1010
400	Hishām II (again) . . . . .	1010
403	Sulaymān (again) . . . . .	1013
407	'Alī b. Hammūd * . . . . .	1016
408	'Abd-al-Rahmān IV -Murtadā . . . . .	1018
408	-Ḳāsim b. Hammūd . . . . .	1018
412	Yahyā b. 'Alī . . . . .	1021
413	-Ḳāsim (again) . . . . .	1022
414	'Abd-al-Rahmān V -Mustaṭhir . . . . .	1023
414	Moḥammad III -Mustakfi . . . . .	1024
416	Yahyā (again) . . . . .	1025
418	Hishām III -Mu'tadd . . . . .	1027
—422		—1031

[Minor Dynasties]

\* Of the dynasty of Hammūdids. See Table 5.

# OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

*Hickman, 10th Oneayyad Caliph*

*Mo'duciga*

1. 'Abd-n/-Rahmān I

- ## 2. Hierarchy

- ### 3. Hakam i

7. 'Abd-ul-Rahmān II

5. Mohammad r

3. Mundhir

- ## 7. 'Abdī-Allāh

**Mohammad**

8. 'Abd-az-Zahmān III

- 2

- TABLE II

- Abd-al-Jabbir

- Hindemith

- Hakken-*

- Hakken-*

- Mohammad

Mo

- Абд-ул-Рахман

- Abd-ul-Rahman

- ## 11. Mohammed II

4. 'Abd-af-

- ## 12. Sulaymān

3. 'Abel-ul-Rahman iv

16. Mohammed in

- ### 1.6. Шаблон III

## MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES \*

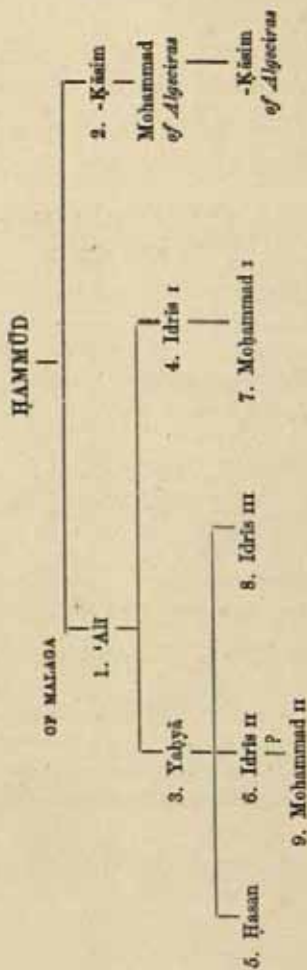
(REYES DE TAIFAS)

A. H.		A. D.
407—449	5. HAMMŪDIDS † (MALAGA)	1016—1057
407	‘Alī -Nāṣir . . . . .	1016
408	-Ḳāsim -Ma’mūn . . . . .	1018
412	Yahyā Mu’tali . . . . .	1021
413	-Ḳāsim (again) . . . . .	1022
416	Yahyā (again) . . . . .	1025
427	Idris I -Muta’ayyad . . . . .	1035
431	Hasan -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1039
434	Idris II -‘Ālī . . . . .	1042
438	Moḥammad I -Mahdī . . . . .	1046
444	Idris III -Muwaffaq . . . . .	1052
445	Idris II (again) . . . . .	1053
446	Moḥammad II -Musta‘lī . . . . .	1054—
—449		1057
	[Almoravides]	

\* In the tables and trees of these dynasties Codera's *Tratado de Numismática Árabe-Española* (1879) has been generally followed: which see for lists of various petty rulers here omitted.

† The Hammūdids took the title of Caliph or 'Prince of the Faithful.'

## HAMMŪDIDS





A.H.		A.D.
431—450	6. ḤAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)	1039—1058
431	Moḥammad -Mahdī . . . . .	1039
440	-Ḳāsim -Wāthiq . . . . .	1048
—450		—1058

[*Abbādis of Seville*]

414—484	7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)	1023—1091
414	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad I. b. Ismā'il . . . . .	1023
434	Abū-'Amr 'Abbād -Mu'taḍid b. Moḥammad I . . . . .	1042
461—	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad II -Mu'tamid b. 'Abbād . . . . .	1068—
484		1091

[*Almoravides*]

403—483	8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA)	1012—1090
403	Zāwī b. Zayrī . . . . .	1012
410	Ḥabbūṣ . . . . .	1019
430	Bādīs b. Ḥabbūṣ -Muẓaffar -Nāsir . . . . .	1038
466	'Abd-Allāh b. Sayf-al-dawla Bulukkīn b. Bādīs . . . . .	1073
483	Tamīm b. Bulukkīn . . . . .	1090

[*Almoravides*]

422—461	9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)	1031—1068
422	Abū-l-Ḥazam Jahwar . . . . .	1031
435	Abū-l-Walid Moḥammad b. Jahwar . . . . .	1043
450—	'Abd-al-Malik b. Moḥammad . . . . .	1058—
461		1068

[*Abbādis of Seville*]

427—478	10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)	
427	Ismā'il -Zāfir . . . . .	1035
429	Yahyā -Ma'mūn b. Ismā'il . . . . .	1037
467—	Yahyā -Ḳādir b. Ismā'il b. -Ma'mūn . . . . .	1074—
478		1085

[*Alfonso VI of Leon*]

A.H.		A.D.
412—478	11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)	1021—1085
412	'Abd-al-'Aziz -Manṣūr . . . . .	1021
453	'Abd-al-Malik -Muṣaffar . . . . .	1061
457	-Ma'mān of Toledo . . . . .	1065
467	-Ḳādir " " . . . . .	1074
468	Abū-Bakr b. 'Abd-al-Malik . . . . .	1075
478	-Ḳāḍī 'Othmān b. Abū-Bakr . . . . .	1085
"	-Ḳādir of Toledo . . . . .	"

[*Christians (the Cid): then Almoravides*]

410—536	12. TOJIBIDS & HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)	1019—1141
410	Mundhir -Manṣūr b. Yabyā -Tojibī . . . . .	1019
414	Yabyā -Muṣaffar b. Mundhir . . . . .	1023
420	Mundhir b. Yabyā . . . . .	1029
431	Sulaymān -Musta'in b. Hūd . . . . .	1039
438	Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muḥtadīr b. Sulaymān . . . . .	1046
474	Yūsuf -Mu'tamīn b. Aḥmad . . . . .	1081
478	Aḥmad -Musta'in b. Yūsuf . . . . .	1085
503	'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla b. Aḥmad . . . . .	1109
513—	Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla b. 'Abd-al-Malik . . . . .	1119—
536		1141

[*Christians*]

408—468	13. KINGS OF DENIA	1017—1075
408	Mujāhid b. Yūsuf . . . . .	1017
436	'Alī Iḳbāl-al-dawla b. Mujāhid . . . . .	1044—
—468		1075

[*Hūdids of Zaragoza*]

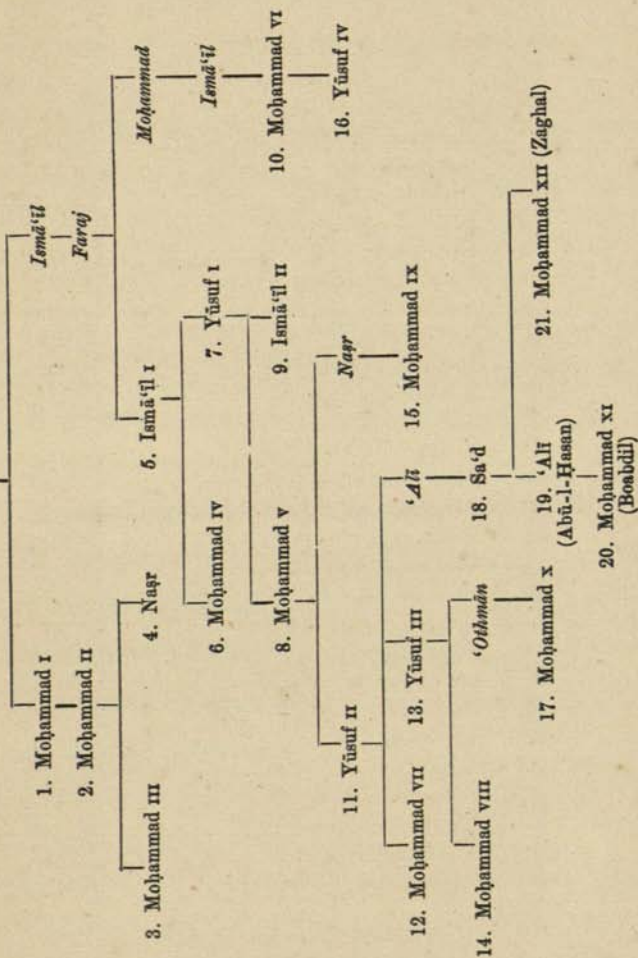
In 1086 the *Almoravides* came to Spain, summoned by the 'Abbāids to help them against Alfonso of Leon. In 1090 they came again, and this time they conquered the whole of Moorish Spain, and made it a province of their African empire (see Table 19). Their successors in Africa, the *Almohades*, similarly annexed the Spanish province in 1145-50 (see Table 20). A few petty dynasties sprang up at Valencia and Murcia between these two invasions, and during the decline of the Almohades' power; but the only important line was that of the Naṣrids or Banū-Naṣr of Granada, whose cultivated Court and beautiful palace, Alhambra, for a time revived the splendour and distinction of Moorish Spain as it had been in the days of the great Caliph 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III. Their long struggle against the advancing Christians, however, ended in the fall of Granada before the assaults of Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492, and with the flight of Boabdil the last remnant of Moḥammadan rule vanished from the Peninsula.

A.H.		A.D.
629—897	14. NAŠRIDS (GRANADA)	1232—1492
629	Moḥammad I - Ghālib . . . .	1232
671	Moḥammad II - Faḳīh . . . .	1273
701	Moḥammad III . . . .	1302
708	Naṣr Abū-l-Juyūsh . . . .	1309
713	Ismā'il I Abū-l-Walid . . . .	1314
725	Moḥammad IV . . . .	1325
733	Yūsuf Abū-l-Ḥajjāj . . . .	1333
755	Moḥammad V - Ghānī . . . .	1354
760	Ismā'il II . . . .	1359
761	Moḥammad VI Abū-Sa'id . . . .	1360
763	Moḥammad V (again) . . . .	1362
793	Yūsuf II . . . .	1391
794	Moḥammad VII . . . .	1392
810	Yūsuf III Abū-l-Ḥajjāj - Nāṣir . . . .	1407
820	Moḥammad VIII - Mutamaṣṣik . . . .	1417
831	Moḥammad IX - Ṣaghīr . . . .	1427
833	Moḥammad VIII (again) . . . .	1429
835	Yūsuf IV . . . .	1432
835	Moḥammad VIII (third time) . . . .	1432
848	Moḥammad X . . . .	1444
849	Sa'd - Musta'in . . . .	1445
850	Moḥammad X (again) . . . .	1446
857	Sa'd (again) . . . .	1453
866	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan . . . .	1461
887	Moḥammad XI (Boabdil) . . . .	1482
888	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan (again) . . . .	1483
890	Moḥammad XII (Zaghal) . . . .	1485
892	Moḥammad XI (Boabdil, again) . . . .	1486
—897		—1492

[*Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile*]

# NAŞIDS OF GRANADA

Yūsuf b. NAŞR







### III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

15. IDRĪSIDS (MOROCCO)

16. AGHLABIDS (TUNIS, ETC.)

FĀṬIMIDS (*See EGYPT*)

17. ZAYRIDS (TUNIS)

18. HAMMĀDIDS (ALGIERS)

19. ALMORAVIDES (MOROCCO, ALGIERS, SPAIN)

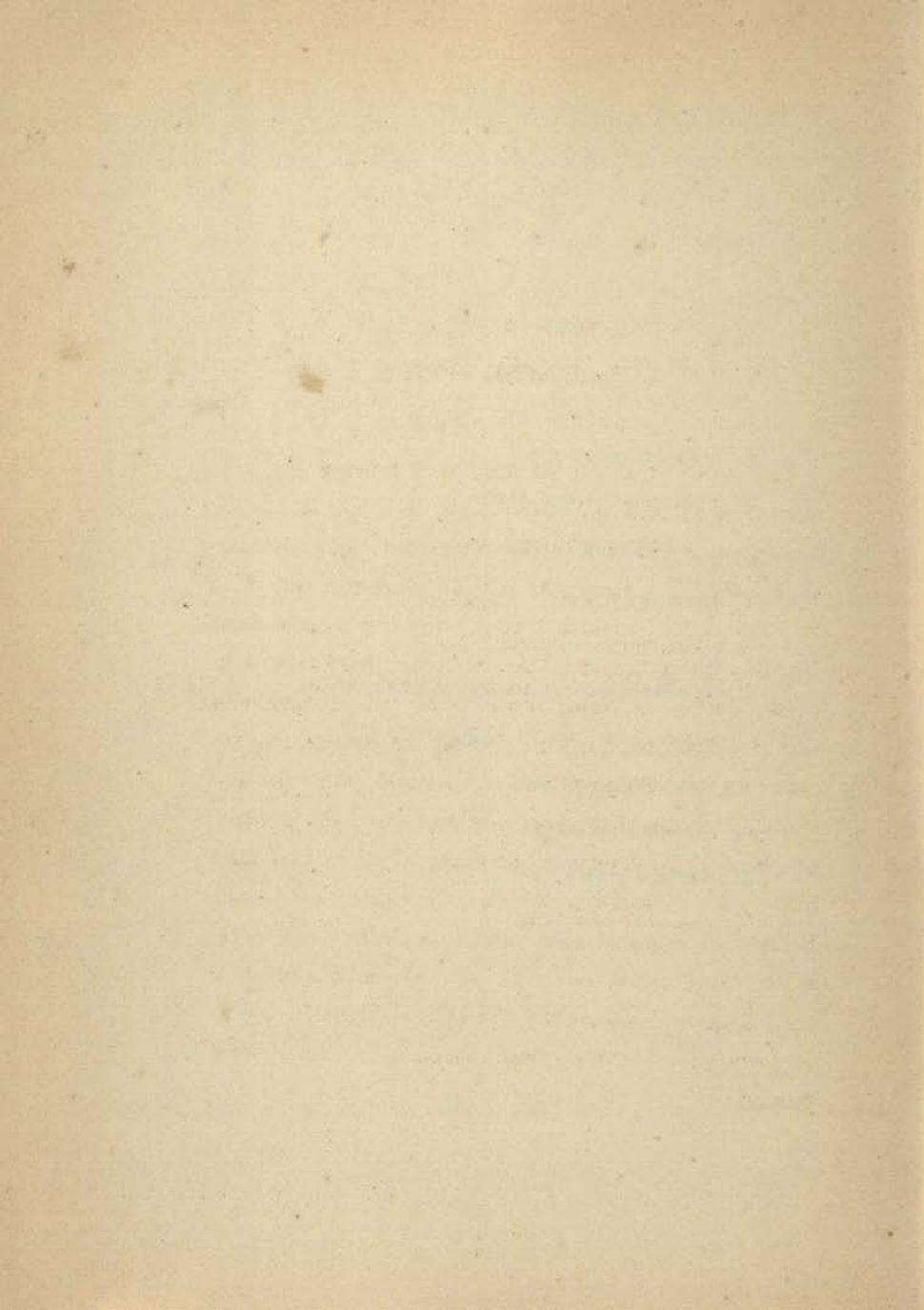
20. ALMOHADES (NORTH AFRICA, SPAIN)

21. MARĪNIDS (MOROCCO)

22. ZIYĀNIDS (ALGIERS)

23. ḤAFṢIDS (TUNIS)

24. SHARĪFS (MOROCCO)



### III. NORTH AFRICA

#### SÆC. VIII—XIX

The narrow strip of habitable land between the great African desert and the Mediterranean Sea was always the nursery of schismatics. The superstitious and credulous Berbers offered a favourable soil for the germination of all varieties of Moḥammadan heresy. Any prophet who found himself without honour in his own country had only to go to the Berbers of North Africa to be sure of a welcome and an enthusiastic following; whilst the distance from the centre of the Caliphate and the natural turbulence and warlike character of the population predisposed the 'Abbāsids to ignore the disloyalty of provinces which profited them little and cost them ceaseless energy and expense to control. Hence the success of such strange developments of Islām as the Almoravides and Almohades, the establishment of 'Alid dynasties such as the Idrīsids and Fāṭimids, and in our own time the widespread authority of the Prophet-Sanūsī.

North Africa had been subdued by the Arabs with difficulty between the years 647 (26) and 700, and had since been ruled with varying success by the lieutenants of the Caliphs. So long as Yazīd b. Ḥātim, the popular and energetic governor of Ḳayrawān for the 'Abbāsids, lived, the tendency of the Berbers to foster rebellion and schism was held in check, but on his death in 787 (170) North Africa became a prey to anarchy, which was only suppressed by allowing the local dynasties, which then sprang up, to exercise independent authority. After the year 800 the 'Abbāsid Caliphs had no influence whatever west of the frontier of Egypt.



A.H.  
172—375

15. IDRĪSIDS  
(MOROCCO)

A.D.  
788—985

In the year 785 (168) an insurrection of the partisans of the family of 'Alī took place at -Medina. Among those who took part in it was Idrīs b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī b. Abū-Ṭālib. On the suppression of the revolt Idrīs fled to Egypt, and thence to Morocco where he founded an 'Alid dynasty in the region about Ceuta. His coins bear the names of the towns of Tudgha and -Walīla. The Idrīsīd dominions reached their greatest extent about 860, and gradually dwindled until the extinction of the dynasty in 985 (375). Some of the dates are not recorded by Ibn-Khaldūn.

172	Idrīs I . . . . .	788
177	Idrīs II b. Idrīs I . . . . .	793
213	Moḥammad b. Idrīs II . . . . .	828
221	'Alī I b. Moḥammad . . . . .	836
234	Yaḥyā I b. Moḥammad . . . . .	849
	Yaḥyā II b. Yaḥyā . . . . .	
	'Alī II b. 'Omar b. Idrīs II . . . . .	
	Yaḥyā III b. -Kāsim b. Idrīs II . . . . .	
292	Yaḥyā IV b. Idrīs b. 'Omar . . . . .	904
310	-Ḥasan . . . . .	922

[Miknasa Berbers]

A. H.  
184—296

16. AGHLABIDS  
(TUNIS, ETC.)

A. D.  
800—909

Ibrāhīm b. -Aghlab was governor of the province of Zāb for the Caliph at the time of confusion which followed upon the death of Yazīd the 'Abbāsīd governor-general of 'Africa' (Afrikiya, *i.e.* Tunis) in 787 (170), and was appointed to the government of the whole African province by the Caliph Hārūn -Rashīd in 800 (184); but did not interfere with the authority of the Idrīsids in the far west. His dynasty was practically independent, and the Aghlabids seldom troubled to put the Caliphs' names on their coins in token even of spiritual suzerainty. They were not only enlightened and energetic rulers on land, but employed large fleets on the Mediterranean, harried the coasts of Italy, France, Corsica, and Sardinia, and conquered Sicily in 827-78; which island remained in Moḥammadan hands until the conquest by the Normans. The Aghlabid domination in Africa when at its best was indeed the period of the greatest ascendancy of the Arabs in the Mediterranean: their

corsairs were the terror of the seas, and besides Sicily they took Malta and Sardinia, and even invaded the suburbs of Rome. The incapacity of the later Aghlabid princes, however, and the growth of sectarian disaffection under the fostering influence of the Shi'ite Idrisids in the west, paved the way for the Fātimid triumph in 909 (296).

184	Ibrāhīm I . . . . .	800
196	'Abd-Allāh I . . . . .	811
201	Ziyādat-Allāh I . . . . .	816
223	Abū-'Aḳāl -Aghlab . . . . .	837
226	Moḥammad I . . . . .	840
242	Aḥmad . . . . .	856
249	Ziyādat-Allāh II . . . . .	863
250	Moḥammad II . . . . .	864
261	Ibrāhīm II . . . . .	874
289	'Abd-Allāh II. . . . .	902
290	Ziyādat-Allāh III . . . . .	903
—296		—909

[Fātimids]

## AGHLABIDS

-AGHLAB

1. Ibrāhīm

2. 'Abd-Allāh i

3. Ziyādat-Allāh i

4. -Aghlab

5. Moḥammad

6. Abūmad

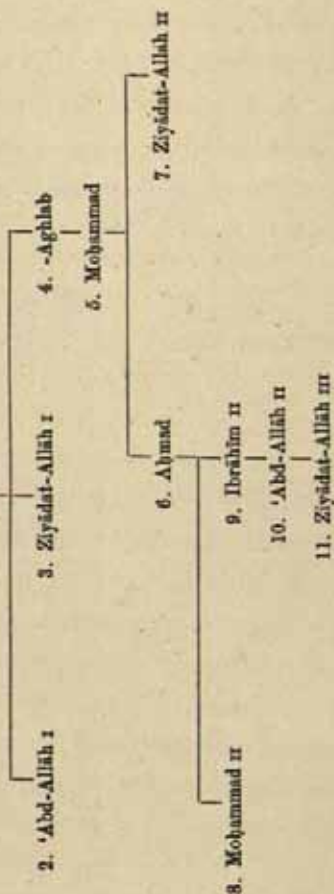
7. Ziyādat-Allāh ii

8. Moḥammad ii

9. Ibrāhīm ii

10. 'Abd-Allāh ii

11. Ziyādat-Allāh iii



The Aghlabids were succeeded by the *Fāṭimids*, who, however, belong more particularly to the series of Egyptian Dynasties (see Table 27). Their empire, which at one time included the whole north African coast from Egypt to the Atlantic, together with Sicily and Sardinia, became split up into various kingdoms as soon as their removal of their seat of government to Cairo in 972 (362) weakened their control of the more western provinces. Their lieutenant over Africa, Yūsuf Bulukkīn, chief of the Sanhaja Berbers, soon declared himself independent and founded the dynasty of the *Zayrids*, whilst another dynasty, the *Ḥammādids*, established themselves at Bougie (Bujāya) in Algeria and restricted the Zayrids' authority to little more than the province of Tunis. Further west in Morocco various tribes of Berbers, -Miknasa, Maghrawa, etc., acquired independence, and occupied the site of the Idrīsids' kingdom, but hardly attained to the dignity of dynasties. These were in turn subdued by the *Almoravides*, who also took a large part of the territory of the *Ḥammādids* of Algeria; but it was reserved for the *Almohades* to reign in the capitals of *Ḥammād* and *Zayrī*.



A.H.		A.D.
362—543	17. ZAYRIDS (TUNIS)	972—1148
362	Yūsuf Bulukkīn b. Zayrī . . . . .	972
373	Manṣūr b. Yūsuf . . . . .	983
386	Bādīs b. Manṣūr . . . . .	996
406	-Mu'izz b. Bādīs . . . . .	1015
453	Tamīm b. -Mu'izz . . . . .	1061
501	Yahyā b. Tamīm . . . . .	1107
509	'Alī b. Yahyā . . . . .	1115
515	-Ḥasan b. 'Alī . . . . .	1121
—543		—1148
<i>[Roger of Sicily; then Almohades]</i>		

	HAMMĀDIDS (ALGERIA)	
398—547		1007—1152
398	Hammād . . . . .	1007
419	-Kāid b. Hammād . . . . .	1028
446	Muḥassin b. -Kāid . . . . .	1054
447	Bulukkīn b. Moḥammad b. Hammād . . . . .	1055
454?	-Nāṣir b. 'Alnās b. Moḥammad . . . . .	1062?
481	-Manṣūr b. -Nāṣir . . . . .	1088
498	Bādīs . . . . .	1104
500	-'Azīz . . . . .	1106
?	Yahyā b. -'Azīz . . . . .	—
—547		—1152
<i>[Almohades]</i>		

A.H.

A.D.

448—541 19. ALMORAVIDES (-MURĀBIṬ) 1056—1147  
(MOROCCO, PART OF ALGERIA, SPAIN)

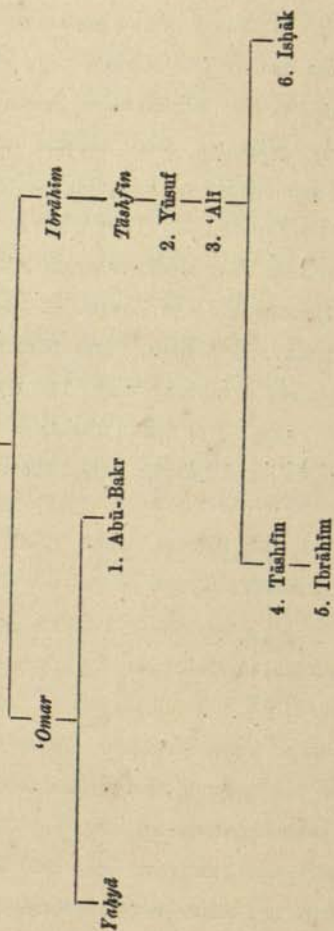
In the middle of the eleventh century the successes of the Christians in Spain, the energy of the Genoese and Pisans in recovering for Christendom the islands of Corsica and Sardinia, and the valour of the Normans in Southern Italy, had thoroughly humbled the power of the Muslims in the Mediterranean. The Fātimids of Egypt alone maintained the ancient prestige of the Saracens. The Zayrids of Tunis were incapable even of repressing the frequent revolts which disturbed their restricted dominion; and the rivalry between Zayrids, Ḥammādids, and Fātimids prevented any collective action against the Christians. It was time for a Moḥammadan revival, and among a people so easily excited to religious exaltation as the Berbers a revival was always possible if a prophet could be found. The prophet appeared among the tribe of Lamtuna in the person of 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfin. This man preached a holy war for the glory of Islām, and the Berbers were not slow to follow him. His adherents called themselves *Al-Murābiṭin*, which means literally 'pickets who have hobbled their horses on the enemy's frontier,' and hence 'Protagonists for the Faith.'

The Spaniards corrupted the name into Almoravides, and the French *marabout*, or devotee, is another perversion of it. The Almoravides acknowledged the supremacy of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs. The Lamtuna Berbers under 'Abd-Allāh were joined by the great clan of the Masmūda, and led by Abū-Bakr and his second cousin Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, reduced Sijilmāsa and Aghmāt by 1068 (460), founded the city of Morocco (Marrākush), and in the course of the next fifteen years spread over Fez, Mequinez (Miknasa), Ceuta (Sabta), Tangier (Tanja), Salee, and the west of Morocco. In 1086 Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, whose great qualities both as general and as administrator had secured the devotion of the Protagonists, was entreated by the 'Abbāids of Spain to come over and help them against the assaults of Alfonso vi. and Sancho of Aragon and the invincible valour of the Cid Campeador Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar. Yūsuf utterly crushed the Castilian army at the battle of Zallāka, or, as the Spaniards call it, Sacralias, near Badajoz, October 23, 1086; but he did not follow up his victory. Leaving 3000 Berbers to support the Andalusians he returned to Africa. But in 1090 the King of Seville again prayed him to come and help him against the Christians, and this time Yūsuf annexed the whole of Moorish Spain, with the exception of

Toledo, which remained in the possession of the Christians, and Zaragoza, where the Hūdids were suffered to subsist. The success of the Almoravides, however, was fleeting. Their hardy warriors soon became enervated in soft Andalusia, and offered no adequate resistance to the steady advance of the Christians. They made no attempt to recover the command of the Mediterranean, and were content to leave the Hammādids and Zayrids in possession of most of Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli. The Almoravide dynasty had lasted less than a century when the fanatical rush of the *Almohades* swept over the whole of north Africa and southern Spain, and left no rival house standing.

A.H.		A.D.
448	Abū-Bakr . . . . .	1056
480	Yūsuf . . . . .	1087
500	'Alī . . . . .	1106
537	Tāshfin . . . . .	1143
541	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1146
541	Ishāk . . . . .	1147

## ALMORAVIDES

*Wartantak**Warkit*



A.H.

A.D.

524—667 20. ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS) 1130—1269

(ALL NORTH AFRICA)

The Muwahhids (in Spanish, Almohades) or Unitarians were so called because their doctrine was a protest against the realistic anthropomorphism of orthodox Islām. Their prophet Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad b. Tūmart, a Berber of the Masmuda tribe, began to preach the doctrine of the Unity of God (-*Tawḥīd*) and took the symbolic title of the Mahdī, at the beginning of the 12th century. Dying in 1128 (522) he left the command of the Unitarians to his friend and general 'Abd-al-Mu'min, who formally accepted the chief authority over the Masmuda Muwahhids in 1130. In 1140 (534) 'Abd-al-Mu'min began a long career of conquest. He annihilated the army of the Almoravides in 1144, captured Oran, Tilimsān, Fez, Ceuta, Aghmāt, and Salee in two years, and by the successful siege of Morocco in 1146 (541) put an end to the Almoravide dynasty. Meanwhile he had sent an army into Spain (1145) and in the course of five years reduced the whole Moorish part of

the Peninsula to his sway. Master of Morocco and Spain, he next carried his conquests eastwards, and in 1152 (547) abolished the *Ḥammādid* rule in Algeria; in 1158 (553) he drove the Norman successors of the *Zayrids* out of Tunis, and by the annexation of Tripoli united the whole coast from the frontier of Egypt to the Atlantic together with Moorish Spain under his sceptre. The Holy War with the Christians in Spain was the chief anxiety of his successors, and the disastrous defeat at Las Navas in 1235 (638) was the signal for the expulsion of the *Almohades* from the Peninsula, which was then divided between the ever-encroaching Christians and the local *Mohammadan* dynasties, among whom the *Naṣrids* of Granada (Table 14) offered the most stubborn resistance to the enemy, and held out until the fall of their city in 1492 delivered the whole of Spain over to Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic. The loss of Spain was quickly followed by the undermining of the *Almohades'* power in Africa. Tripoli had long before been annexed by Saladin (1172). Their lieutenants in Tunis, the *Hafṣids*, threw off their allegiance and founded an independent dynasty in 1228; whose example was followed by the *Ziyānids* of Tlemṣen (Tilimsān) in western Algeria, in 1235; while, amidst the confusion created by many pretenders to

the throne of Morocco, the chiefs of the mountain tribe of the *Marīnids* pushed their way to the front and put an end to the dynasty of the Almohades by the conquest of their capital, Morocco, in 1269 (667).

A.H.		A.D.
524	'Abd-al-Mu'min . . . . .	1130
558	Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf I . . . . .	1163
580	Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb -Mansūr . . . . .	1184
595	Moḥammad -Nāṣir . . . . .	1199
611	Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf II -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1214
620	'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Makhlū' . . . . .	1223
621	Abū-Moḥammad 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil . . . . .	1224
624	Yaḥyā -Mu'taṣim . . . . .	1227
626	Abū-l-'Ulā Idrīs -Ma'mūn . . . . .	1229
630	'Abd-al-Wāḥid -Rashīd . . . . .	1232
640	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī -Sa'id . . . . .	1242
646	Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar -Murtaḍa . . . . .	1248
665	Abū-l-'Ulā -Wāṭiḥ . . . . .	1266
—667		—1269

[*Marīnids, Ziyānids, Ḥafṣids*]

## ALMOHADES

'Alī

1. 'Abd-al-Mur'mīn

2. Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf I

3. Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb  
-Manṣūr4. Moḥammad  
-Nāṣir7. 'Abd-Allāh  
-ʿAdil5. Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf II  
-Muṣṭafī6. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid  
-Makhlū'

Isḥāq

12. 'Omar  
-Murṭada11. Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī  
-Sa'īd

Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar

Moḥammad

13. Abū-l-'Ulā  
-Wāṭṭik10. 'Abd-al-Wāḥid  
-Rashīd9. Idrīs  
-Ma'mūn



A. H.  
625—94121. HAFSIDS  
(TUNIS)A. D.  
1228—1534

The Hafsids were at first lieutenants of the Almohades in their province of Tunis. The government passed from father to son, and the dynasty became independent. For three centuries the Hafsids governed Tunis with justice and mildness, and cultivated friendly commercial relations with the trading republics of Italy. The Corsair Khayr-al-din Barbarossa conquered Tunis in the name of the Ottoman Sultan in 1534, and though the Emperor Charles v. restored the Hafsid king in 1535 and placed a Spanish garrison at the Goletta of Tunis, the province remained chiefly in the hands of the Corsairs, who re-took Tunis itself in 1568 and the Goletta in 1574;\* since when, it has been a province of the Ottoman Empire, but in 1881 became practically a possession of France. Tripoli, which had been taken from the kingdom of Tunis by the Spaniards in 1510, was added to the Ottoman Empire by the Corsairs in 1551.

\* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890), ch. viii, xii, xiv, xv.



A.H.		A.D.
625	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 1 . . . . .	1228
647	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad 1 -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1249
675	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 11 . . . . .	1277
678	Abū-Ishāq Ibrāhīm 1 . . . . .	1279
683	Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar 1 . . . . .	1284
694	Abu-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad 11 -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1295
709	Abu-Bakr 1 -Shadīd . . . . .	1309
709	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālīd 1 . . . . .	1309
711	Abū-Yahyā Zakaryā . . . . .	1311
717	Abu-Ḍarba Moḥammad 111 -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1317
718	Abū-Yahyā Abū-Bakr 11 -Mutawakkil . . . . .	1318
747	Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar 11 . . . . .	1346
[747	<i>Marinid occupation</i> . . . . .	1346
750	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad 1 -Faḍl . . . . .	1349
751	Abū-Ishāq Ibrāhīm 11 -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1350
770	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālīd 11 . . . . .	1368
772	Abu-l-'Abbās Aḥmad 11 -Mustanṣir . . . . .	1370
796	Abū-Fāris 'Abd-al-'Azīz . . . . .	1394
837	Moḥammad 1v -Muntaṣir . . . . .	1433
839	Abū-'Amr 'Othmān . . . . .	1435
893	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā 111 . . . . .	1488
899	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Moḥammad v . . . . .	1493
932	-Ḥasan . . . . .	1525
-941		-1534

[*Coronair Pashas, and Beys, under the Ottoman Sultans*]

A.H.  
633—79622. ZİYÂNIDS  
(ALGERIA)A.D.  
1235—1393

The Ziyânids, lieutenants of the Almohades in Algeria, followed the example of their neighbours the Ḥafṣids to make themselves independent as soon as their masters began to grow feeble. Their capital was Tlemçen (Tilimsān). In their turn the Ziyânids succumbed to the power of the Marīnids of Morocco in 1393.

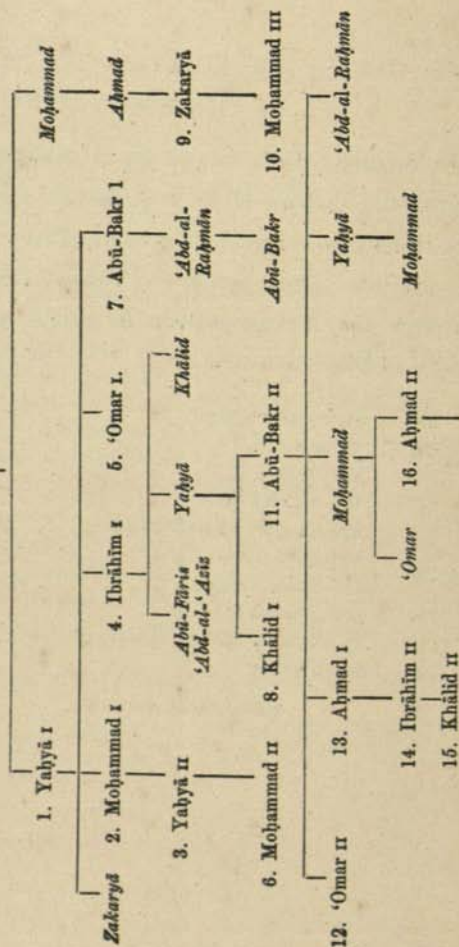
633	Yagmorasan b. Ziyān . . . . .	1235
681	‘Othmān I . . . . .	1282
703	Abū-Ziyān I . . . . .	1303
707	Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā I . . . . .	1307
718	Abū-Tāshfin ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān I . . . . .	1318
749	{ Abū-Sa‘īd ‘Othmān II . . . . . Abū-Thābit-Zāim . . . . .	1348
753	Abū-Ḥammū Mūsā II . . . . .	1352
788	Abū-Tāshfin ‘Abd-al-Raḥmān II . . . . .	1386
796	Abū-Ziyān II . . . . .	1393

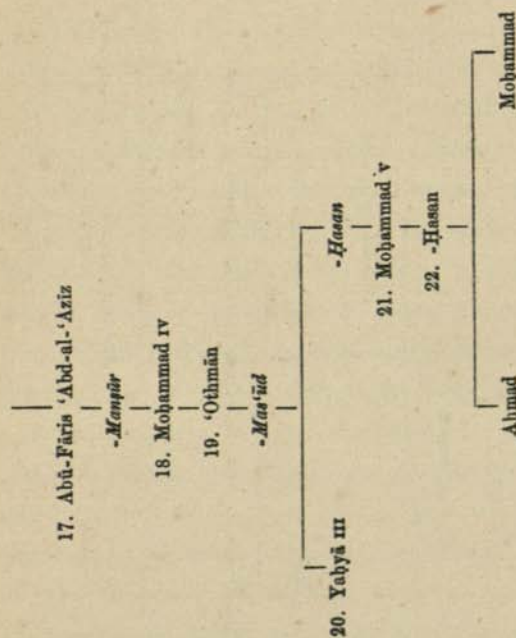
[Marīnids of Morocco]

3397

## HAḤṢIDS

'Abd-al-Wāḥid b. 'Abd-Ḥaṣṣ





## ZIYÂNIDS

## ZIYÂN

## 1. Yagmorasan

## 2. 'Othmān I

*Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā*

## 3. Abū-Ziyān I

## 4. Mūsā I

## 5. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān I

6a.

'Othmān II

6b. Abū-Thābit

*Yūsuf*

## 7. Mūsā II

## 8. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān II

## 9. Abū-Ziyān II



From the 16th to the present century the North African provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were in the possession, more or less nominal, of the '*Othmānī* or Ottoman Sultāns of Turkey. The annexation of these provinces was due to the energy of the Barbary Corsairs. Previously to the arrival of Barbarossa, the Spaniards under Don Pedro Navarro had established several strong positions on the African coast, at the Peñon de Alger, Bougie (Bujāya), Oran (Wahrān), Tripoli, etc., with a view to overawing the petty pirates of Algiers. In 1509 Urūj Barbarossa, a Lesbian adventurer, occupied the island of Jarba, off the coast of Tripoli, and began his operations against the Spaniards. He took Jijil in 1514, Algiers in 1516, Tinnis and Tlemçen (Tilimsān) from the Marīnids in 1517; and in 1519 his brother Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa was recognised by the Ottoman Sultān as Beglerbeg or Governor-General of the province of Algiers, which corresponded very nearly to the Algeria of to-day, though the Spaniards kept their hold on the fortress or Peñon de Alger until 1530 and held Oran till 1706. In 1534 Khayr-al-dīn took Tunis from the Hafsids, but the city was retaken by the Emperor Charles v. in the following year, and not restored to the Corsairs of Algiers till 1568. It was again captured for the moment

by Don John of Austria in 1573, but finally annexed by Ochiali (Ulāj 'Alī) in 1574. Meanwhile another Corsair, Dragut (Torghūd), reduced Tripoli to the authority of the Porte in 1551, and drove out the Knights of St. John, who had held it since their expulsion from Rhodes in 1522.

The three provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were thus annexed to the Turkish Empire in 1519, 1568, and 1551, respectively. Algiers was governed first by a series of twenty-six Pashas, appointed from Constantinople; but in 1671 the janissary garrison of Algiers elected a *Dey* from amongst themselves, whose power soon eclipsed that of the Pasha, and in 1710 the two offices were united in that of *Dey*, which subsisted until the French conquest in 1830. Tunis was governed until 1705 by *Deys* appointed by the Porte, after which the Turkish soldiery elected their own *Bey*s, one of whom still affects to reign, though Tunis has been occupied by France since 1881. Tripoli is still a Turkish province governed by a Pasha appointed by the Sultān. Morocco alone of the North African provinces has never owned Christian rule, though the Spaniards held various forts on the coast, and still retain Ceuta; and the English once owned Tangier, but neglected to keep it.\*

\* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890).

A.H.  
591—87523. MARINIDS  
(MOROCCO)A.D.  
1195—1470

The Marīnids traced their dynasty from 1195 (591), as rulers in the highlands of Morocco; but they did not succeed to the capital of the Almohades till 1269 (667). Soon after 1393 (796) they added to their kingdom the territory of the Ziyānids in western Algeria. They were superseded by their kinsmen the Wat'asids in 1470.

591	'Abd-al-Ḥaḡḡ	1195
614	'Othmān I	1217
637	Moḥammad I	1239
642	Abū-Yahyā Abū-Bakr	1244
656	Abū-Yūsuf Ya'qūb	1258
685	Abū-Ya'qūb Yūsuf	1286
706	Abū-Thābit 'Āmir	1306
708	Abū-l-Rabi' Sulaymān	1308
710	Abū-Sa'id 'Othmān II	1310
731	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī	1331
749	Abū-Aynān	1348
759	-Sa'id	1358
760	Abū-Sālim Ibrāhīm	1359
762	Abū-'Omar Tāshfin	1361
763	'Abd-al-Ḥalīm	1361
763	Abū-Ziyān Moḥammad II	1361
768	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1366

774	Moḥammad iii -Sa'id . . . . .	1372
776	{ Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir . . . . . 'Abd-al-Raḥmān . . . . . }	1374
786	Mūsā . . . . .	1384
786	-Muntasir . . . . .	1384
788	Moḥammad iv -Wathīq . . . . .	1386
789	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad -Mustanṣir (again)	1387
796	Abū-Fāris . . . . .	1393
?	Fāris -Mutawakkil . . . . .	?
811	Abū-Sa'id . . . . .	1408
819	{ Sa'id . . . . . Ya'qūb . . . . . }	1416
827	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1424
875	Sharif . . . . .	1470

## WAT'ASIDS

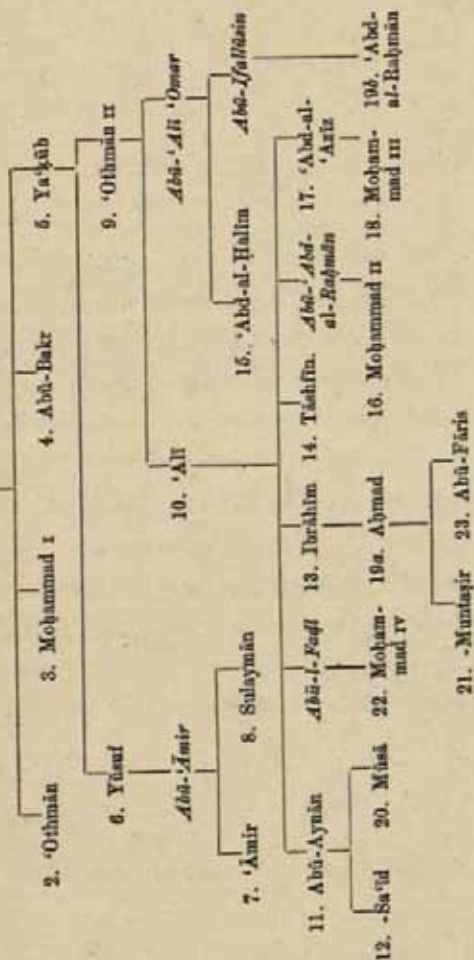
875	Sa'id, Shaykh Wat'as . . . . .	1470
906	Moḥammad i b. Sa'id . . . . .	1500
936	Aḥmad b. Moḥammad . . . . .	1530
957	Moḥammad ii b. Aḥmad . . . . .	1550

[Sharifs of Morocco]



## MARINIDS

## 1. 'Abd-al-Hakk





A.H.  
951—1311  
reigning

24. SHARĪFS  
(MOROCCO)

A.D.  
1544—1893  
reigning

The title *Sharif* (lit. 'noble') implies descent from the Prophet Moḥammad, from whom the Sharifs of Morocco trace their lineage through Ḥasan the elder son of Fāṭima by 'Alī. The Sharifs possessed themselves of Tarudant in 1515, and Morocco and Fez soon afterwards, but their formal assumption of sovereignty dates from 1544 (951). The series falls into two divisions, Ḥasanī and Filālī Sharifs, and a period of anarchy for six years occurred between the two. Their boundaries have always remained much as they are in the present day, but there has frequently been a rival Sharif at Fez in opposition to the Sharif of Morocco. The Sharifs claim to be inheritors of the title of Caliph and Prince of the Faithful.

A.H.		A.D.
951—1069	A. HASANĪ SHARĪFS	1544—1658
951	Moḥammad I -Shaykh . . . . .	1544
965	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1557
981	Moḥammad II . . . . .	1573
983	Abū-Marwān 'Abd-al-Malik I . . . . .	1575
986	Abū-l-'Abbās Aḥmad I -Maṣṣūr . . . . .	1578
1012	{ Shaykh Abū-Fāris } rivals . . . . .	1603
	{ Zaydān }	
1016	Zaydān (alone) . . . . .	1608
1038	Abū-Marwān 'Abd-al-Malik II . . . . .	1628
1040	Walid . . . . .	1630
1045	Moḥammad III . . . . .	1635
1064	Aḥmad II . . . . .	1654
—1069		—1658

1075—1311	B. FILALĪ SHARĪFS	1664—1893
1075	-Rashīd b. -Sharīf b. 'Alī . . . . .	1664
1083	Ismā'īl -Samīn . . . . .	1672
1139	Aḥmad -Dhahabī . . . . .	1727
1141	'Abd-Allāh* . . . . .	1729
1171	Moḥammad I . . . . .	1757
1204	-Yazīd . . . . .	1789
1206	Hishām . . . . .	1792
1209	Sulaymān . . . . .	1795
1238	'Abd-al-Raḥman . . . . .	1822
1276	Moḥammad II . . . . .	1859
1290	Hasan (now reigning) . . . . .	1873

\* Interrupted by 'Alī b. Ismā'īl, 1147-9; -Mustafī b. Ismā'īl, 1151-3, and Zayn-al-'Abidin, 1158.

## HASANĪ SHARĪFS

-HASAN

1. Moḥammad I

2. 'Abd.-Allāh

3. Moḥammad II

4. 'Abd.-al-Malik I

7. Zaydān

8. 'Abd.-al-Malik II

11. Aḥmad II

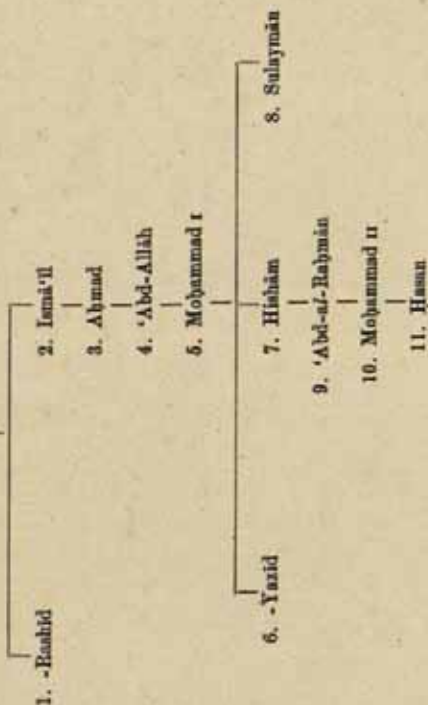
5. Aḥmad I

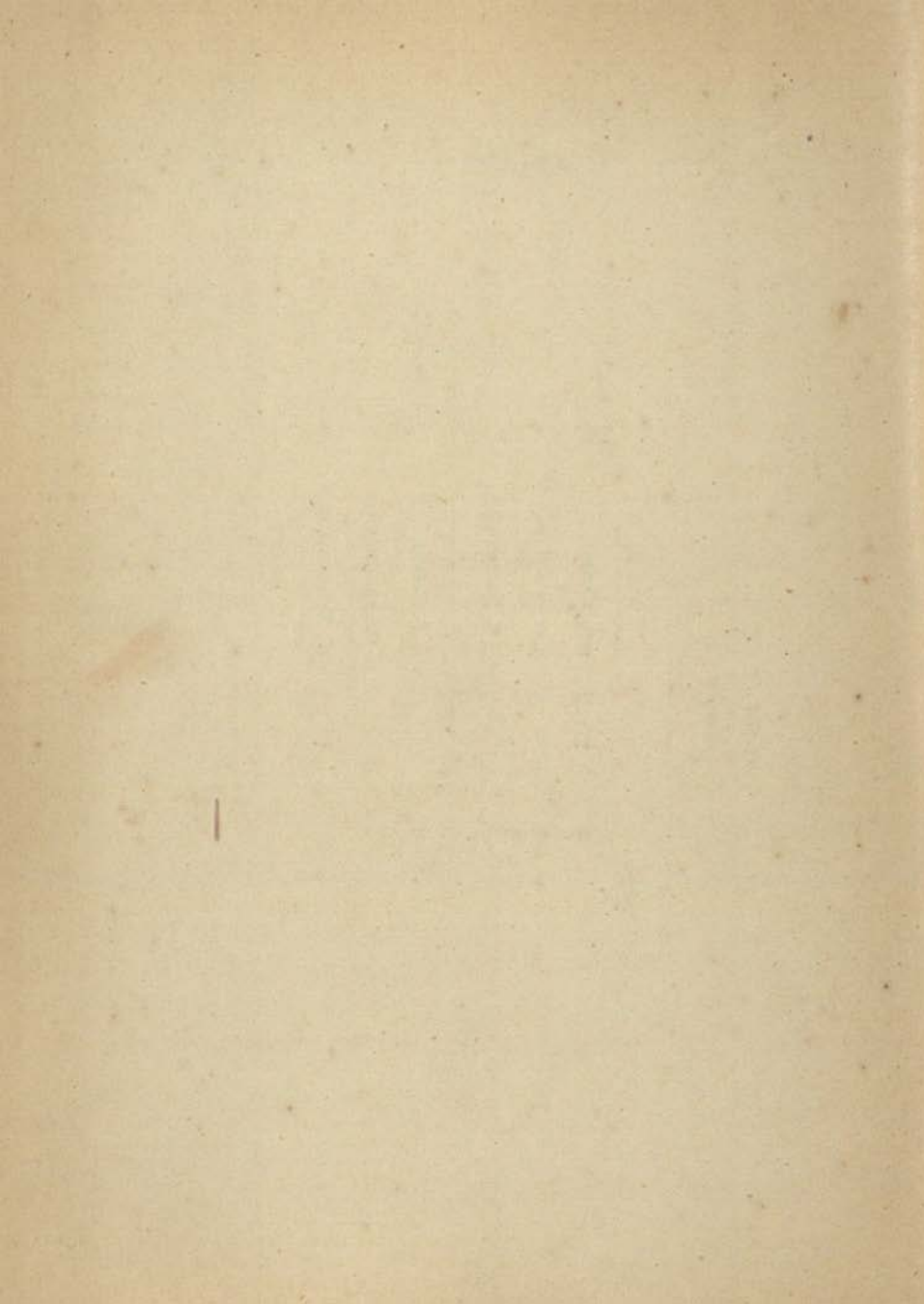
66. Abū-Fāris

9. -Walid

66. Shaykh

## FILALI SHARIFS

*Sharif b. 'Ali*





#### IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX.

25. ṬŪLŪNIDS

26. IKHSHĪDIDS

27. FĀṬIMIDS

28. AYYŪBIDS

29. MAMLŪKS

‘OTHMĀNLĪS (*See X*)

30. KHEDĪVES



#### IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

##### SÆC. IX—XIX

Egypt and Syria have generally formed one government in Moḥammadan history. Syria was conquered by the Arabs in 635–638 (14–17), and Egypt in 641 (21). From the time of the conquest to 868 (254) Egypt was ruled as a separate province by 98 governors appointed by the Omayyad and ‘Abbāsid Caliphs; but the new governor in 868, Aḥmad b. Ṭulūn, founded a dynasty which lasted 37 years. This was succeeded after an interval by the Ikhshīdids, who in turn gave place to the greatest of mediæval Egyptian dynasties, that of the Fāṭimid Caliphs. Under these last, however, Syria became the seat of independent dynasties (Mirdāsids, Būrids, Zangids), but was again united to Egypt by Saladin, the founder of the Ayyūbid dynasty, and so continued until both became separate provinces of the Ottoman Empire. In 1831 Ibrāhīm Pasha, eldest son of Moḥammad ‘Alī, again joined Syria to the dominions of the ruler of Egypt, but it was restored to the Porte in 1841 by the intervention of the European Powers, and has ever since been a Turkish vilāyat.

A.H.  
254—292

ṬULŪNIDS

A.D.  
868—905

Ṭulūn was a Turkish slave, who was sent by the Sāmānid ruler of Bukhārā as a present to the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and attained high rank in the court at Baghdād and Surra-man-ra'ā. His son Aḥmad succeeded to his father's dignity in 240, and was appointed deputy-governor of Egypt in 868 (254), where he soon made himself practically independent. In 877 (264) he was allowed to incorporate Syria in his government, and the two countries remained in the possession of his dynasty until its extinction in 905 (292). The Ṭulūnids were renowned for the wealth and luxury of their capital -Ḳaṭāi' (between -Fusṭāṭ and the later Cairo) and for their public works.

A.H.		A.D.
254	Aḥmad b. Ṭulūn . . . . .	868
270	Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad . . . . .	883
282	Jaysh Abū-l-Asākir b. Khumārawayh . . . . .	895
283	Hārūn b. Khumārawayh . . . . .	896
292	Shaybān b. Aḥmad . . . . .	904
		—905

[Governors under the 'Abbāsīd Caliphs]

A.H.  
323—358

## IKHSHĪDIDS

A.D.  
935—969

After a brief interval, during which the governors of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs again held precarious sway in Egypt and Syria, Moḥammad -Ikhshīd established another quasi-independent dynasty. -Ikhshīd was the generic title of the rulers of Farghāna, beyond the Oxus, and Ṭughj, the father of Moḥammad, was the son of a Farghāna officer in the service of the Caliph of Baghdād. Ṭughj rose to be governor of Damascus, but was disgraced and died in prison. Moḥammad retrieved his father's misfortune and became in turn governor of Damascus in 318, and in 321 governor of Egypt. He did not take over the office, however, till 935 (323). In 938 (327) he assumed the title of -Ikhshīd, and in 941 (330) Syria was added to his dominions, together with Mecca and Medīna in the following year.

A.H.		A.D.
323	Moḥammad -Ikhshīd b. Ṭughj . . .	935
334	Abū-l-Ḳāsim Ūngūr b. -Ikhshīd . . .	946
349	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī b. -Ikhshīd . . .	960
355	Abū-l-Misk Kāfūr [a eunuch] . . .	966
357	Abū-l-Fawāris Aḥmad b. 'Alī . . .	961
—358		—969

[Fātimīds]



A.H.

297—567

A.D.

27. FĀṬIMIDS

909—1171

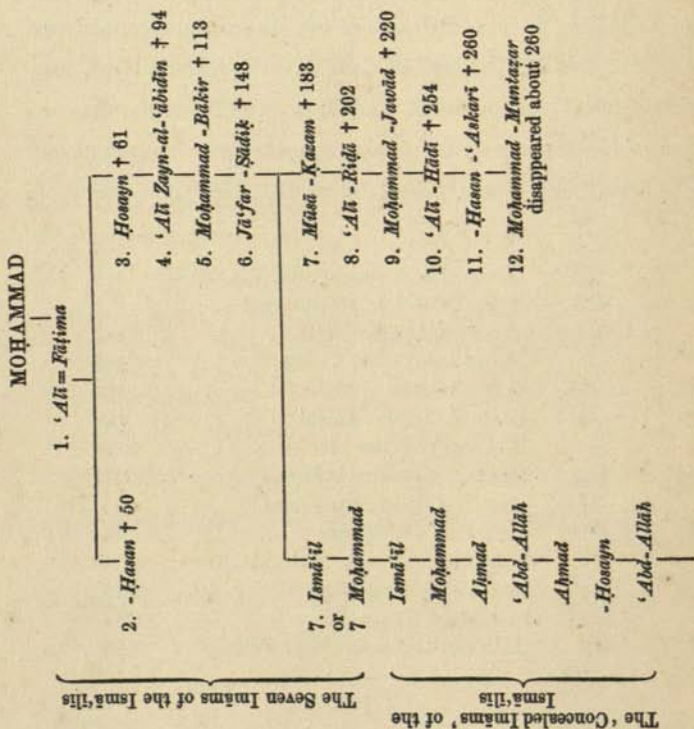
The Fāṭimids, like the Idrīsids, were (or pretended to be) descendants of Fāṭima the daughter of the Prophet (see the genealogical table, p. 72). The Idrīsids had prepared the way for them, and numerous *da'īs* or missionaries had impregnated the Berbers with Shi'ite doctrine, until the task of the new Prophet 'Obayd Allāh, who took the title of Al-Mahdī, and claimed to be Caliph and Prince of the Faithful, became simple: in 909 (297) he suppressed the effete remnant of the Aghlabids and soon made himself master of all North Africa, with the exception of the Idrisid kingdom in Morocco. The Fāṭimid capital was the city of -Mahdiyya (the 'Africa' of Froissart) near Tunis. Half a century later they added Egypt and Syria to their dominions. Jawhar the Fāṭimid general conquered the former country from the boy-king of the Ikhshīdīd dynasty in 969 (356), and founded the fortified palace of -Kāhira, which developed into the city of Cairo. Southern Syria was taken at the same time, and Aleppo was incorporated in 991 (381) in the Fāṭimid Empire, which now stretched from the Syrian desert and the Orontes to the

borders of Morocco. The removal of the seat of government from Ḳayrawān and -Mahdiyya to Cairo, however, cost the Fātimids the loss of their western provinces (see p. 39); and the Normans gained Sicily in 1071, Malta in 1098, Tripoli in 1146 and -Mahdiyya and Ḳayrawān in 1148: but the power of the Fātimid Caliphs in Egypt and Syria long continued undiminished and their wealth and commerce spread throughout the Mediterranean lands. Saladin supplanted the last Fātimid Caliph in 1171 (567).

A.H.		A.D.
297	-Mahdī Abū-Moḥammad 'Obayd-Allāh . . .	909
322	-Ḳā'im Abū-l-Ḳāsim Moḥammad . . .	934
334	-Manṣūr Abū-Tāhir Ismā'il . . .	945
341	-Mu'izz Abū-Tamīm Ma'a'dd . . .	952
365	-'Azīz Abū-Manṣūr Nazār . . .	975
386	-Ḥākim Abū-'Alī -Manṣūr . . .	996
411	-Zāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . .	1020
427	-Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'a'dd . . .	1035
487	-Musta'li Abū-l-Ḳāsim Aḥmad . . .	1094
495	-Āmir Abū-'Alī -Manṣūr . . .	1101
524	-Ḥāfiẓ Abū-l-Maymūn 'Abd-al-Majīd . . .	1130
544	-Zāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismā'il . . .	1149
549	-Fā'iz Abū-l-Ḳāsim 'Isā . . .	1154
555	-Āḍid Abū-Moḥammad 'Abd-Allāh . . .	1160
—567		—1171

[*Ayyūbids*]

## The Twelve Imāms of the Imāmi Sect



## FĀṬĪMIDS

1. -Mahdi

2. -Kāim

3. -Maṣūṛ

4. -Mu'izz

5. -'Aziz

6. -Ḥakim

7. -Zāhir

8. -Mustaṣfir

9. Musta'li

10. -Amir

*Mohammad*

11. -Ḥafiz

12. -Zāfir

13. -Fāiz

14. -'Adid



A. H.  
564—648

## 28. AYYŪBIDS

A. D.  
1169—1250

Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn, or Saladin, the son of Ayyūb (Job), was of Kurdish extraction, and served under Nūr-al-dīn (Nouredin) Maḥmūd b. Zangī, who had lately made himself king of Syria (see IX.). By him Saladin and his uncle Shīrkūh were sent to Egypt, where a civil war invited interference. Friendly assistance developed into annexation, and after the death of Shīrkūh Saladin became virtual master of Egypt in 1169 (564), though the last Fāṭimid Caliph did not die till three years later. In the first month of 567 (Sept. 1171) Saladin caused the *Khutba* or public prayer to be said at Cairo in the name of the contemporary 'Abbāsid Caliph -Mustaḍī, instead of the Fāṭimid -'Āḍid, who lay on his death-bed. The change was effected without disturbance, and Egypt became once more Sunnite instead of Shi'ite. The Holy Cities of the Hijāz generally formed part of the dominion of the ruler of Egypt; and in 1173 (569) Saladin sent his brother Tūrān-Shāh to govern the Yaman (see



V.). Tripoli was taken from the Normans in 1172 (568). The death of his former master Nūr-al-dīn in the same year laid Syria open to invasion, and in 1174 (570) Saladin entered Damascus and swept over Syria (570-572) up to the Euphrates in spite of the opposition of the Zangids. He did not annex Aleppo until 1183 (579), after the death of Nūr-al-dīn's son, -Ṣāliḥ. He reduced -Mōṣil and made the various princes of Mesopotamia his vassals in 1185-6 (581). He was now master of the country from the Euphrates to the Nile, except where the Crusaders retained their strongholds. The battle of Hittin, 4 July, 1187, destroyed the Christian kingdom of Jerusalem; the Holy City was occupied by Saladin within three months; and hardly a castle, save Tyre, held out against him. The fall of Jerusalem roused Europe to undertake the Third Crusade. Richard I. of England and Philip Augustus of France set out for the Holy Land in 1190, and joined in the siege of Acre in 1191. After a year and a half's fighting, peace was concluded in 1192 for three years without any advantage having been gained by the Crusaders. In March 1193 (589) Saladin died.

On his death, his brothers, sons, and nephews, divided the

various provinces of his wide kingdom, but one amongst them, his brother Sayf-al-dīn -'Ādil, the Saphadin of the Crusader chroniclers, gradually acquired the supreme authority. At first Saladin's sons naturally succeeded to their father's crowns in the various divisions of the kingdom:— -Afḍal at Damascus, -'Azīz at Cairo, -Zāhir at Aleppo. But in 1196 (592) -Afḍal was succeeded by -'Ādil at Damascus; in 1199 (596) -Manṣūr the successor of -'Azīz was supplanted by -'Ādil at Cairo; and Aleppo alone remained to the direct descendants of Saladin until 1260 (648).

Having acquired the sovereignty of Egypt and most of Syria in 1196–9, and appointed one of his sons to the government of Mesopotamia about 1200 (597), -'Ādil enjoyed the supreme authority in the Ayyūbid kingdom till his death in 1218 (615). His descendants carried on his rule in the several countries; and we find separate branches reigning in Egypt, Damascus, and Mesopotamia, all sprung from -'Ādil. Those who reigned at Ḥamāh, Emesa, and in the Yaman, were descended from other members of the Ayyūbid family.

In 1250 (648) the 'Ādili Ayyūbids of Egypt, the chief branch of the family, who also frequently held Syria,







made way for the Bahrī Mamlūks or Slave Kings. The Damascus branch, after contesting the sovereignty of Syria with the Egyptian and Aleppo branches, was incorporated with Aleppo, and both were swept away in the Tatar avalanche of Chinghiz Khān in 1260 (658). The same fate had overtaken the Mesopotamian successors of -ʿĀdil in 1245 (643). The Mamlūks absorbed Emesa in 1262 (661). The Ayyūbids had given place to the Rasūlids in Arabia as early as 1228 (625). But at Hamāh a branch of the family of Saladin continued to rule with slight intermission until 1341 (742), and numbered in their line the well-known historian Abū-l-Fidā.

A.H.

A. EGYPT

A.D.

564	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf ( <i>Saladin</i> ) . . .	1169
589	-ʿAziz ʿImād-al-dīn ʿOthmān . . .	1193
595	-Manṣūr Moḥammad . . .	1198
596	-ʿĀdil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* ( <i>Saphadin</i> ) . . .	1199
616	-Kāmil Moḥammad* . . .	1218
635	-ʿĀdil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* . . .	1238
637	-Ṣalīb Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb* . . .	1240
647	-Muʿaẓẓam Tūrān-Shāh* . . .	1249
648	-Ashraf Mūsā . . .	1250
—650		—1252

[*Mamlūks*]

\* These Sultāns also ruled at Damascus.



A. H.

## B. DAMASCUS

A. D.

582	-Aḡḡal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī . . . . .	1186
592	-'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr ( <i>see Egypt</i> ) .	1196
616	-Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā . . . . .	1218
624	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Dāwūd . . . . .	1227
626	-Ashraf Mūsā ( <i>of Mesopotamia</i> ) . . . . .	1228
635	-Ṣalīḥ Ismā'īl . . . . .	1237
635	-Kāmil ( <i>of Egypt</i> ) . . . . .	1237
635	-'Ādil ( " ) . . . . .	1238
637	-Ṣalīḥ ( " ) . . . . .	1240
637	-Ṣalīḥ Ismā'īl ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1240
643	-Ṣalīḥ ( <i>of Egypt</i> ) . . . . .	1245
647	-Mu'azzam ( <i>of Egypt</i> ) . . . . .	1249
648	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf ( <i>of Aleppo</i> ) .	1250
—653		—1260

[Mongols]

## C. ALEPPO

582	-Zāḥir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzī . . . . .	1186
613	-'Azīz Ghiyāth-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1216
634	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf ( <i>see Damascus</i> )	1236
—658		—1260

[Mongols]

## D. MESOPOTAMIA

597?	-Awḡad Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb . . . . .	1200?
607	-Ashraf Muḡaffar-al-dīn Mūsā ( <i>see Damascus</i> )	1210
628	-Muḡaffar Ghāzī . . . . .	1230
—643		—1246

[Mongols]

A. H.

A. D.

E. HAMĀH

574	-Muḥaffar I Taḳī-al-dīn 'Omar . . . .	1178
587	-Maṣṣūr I Moḥammad . . . .	1191
617	-Nāṣir Ḳilij-Arslān. . . .	1220
626	-Muḥaffar II Taḳī-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . .	1229
642	-Maṣṣūr II Moḥammad . . . .	1244
683	-Muḥaffar III Maḥmūd . . . .	1284
—698		—1298

[*Governors under the Mamlūk Sultāns*]

710	-Mu'ayyad Abū-l-Fidā Ismā-'il ( <i>the historian</i> )	1310
733	-Afḍal Moḥammad . . . .	1332
—742		—1341

[*Mamlūks*]

F. EMESA (HIMS)

574	-Moḥammad b. Shirkūh . . . .	1178
581	-Mujāhid Shirkūh . . . .	1185
637	-Maṣṣūr Ibrāhīm . . . .	1239
644	-Ashraf Muḥaffar-al-dīn Mūsā . . . .	1245
—661		—1262

[*Mamlūks*]

G. ARABIA

569	-Mu'aḥḥam Tūrān-Shāh b. Ayyūb . . . .	1173
577	-Sayf-al-Islām Ṭuḡhtigīn b. Ayyūb . . . .	1181
593	-Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā-'il . . . .	1196
598	-Nāṣir Ayyūb. . . .	1201
611	-Muḥaffar Sulaymān . . . .	1214
612	-Mas'ūd Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf . . . .	1215
—625 or 626		—1228

[*Rasūlids*]

A.H.  
650—922

29. MAMLŪK SULTĀNS

A.D.  
1252—1517

Mamlūk means 'owned,' and was generally applied to a white slave. The Mamlūk Sultāns of Egypt were Turkish and Circassian slaves, and had their origin in the purchased body-guard of the Ayyūbid Sultān -Ṣāliḥ Ayyūb. The first of their line was a woman, Queen Shajar-al-durr, widow of -Ṣāliḥ; but a representative of the Ayyūbid family (Mūsā) was accorded the nominal dignity of joint sovereignty for a few years. Then followed a succession of slave kings, divided into two dynasties, the Baḥrī ('of the River') and the Burjī ('of the Fort') who ruled Egypt and Syria down to the beginning of the 16th century. In spite of their short reigns and frequent civil wars and assassinations, they maintained as a rule a well-organized government, and Cairo is still full of proofs of their appreciation of art and their love of building.\* Their warlike qualities were no less conspicuous in their successful resistance to the Crusaders, and to the Tatar hordes that overran Asia and menaced Egypt in the 13th century.

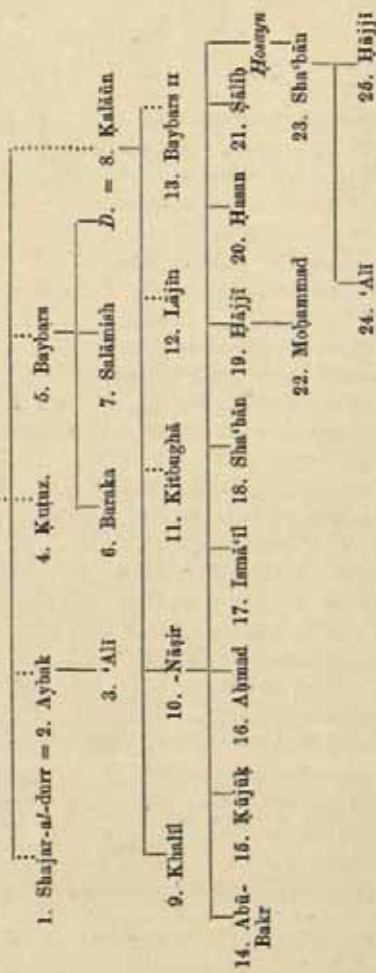
\* See my *Cairo* (1892) chap. iii, and *Art of the Saracens of Egypt* (1886) chap. i.

A.H.	A. BAHRĪ MAMLŪKS	A.D.
648—792		1250—1390
648	Shajar-al-durr . . . . .	1250
648	-Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak . . . . .	1250
655	-Manşūr Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī . . . . .	1257
657	-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Qūṭuz . . . . .	1259
658	-Ẓāhir Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Bundukdārī . . . . .	1260
676	-Sa'id Nāṣir-al-dīn Baraka Khān . . . . .	1277
678	-'Ādil Badr-al-dīn Salāmish . . . . .	1279
678	-Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Qalā'ūn . . . . .	1279
689	-Ashraf Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Khalīl . . . . .	1290
693	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1293
694	-'Ādil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā . . . . .	1294
696	-Manşūr Ḥusām-al-dīn Lājīn . . . . .	1296
698	-Nāṣir Moḥammad (again) . . . . .	1298
708	-Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Jāshankir . . . . .	1308
709	-Nāṣir Moḥammad (third time) . . . . .	1309
741	-Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr . . . . .	1340
742	-Ashraf 'Alā-al-dīn Qūjūq . . . . .	1341
742	-Nāṣir Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad . . . . .	1342
743	-Ṣalīḥ 'Imād-al-dīn Ismā'il . . . . .	1342
746	-Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn Sha'bān . . . . .	1345
747	-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Ḥājji . . . . .	1346
748	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Ḥasan . . . . .	1347
752	-Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Ṣalīḥ . . . . .	1351
755	-Nāṣir Ḥasan (again) . . . . .	1354
762	-Manşūr Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1361
764	-Ashraf Nāṣir-al-dīn Sha'bān . . . . .	1363
778	-Manşūr 'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī . . . . .	1376
783	-Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Ḥājji . . . . .	1381
784	<i>Barqūq</i> (see <i>Burjis</i> ) . . . . .	1382
791	Ḥājji again, with title of -Muẓaffar . . . . .	1389
—792		—1390

[*Burjī Mamlūks*]

## BAHRĪ MAMLŪKS

## -ŞĀLIH AYYŪB



•• Dotted lines indicate the relation between master and slave.



A. H.	B. BURJĪ MAMLÜKS	A. D.
784—922		1382—1517
784	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Barkūk . . . .	1382
	[Interrupted by Hājji 791-2.]	
801	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Faraj . . . .	1398
808	-Manṣūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz . . . .	1405
809	-Nāṣir Faraj (again) . . . .	1406
815	-'Ādil -Musta'in ('Abbāsīd Caliph) . . . .	1412
815	-Mur'ayyad Shaykh . . . .	1412
824	-Muṣaḥḥar Aḥmad . . . .	1421
824	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Taṭār . . . .	1421
824	-Ṣāliḥ Nāṣir-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . .	1421
825	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Bars-bey . . . .	1422
842	-'Azīz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf . . . .	1438
842	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Jaḥmaḥ . . . .	1438
857	-Manṣūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān . . . .	1453
857	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Ināl . . . .	1453
865	-Mur'ayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad . . . .	1460
865	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Khāshḡadam . . . .	1461
872	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Bilbey . . . .	1467
872	-Zāhir Timurbughā . . . .	1468
873	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Kāit-Bey . . . .	1468
901	-Nāṣir Moḥammad . . . .	1495
904	-Zāhir Kānsūh . . . .	1498
905	-Ashraf Jānbālāt . . . .	1499
906	-Ashraf Kānsūh -Ghūrī . . . .	1500
922	-Ashraf Tūmān-Bey . . . .	1516
		—1517
	[Ottoman Sulṭāns.]	

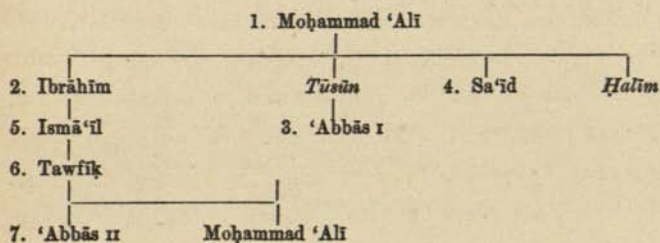
As there are seldom more than two kings of a family in the above list a genealogical table is unnecessary.

A.H.		A.D.
1220—1311	30. KHEDIVES	1805—1893

After the conquest by Salīm I in 1517 (922) Egypt remained for three centuries a Turkish Pāshālik, where, however, the authority of the Pasha sent from Constantinople was minimized by a council of Mamlūk Beys. The arrival of Napoleon in 1798 put an end to this divided system; but after the victories of England at Abū-kīr and Alexandria and the consequent retreat of the French in 1801, the old dissensions revived. In 1805, however, Moḥammad 'Alī, the commander of an Albanian regiment in the Turkish army of Egypt, after massacring a number of the Mamlūk chiefs, made himself master of Cairo. A second massacre in 1811 completed the work, and henceforward Egypt has been governed, in nominal subordination to the Porte, by the dynasty of Moḥammad 'Alī, whose fourth successor, Ismā'īl Pasha, in 1866, adopted the official title of Khedive. Syria was annexed in 1831, but restored to Turkey under pressure of England in 1841. The Sūdān was conquered in successive expeditions, down to the time of Ismā'īl, but abandoned after

the death of General Gordon in 1885. The southern boundary of Egypt is now drawn near the second cataract of the Nile, and since the suppression of 'Arābī's military revolt by English troops in 1883, the administration of Egypt has been conducted under the advice of English officials.

A.H.		A.D.
1220	Moḥammad 'Alī . . . . .	1805
1264	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1848
1264	'Abbās I . . . . .	1848
1270	Sa'id . . . . .	1854
1280	Ismā'il . . . . .	1863
1300	Tawfīq . . . . .	1882
1309	'Abbās II (regnant) . . . . .	1892





## V. ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)

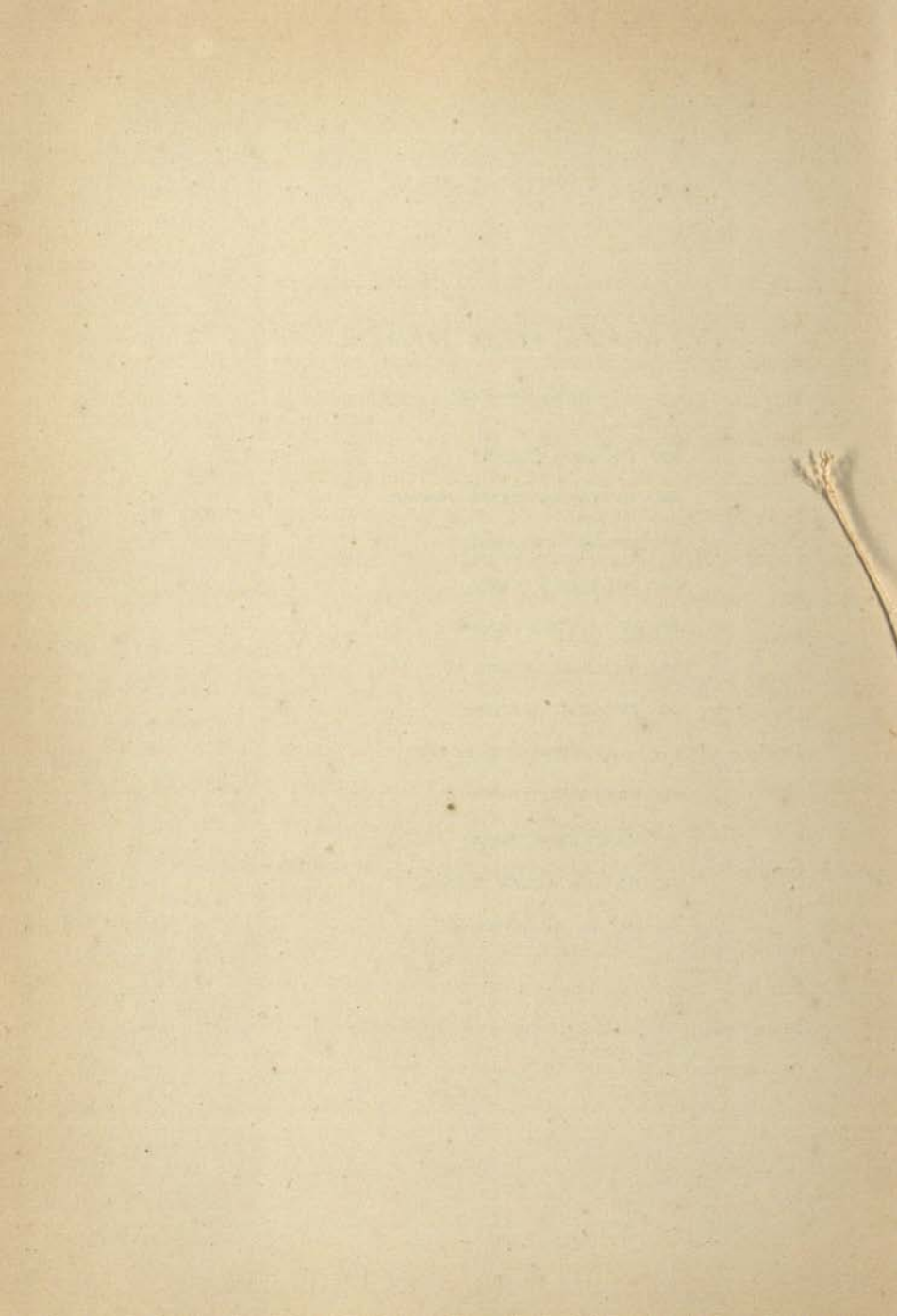
SÆC. IX—XVIII

- 33. ZIYĀDIDS (ZABĪD)
- 34. YA'FURIDS (ṢAN'Ā, JANAD)
- 35. NAJĀḤIDS (ZABĪD)
- 36. ṢULAIḤIDS (ṢAN'Ā)
- 37. HAMDĀNIDS (ṢAN'Ā)
- 38. MAHDIDS (ZABĪD)
- 39. ZURAY'IDS ('ADEN)

AYYŪBIDS (*See EGYPT*)

- 40. RASŪLIDS (YAMAN)
- 41. ṬĀHIRIDS (YAMAN)
- 42. RASSID IMĀMS (SA'DA)
- 43. IMĀMS OF ṢAN'Ā





## V. THE YAMAN

### SÆC. IX—XVIII

The history of Arabia after the Moḥammadan revolution bore a close resemblance to its pre-Islamic annals. The Arabs under the Caliphate were very like the Arabs of 'the Days of Ignórance,' a people of many disconnected tribes headed by chiefs, and many towns and districts governed by Shaykhs, who were sometimes under control, and at others asserted their independence and styled themselves Amírs or Imāms. The Caliphs appointed a governor of the Yaman, and a sub-governor of Mecca or Medína; but the outlying towns recognized chiefly the authority of their local Shaykhs. In the beginning of the third century of the Hijra, which saw the dismemberment of the great Islamic empire by the rise of powerful dynasties on its skirts, the governor of the Yaman followed the example of the Idrísids and Aghlabids in North Africa; and about the time when the Tāhirids were amputating the right hand of the 'Abbāsid empire in Khurāsān, Moḥammad the *Ziyādid* established his authority at Zabīd, the city he had founded in the Tihāma, and thus inaugurated the rule of independent dynasties in Arabia, though the Caliphs still continued to appoint governors at intervals.

A. H.		A. D.
204—409	33. ZIYĀDIDS*	819—1018
	(ZABĪD)	

The Ziyādids, or Banū Ziyād, ruled at Zabīd for two centuries, and their kingdom included a considerable part of the Yaman. As their power waned, various independent rulers and dynasties sprang up: the *Ya'furids* established themselves at Ṣan'ā and Janad; Sulaymān b. Ṭarf subdued a wide territory bordering the northern coast of the Yaman, with 'Aththar for its capital; and the Carmathian 'Alī b. -Faql even plundered Zabīd itself shortly after 904 (292). Under the last Ziyādid, the government of their province fell entirely into the hands of a succession of slaves, until Najāḥ, an Abyssinian slave of Marjān, the last Ziyādid *Maire du palais*, substituted his own dynasty, the *Najāhids*, at Zabīd in 1021 (412).

\* The history of the Arabian dynasties may be read in H. C. Kay's comprehensive work *Yaman, its early mediæval history*, 1892, which includes a translation of the Arabic history of 'Omāra and other important and interesting materials.

A.H.		A.D.
204	Moḥammad b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ziyād . . .	819
245	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad . . . . .	859
289	Ziyād b. Ibrahim . . . . .	901
291?	Abū-l-Jaysh Ishāk b Ibrāhīm . . . .	903?
371	'Abd-Allāh ( <i>or</i> Ziyād, <i>or</i> Ibrāhīm) b Ishāk .	981
—409		—1018

## Vazīra

371	Ruḥd . . . . .	981
e. 373	-Ḥosayn b Salāma . . . . .	983
402	Marjān . . . . .	1011
—412		—1021

Nafīs, 407—12

[*Najādhids*]

A.H.		A.D.
247—345	34. YA'FURIDS	861—956

## (ṢAN'Ā AND JANAD)

247	Ya'fur b. 'Abd-al-Raḥmān . . . . .	861
259	Moḥammad b Ya'fur . . . . .	872
279	'Abd al-Ḳādir b. Aḥmad b. Ya'fur . . .	892
279	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad . . . . .	892
e. 285	As'ad b. Ibrāhīm . . . . .	e. 898
288	<i>Basid Imām -Ḥadī</i> . . . . .	900
299	<i>Carathian 'Alī b. -Faḍl</i> . . . . .	911
303	As'ad <i>restored</i> . . . . .	915
332	Moḥammad b. Ibrāhīm . . . . .	943
352	'Abd-Allāh b. Kaḥṭān . . . . .	963
—387		—997

[Dynasty becomes insignificant]

A.H.		A.D.
412—553	35. NAJĀHIDS	1021—1158
	(ZABĪD)	

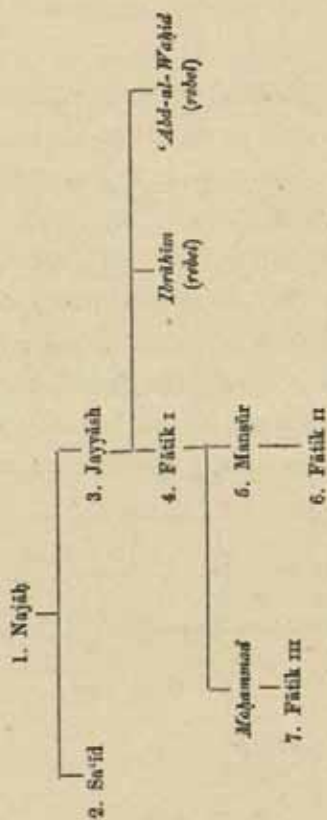
Najāḥ, the Abyssinian slave of the last Mayor of the Palace of the Ziyādid dynasty, ruled Zabīd till his death in 1060 (452); the town was then (454) seized by the Sulayḥids and formed part of their dominions until 473, when the son of Najāḥ recovered it, though it changed hands between the two dynasties several times during his life (see p. 94). After 1089 (482) Zabīd remained continuously with the Najāḥids, until their dynasty (which had fallen, like the Ziyādids, under the influence of vezirs) gave place to the *Mahdids* in 1059 (554).

A.H.		A.D.
412	-Mu'ayyad Najāḥ (+452) . . . . .	1021
454	'Adī -Dā'ī, <i>Sulayḥid</i> . . . . .	1062
473	Sa'id -Aḥwal b. Najāḥ . . . . .	1080
482	Jayyāsh b. Najāḥ . . . . .	1089
498	-Fātik 1 b. Jayyāsh . . . . .	1104
503	-Manṣūr b. -Fātik . . . . .	1109
c. 517	-Fātik 11 b. -Manṣūr . . . . .	c. 1123
531	-Fātik 111 b. Moḥammad b. -Manṣūr . . . . .	1136
—554		—1159

[*Mahdids.*]



NAJAHIDS



A. H.  
429—495

36. SÜLAYHIDS

A. D.  
1037—1101

(ŞAN'Ā)

The *dā'i* (missionary) 'Alī b. Moḥammad, founder of the Shī'ite dynasty of the Sülayhids, or Banū Sulayḥ, made himself independent at Masār in 1037 (429), annexed Zabīd after the death of Najāḥ, in 1062 (454), conquered Şan'ā and all the Yaman by 1063 (455), and took possession of Mecca 455-6. His capital was Şan'ā; but he also held Zabīd until his death in 1080 (473), and his son -Mukarram recovered it in 475, but lost it in 479, took it again about 1088 (481), and almost immediately lost it for the last time. In 480 -Mukarram removed his capital from Şan'ā to Dhū-Jibla in Mikhlāf Ja'far.

A. H.

429

473

484

—492

Abū-Kāmil 'Alī b. Moḥammad . . .

-Mukarram Aḥmad . . .

-Maṣṣūr Abū-Himyar Sabā . . .

A. D.

1037

1080

1091

—1098

'Alī the Sülayhid

Moḥammad -Kāḍī

-Muṣaffar

'Abd-Allāh

1. 'Alī -Dā'i

2. -Mukarram

[Hamdānids of Şan'ā]

Aḥmad

3. -Maṣṣūr Sabā

A. H.  
492—569

37 HAMDĀNIDS

A. D.  
1098—1173

(ŞAN'Ā)

The various branches of the Banū Hamdān were descended from the tribes of Ḥāshid and Bakīl, which held a high rank among the Yaman Arabs, and occupied the country about Şan'ā and Sa'da. They supplied rulers to Şan'ā after the Şulayhids for three quarters of a century, up to the Ayyūbid invasion.

A. H.		A. D.
492	Ḥātim b. -Ghashīm . . . . .	1098
502	'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥātim . . . . .	1108
504	Ma'n b. Ḥātim . . . . .	1110
e. 510	Hishām b. -Ḳubbayt . . . . .	e. 1116
	-Ḥamās b. -Ḳubbayt . . . . .	
	Ḥātim b. -Ḥamās . . . . .	
545	Ḥātim b. Aḥmad . . . . .	1150
556	'Alī -Waḥid b. Ḥātim . . . . .	1160
—569		—1173

[Ayyūbids.]

A.H.  
554—569

## 38. MAHDIDS

A.D.  
1159—1173

(ZABĪD)

The Mahdids, or Banū-l-Mahdī, succeeded the Najāhids at Zabīd. 'Alī b. -Mahdī was a devotee and prophet in the Tihāma, who acquired a following whom he named -Anṣār and Muhājirūn, or Helpers and Refugees (after the example of Moḥammad), and eventually 1150 (545) began to occupy forts and subdue the country, till at length he was able to attack and conquer Zabīd 1159 (554). His successors held the Tihāma, together with some districts and towns beyond, until the Ayyūbid conquest.

A.H.		A.D.
554	'Alī b. -Mahdī . . . . .	1159
554	-Mahdī b. 'Alī . . . . .	1159
558	'Abd-al-Nabī b. 'Alī . . . . .	1162
—569		—1173

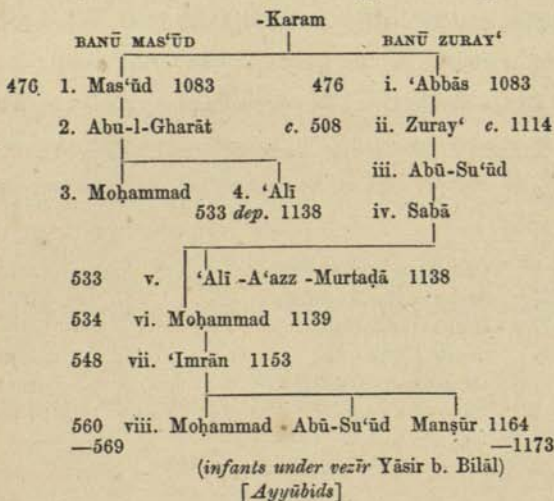
[Ayyūbids.]

A.H.  
476—569

39. ZURAY'IDS  
(‘ADEN)

A.D.  
1083—1173

The two sons of -Karam, ‘Abbās and Mas‘ūd, were appointed joint governors of ‘Aden in 1083 (476) by the Ṣulayḥid -Mukarram, and the joint system of government continued for several generations. The ‘Aden princes Abū-Su‘ūd and Abū-Gharāt asserted their independence of the king of Ṣan‘ā, but were not always able to maintain it. The dynasty was, next to the Ṣulayḥids, the most important in the Yaman, and survived till the Ayyūbid conquest.\*



\* The list is taken from H. C. Kay's *Yaman* (Edw. Arnold, 1892), p. 307.



A. H.  
569—625Ayyūbids  
(YAMAN)A. D.  
1173—1228

The Ayyūbid conquest in 1173 (569) is the great crisis in the mediæval history of Arabia. The kinsmen of Saladin swept over the Yaman and overturned its dynasties with the same uncompromising thoroughness as they displayed in Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia. The Hamdānids of Ṣan'ā, the Mahdids of Zabīd, and the Zuray'ids of 'Aden, were alike suppressed by the Kurdish conqueror Tūrān Shāh, son of Ayyūb, and for half a century, 1173—1227 (569—625) the Yaman remained in the hands of the great family which ruled Egypt and Syria. The list of the Ayyūbids of Arabia has already been given (p. 79) in connexion with the leading branch of Egypt, but is here repeated for convenience.

A. H.		A. D.
569	-Mu'azzam Tūrān -Shāh . . . . .	1173
577	Sayf-al-Islām Toghtigīn . . . . .	1181
593	Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'il . . . . .	1196
598	-Naṣir Ayyūb . . . . .	1201
611	-Muḥaffar Sulaymān . . . . .	1214
612	-Mus'ūd Yūsuf . . . . .	1215
—625		—1228

[Rasūlids]

A.H.  
626—85840. RASŪLIDS  
(YAMAN)A.D.  
1229—1454

The Rasūlids succeeded the Ayyūbids in the government of all the Yaman, from Ḥaḍramawt to Mecca, and their power was maintained for over two centuries. They took their name from an envoy (*rasūl*) of the 'Abbāsīd caliph, whose son, 'Alī b. Rasūl, was appointed governor of Mecca by the last Ayyūbīd Sultān of Arabia, -Mas'ūd, in 1222 (619). On the death of Mas'ūd in 1228 (625) 'Alī's son Nūr-al-dīn 'Omar established his authority over the Yaman.

626	-Maṣṣūr 'Omar b. 'Alī . . . . .	1229
647?	-Muṣaffar Yūsuf . . . . .	1249?
694	-Ashraf 'Omar . . . . .	1295
696	-Mu'ayyad Dāwūd . . . . .	1297
721	-Mujāhid 'Alī . . . . .	1321
764	-Afḍal -'Abbās . . . . .	1363
778	-Ashraf Ismā'il i . . . . .	1376
803	-Nāṣir Aḥmad . . . . .	1400
829	-Maṣṣūr 'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1426
830	-Ashraf Ismā'il ii . . . . .	1427
831	-Zāhir Yaḥyā . . . . .	1428
842	-Ashraf Ismā'il iii . . . . .	1438
845	-Muṣaffar Yūsuf . . . . .	1441

*Rival claimants:*

846	-Mufaddal Moḥammad . . . . .	1442
846	-Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1442
854-8	-Mas'ūd . . . . .	1450-4
855	-Mu'ayyad -Ḥosayn . . . . .	1451

[*Tuhirids.*]

## RASŪLIDS

## RASŪL

'Alī

1. - Mansūr 'Omar

2. - Muzaffar Yūsuf

3. - Ashraf 'Omar

4. - Mu'ayyad Dāwūd

5. - Mujaḥhid 'Alī

6. - Afḍal - 'Abbās

7. - Ashraf Ismā'īl I

8. - Nāṣir Aḥmad

11. - Ḥabīb Yahyā

9. - Mansūr 'Abd-Allāh

10. - Ashraf Ismā'īl II

12. - Ashraf Ismā'īl III

'Omar

13. - Muzaffar Yūsuf

A.H.

850—923

## 41. TĀHIRIDS

(YAMAN)

The Tāhirids, or Banū Tāhir, succeeded to the Yaman on the break-up of the Rasūlids, and maintained their authority until the conquest of Arabia by the last but one of the *Mamlūk Sulṭāns* of Egypt, Ḳānsūh -Ghūrī. The *‘Othmānī Turks* then occupied the country, thus made ready for their rule, in 1517 (923), but were forced to abandon it in 1633, in favour of the native Imāms.

850	{ Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn ‘Āmir I (Zabīd, †870) . }	1446
	{ -Mujāhid Shams-al-dīn ‘Alī (‘Aden, †883) . }	
883	-Manṣūr Tāj-al-dīn ‘Abd-al-Waḥḥāb .	1478
894	-Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn ‘Āmir . . . .	1488
—923		—1517



A. H.		A. D.
280—c. 700	42. RASSID IMĀMS	893—c. 1300
	(SA'DA)	

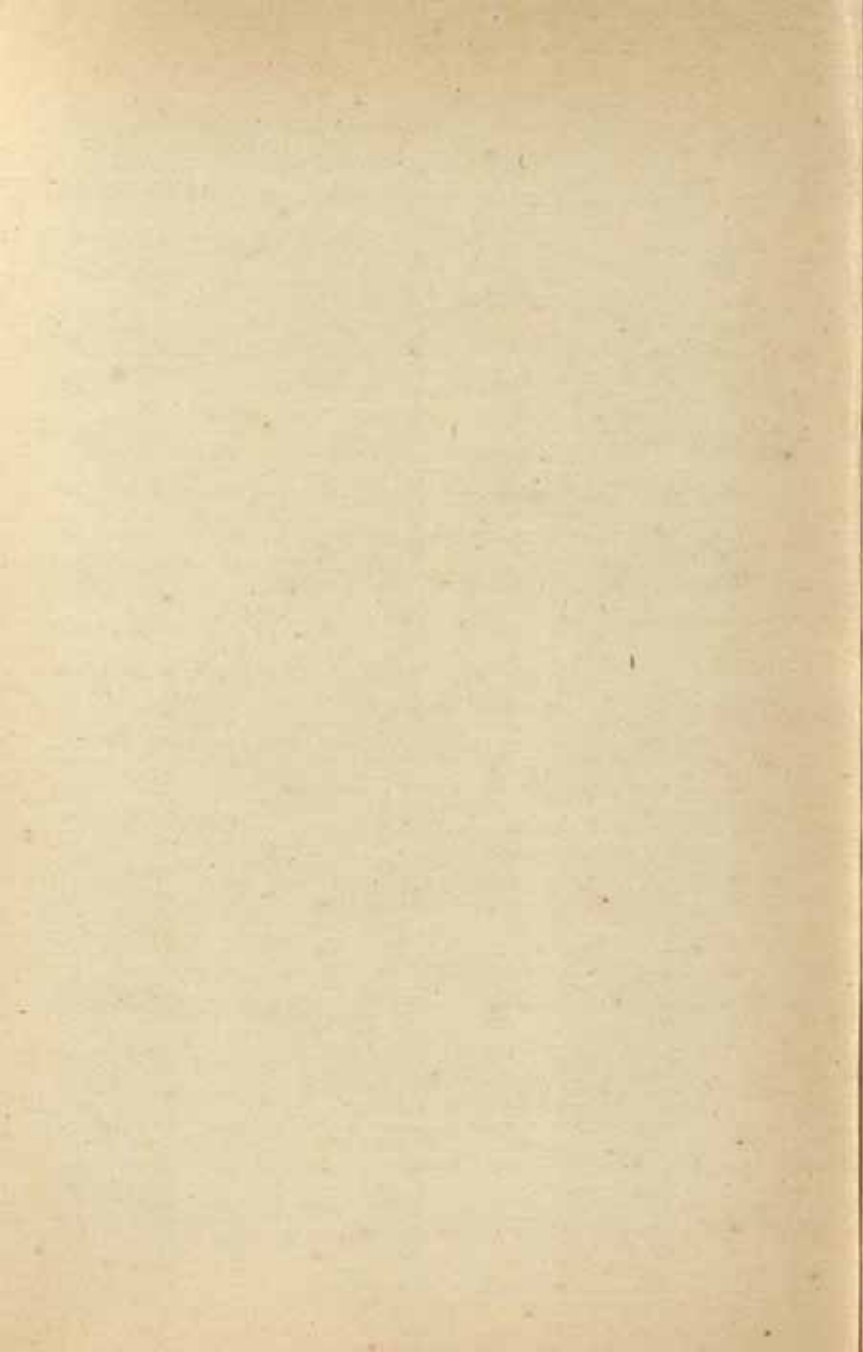
A line of Imāms of the Zaydite sect of the Shī'ites was founded at Sa'da in the Yaman by -Hādī Yahyā, grandson of -Kāsim -Rassi, a schismatic of the time of -Ma'mūn the 'Abbāsīd Caliph, and lasted down to the present day. The series is confused and the dates often uncertain, but the following list and genealogical table give the results of the latest researches.\*

† 246	-Kāsim -Rassi Tarjumān-al-dīn . . . .	† 860
280	-Hādī-ilā-l-ḥaqq Yahyā . . . .	893
298	-Murtaḍā Abū-l-Kāsim Moḥammad . . . .	910
301	-Nāṣir Aḥmad . . . . .	913
324	-Kāsim -Mukhtār . . . . .	935
	Yūsuf -Dā'ī . . . . .	
	-Kāsim -Maṣṣūr . . . . .	
393	-Mahdī -Ḥosayn † 404 . . . . .	1003
426	Abū-Hāshim -Ḥasan . . . . .	1035
430	-Nāṣir Abū-l-Faṭḥ -Daylamī . . . . .	1038
532	-Mutawakkil Aḥmad † 566 . . . . .	1137
593	-Maṣṣūr 'Abd-Allāh † 614 . . . . .	1196
614-23	-Nāṣir 'Izz-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1217-1226
614	-Hādī Najm-al-dīn Yahyā . . . . .	1217
623?	-Mahdī Aḥmad b. -Ḥosayn . . . . .	1226?
656	-Mutawakkil Shams-al-dīn Aḥmad . . . . .	1258
c. 680	-Muntaṣir Dāwūd . . . . .	1281

\* See H. C. Kay's *Yaman*, 1892, for further details.







A.H. A.D.  
c. 1000— 43. IMĀMS OF ṢAN'Ā c. 1591—

The preceding Imāms had their chief seat at Sa'da, but they frequently succeeded in taking Ṣan'ā. It was not, however, until the expulsion of the 'Othmānī Turks in 1635 (1043) that Ṣan'ā became the permanent capital of the Imāmate of the Yaman. The Imāms who ruled there are generally distinguished by the title of Imāms of Ṣan'ā, but they were really only a continuation of the previous line of Sa'da, since their founder was -Kāsim -Maṣṣūr, a descendant of Yūsuf -Dā'i, great-grandson of -Hādī Yahya, the founder of the Rassid Imāmate. The following list, chiefly after Niebuhr, is incomplete, for representatives of the same family still possess authority in the Yaman.

c. 1000	-Kāsim -Maṣṣūr . . . . .	c. 1591
1029	-Mu'ayyad Moḥammad . . . . .	1620
1054	-Mutawakkil Ismā'il . . . . .	1644
1087	-Majid Moḥammad . . . . .	1676
	-Mahdī Ahmād . . . . .	
1093	-Hādī Moḥammad . . . . .	1682
1095	-Mahdī Moḥammad . . . . .	1684
1126	-Naṣir Moḥammad . . . . .	1714
1128	-Mutawakkil -Kāsim . . . . .	1716
1139	-Maṣṣūr -Ḥosayn . . . . .	1726
1139	-Hādī -Majid Moḥammad . . . . .	1726
1140	-Maṣṣūr (restored) . . . . .	1727
1160	-Mahdī -'Abbās . . . . .	1747
c. 1190	-Maṣṣūr . . . . .	c. 1776



## VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII

- 44. ḤAMDĀNIDS (—MŌṢIL, ALEPPO)
- 45. MIRDĀSIDS (ALEPPO)
- 46. 'OḲAYLIDS (—MŌṢIL, ETC.)
- 47. MARWĀNIDS (DIYĀR—BAKR)
- 48. MAZYADIDS (—ḤILLA)





## VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII.

In classifying the Moḥammadan dynasties of Asia, the purely geographical system adopted for Africa must be modified, in order to present the various groups of dynasties in historical sequence. These dynasties fall naturally into the following divisions:—VI. The Arab dynasties of Syria and Mesopotamia previous to the invasion of the Seljūk Turks; VII. The Persian and Transoxiane dynasties before the Seljūks; VIII. The Seljūk family in all its ramifications; IX. The dynasties founded by officers who had served in the Seljūk armies, and subsisting between the decay of the Seljūk power and the invasion of the Mongols; X. The western successors of the Seljūks, especially the ‘Othmānlī Turks; XI. The Mongol family of Chingiz Khān in all its branches; XII. The dynasties which sprang up in Persia on the decline of the Mongol power; XIII. The dynasties which sprang from Timūr

(Tamerlane) in Transoxiana on the decay of the older branch of the Mongols; XIV. The dynasties of India (including Afghānistān).

In this arrangement the geographical progress from west to east is still generally preserved. We have first Syria and Mesopotamia down to the great sweep of the Seljūk invasion; then Persia and Transoxiana to the same epoch. The Seljūks and their officers and successors in the west follow. A new power, that of the Mongols, then comes to sweep away for a time all these lesser dynasties, save the 'Othmānlis. The Mongols in turn grow weak, and their Persian supplanters, notably the several dynasties of Shāha, to the present day, are placed next. Further north and east, the Mongols were continued in a new line, that of Timūr; and the dynasties sprung from this renowned chief, together with their Uzbeg successors in Transoxiana, are brought down to the present day. Still moving eastward, we arrive at India, and begin the series of Moḥammadan dynasties of Hindūstān with their historical source, the Ghaznawids of Afghānistān, and carry them down to the fall of the Mogul Empire and the establishment of British supremacy in India.

The first of these groups is formed of the dynasties founded by Arab tribes in Syria and Mesopotamia. The geographical division is not arbitrary, for the mountains of Kurdistān and the Zagros range form a natural boundary between Persia and Mesopotamia, which, at least in the earlier centuries of Moḥammadan history, was seldom over-stepped. The Buwayhids indeed combined lower Mesopotamia with their Persian empire, but as a rule a dynasty which ruled in Diyār-Bakr or -Jazīra did not extend its sway beyond the mountains to the east, though it frequently spread into Syria. The first group is not only distinct geographically; it is also an ethnological class. With the exception of the Marwānids, who were Kurds, the dynasties classed in this group were all pure Arabs. The Arab tribes which had migrated from their native deserts northwards into Syria and Mesopotamia had always been a political power with which the Caliphs had to reckon, and on the rapid decay of the central authority at Baghdād the various clans which roamed the Syrian desert and the valley of the Euphrates began to form permanent settlements, to occupy towns and forts, and found dynasties. Thus the Taghlib tribe furnished the *Ḥamdānīd* dynasty in -Mōṣil, Aleppo, and other cities;

the Banū Kilāb set the *Mirdāsids* on the throne of Aleppo; the Banū 'Oḡayl established their rule in Diyār-Bakr and -Jazīra (Mesopotamia) and part of -'Irāk (Chaldaea); and the Banū Asad set up the powerful *Manyadid* dynasty at -Ḥilla. Yet while they exercised authority over cities, districts, and even whole provinces, these Arab chiefs did not abandon their national life, but for the most part continued to dwell in tents with their tribesmen, and wander as the needs of their flocks or their predatory instincts suggested.



A. H.  
317—394

44. *HAMDĀNIDS*

A. D.  
929—1003

(-MŌṢIL, ALEPPO, ETC.)

The *Ḥamdānid* family, descended from the Arab tribe of Taghlib, had settled in the neighbourhood of -Mōṣil, and *Ḥamdān* b. *Ḥamdūn* had taken a prominent part in the political events of that city as early as 873 (260). In 894 (281) Moḥammad b. *Ḥamdān* was in possession of Māridīn, but was expelled by the Caliph -Mu'taḍid; in 904 (292) Abū-l-Ḥayjā 'Abd-Allāh b. *Ḥamdān* was appointed governor of -Mōṣil and its dependencies; and from this time the power of the *Ḥamdānids* greatly increased. In 919 (307) Ibrāhīm b. *Ḥamdān* was made governor of Diyār-Rabī'a, where he was succeeded by his brother Dāwūd in 921 (309); Sa'īd b. *Ḥamdān* became governor of Nahāwand in 924 (312), and several other members of the family received appointments. 'Abd-Allāh made his son -Ḥasan his lieutenant at -Mōṣil, which, with an interval, (317—319), the latter held, together with Diyār-Rabī'a, and Diyār-Bakr, until his deposition by his son Abū-Taghlib in 968 (358). In 941 (330) he was given the title of *Nāṣir-al-dawla* by the Caliph; and at the same time his brother 'Alī was named *Sayf-al-dawla*.

The latter, after governing Wāsiṭ, took Aleppo from the Ikbshīdids in 944 (333), and won a great reputation in his wars against the Greeks. The Ḥamdānids were Shī'ites, and Sayf-al-dawla paid homage to the Fātimid Caliphs. After the deaths of these two brothers, the power of the dynasty rapidly declined. The *Fātimids* absorbed the dominions of Sayf-al-dawla's grandsons in Syria, and the *Buwayhids* ousted Abū-Taghlib from Mesopotamia in 977-9 (367-9). The recovery of -Mōṣil by his brothers -Ḥosayn and Abū-Ṭāhir was but a temporary and brief revival.

## I. OF -MŌṢIL

317	Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū-Moḥammad -Ḥasan	929
358	'Uddat-al-dawla Abū-Taghlib -Ghaḍanfīr	968
—369		—979
371	{ Abū-Ṭāhir Ibrāhīm . . . .	981
—380	{ Abū-'Abd-Allāh -Ḥosayn . . . .	—991

[*Bucayhids*, '*Oḡaylids*]

## II. OF ALEPPO

333	Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . .	944
356	Sa'd-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharif . .	967
381	Sa'id-al-dawla Abū-l-Faḍāl Sa'id . .	991
392	{ Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . . .	1001
394	{ Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharif . . . .	1003

[*Fātimids*]



A. H.  
414—472

## 45. MIRDĀSIDS

A. D.  
1023—1079

(ALEPPO)

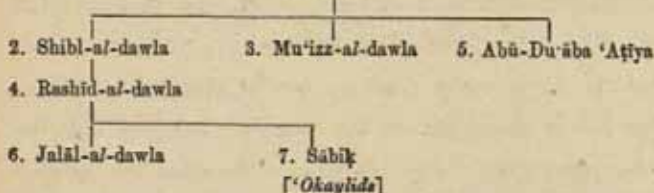
Asad-*al-dawla* Abū-ʿAlī Šāliḥ b. Mirdās, of the Arab tribe of the Banū Kilāb, raided the neighbourhood of Aleppo (Ḥalab) with his Bedouins as early as 1011; and in 1023 (414) the inhabitants revolted against the Fāṭimid governor, and delivered the city to Šāliḥ, who ruled Aleppo until killed in a battle with the Egyptians in 1029 (420). His son Shibl-*al-dawla* Naṣr succeeded him, but was also killed by the Fāṭimid army in 1037 (429), and it was not until five years later that another son, Muʿizz-*al-dawla* Tamāl, who had governed -Raḥba, recovered Aleppo from the Egyptians. In 1057 (449) Tamāl again abandoned Aleppo to Egypt, whilst his brother ʿAṭīya occupied -Raḥba. This fresh Fāṭimid rule was terminated in 1060 (452) by the conquest of the city by Rashīd-*al-dawla*, son of Shibl-*al-dawla*; but he was expelled in the following year by his uncle Muʿizz-*al-dawla*, who died in 454, and bequeathed Aleppo to his brother ʿAṭīya. Rashīd-*al-dawla*, however, recovered the city in the same year,

and 'Atīya seized -Raḳḳa, whence he was expelled by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim b. Kuraysh in 1070 (463). Rashid-al-dawla was succeeded in 468 by his son Jalāl-al-dawla, who took Manbij from the Greeks, and whose brother Sābiḳ (or Shabīb) held Aleppo until its conquest by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim in 1079 (472).\*

414	Ṣalīb b. Mirdās . . . . .	1023
420	Shibl-al-dawla Abū -Kāmil Naṣr . . . . .	1029
429	Fāṭimids . . . . .	1037
434	Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū 'Ulwān Tamāl . . . . .	1042
449	Fāṭimids . . . . .	1057
452	Rashid-al-dawla Maḥmūd . . . . .	1060
453	Mu'izz-al-dawla restored . . . . .	1061
454	Abū-Du'āba 'Atīya . . . . .	1062
454	Rashid-al-dawla restored . . . . .	1062
468	Jalāl-al-dawla (Ṣamṣām-al-dawla) Naṣr . . . . .	1075
468	Abū-l-Faḍāl Sābiḳ . . . . .	1078
—472		—1079

## MIRDĀS

## 1. Ṣalīb



\* See H. Sauvage, *A Dinar of Salih ibn Mirdas of Aleppo* (*Numismatic Chronicle*, 1873).



A.H.  
386—489

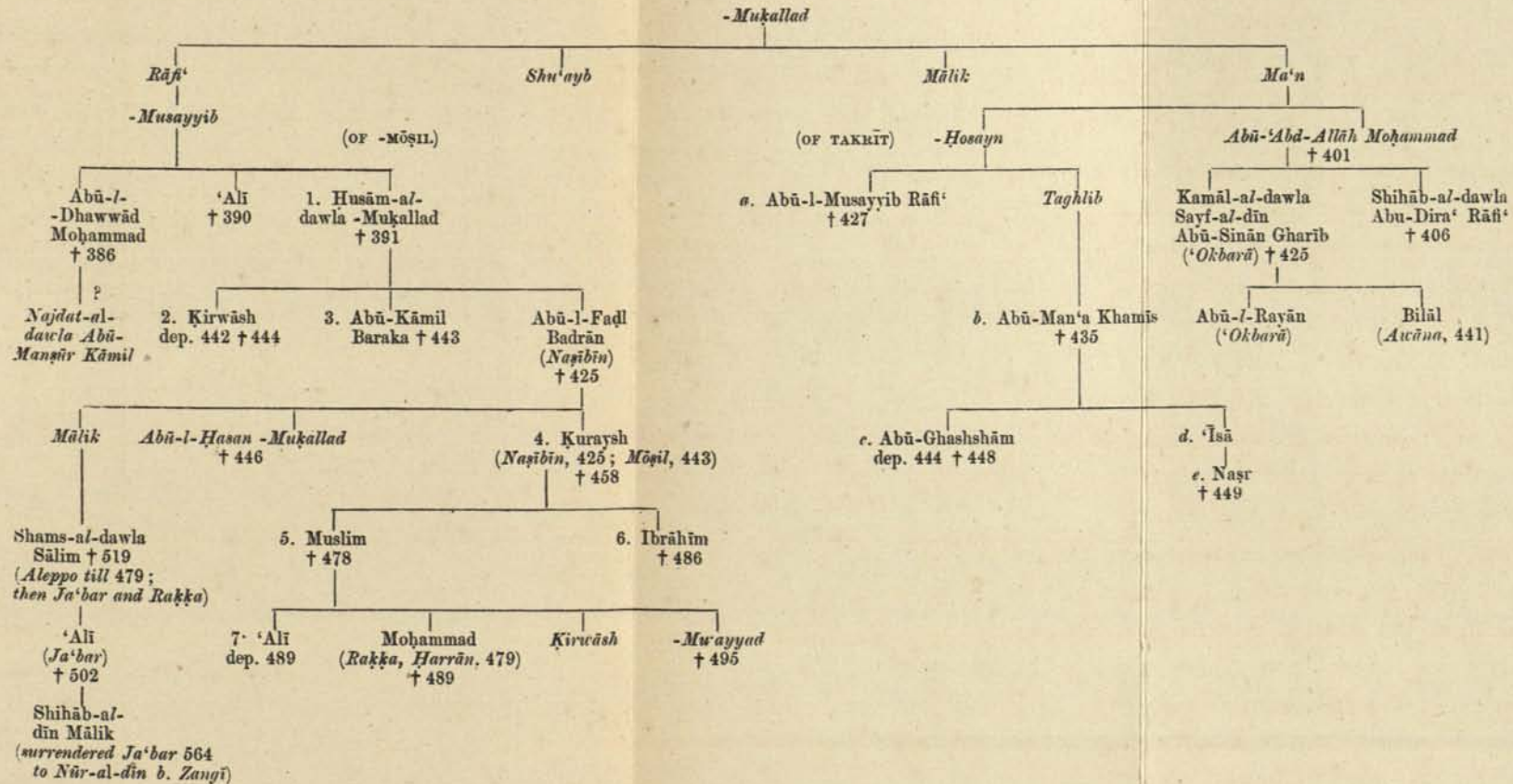
46. 'OḲAYLIDS

A.D.  
996—1096

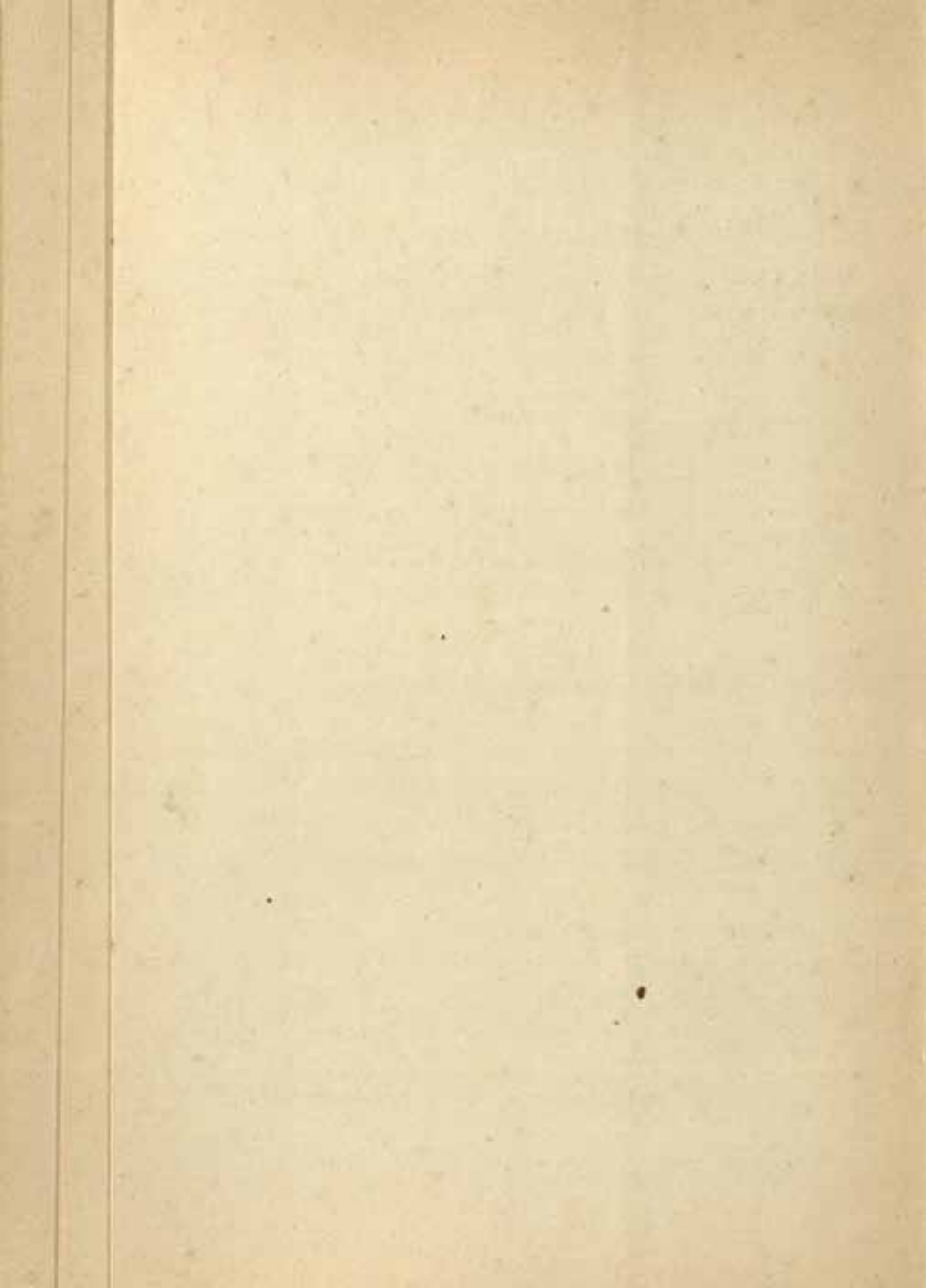
(-MŌṢIL, ETC.)

The Banū 'Oḳayl, or 'Oḳaylids, a very large Arab clan, formed one of the five divisions of the Banū Ka'b, of the Modarite tribes of Arabia; and after their adoption of Islām their sub-clans spread over parts of Syria, -'Irāḳ, and even North Africa and Andalusia. In the early days of the 'Abbāsīd Caliphate, -'Irāḳ was full of 'Oḳaylids. The Banū Muntafīḳ, one of their sub-clans, migrated to the marshy country about -Baṣra, called the Baṭīḥa or Baṭā-iḥ ('The Swamps'), under the family of Ma'rūf; the Banū Khafāja for centuries occupied themselves in looting caravans in the deserts of -'Irāḳ, as late as 1327; while the Banū 'Obāda inhabited, with the Banū Muntafīḳ, the country between -Kūfa, Wāsiṭ, and -Baṣra, and eventually furnished the line of 'Oḳaylid princes of -Mōṣil. In the fourth century of the Hijra, the 'Oḳaylids of Syria and -'Irāḳ were tributary to the powerful Arab dynasty of Ḥamdānids, but on the fall of these princes, the 'Oḳaylids attained independent sovereignty. Abū-Dhawwād Moḥammad was granted by the last of the Ḥamdānids the cities of Naṣībīn and Balad in 989 (379), to which he added -Mōṣil in 380, but

## 'OḠAYLIDS



[Muḡyī-al-dīn Abū-l-Ḥaṭīth Muḡārīsh, descended from Shu'ayb b. -Muḡallad, governed 'Ana and Ḥaḍīṭha, and was succeeded, 499, by his son Sulaymān, who died in 528. Muḡammad, descended from Mālik b. -Muḡallad, governed Hīt in 496. See H. C. Kay, *Notes on the History of the Banū 'Oḡayl*, J.R.A.S.]



was expelled by the Buwayhids in 381. His brother Muḳallad was more successful; he took -Mōṣil in 996 (386), and was confirmed in the government, together with -Kūfa, -Ḳaṣr, and -Jāmi‘ān, by Bahā-*al*-dawla the Buwayhid, on condition of tribute; to which were presently added -Anbār, -Madā’in, and Daḳūḳā. In the time of Muslim b. Ḳuraysh, the dominions of the ‘Oḳaylid of -Mōṣil extended from the neighbourhood of Baghdād to Aleppo. On his death, the principality speedily decayed in power, and -Mōṣil, its capital, was conquered by a Turkish adventurer, Ḳawām-*al*-dawla Karbuḳā in 1096, (489), and merged in the Seljūḳ empire. Other branches, or individual chiefs, of the ‘Oḳaylids, who governed various small towns in Syria and Mesopotamia, are indicated in the genealogical table. After the destruction of their power in Mesopotamia the ‘Oḳaylids returned to their old camping grounds in -Baḥrayn.

386	Ḥunām- <i>al</i> -dawla -Muḳallad . . . . .	996
391	Mu‘tamid- <i>al</i> -dawla Ḳirwāsh . . . . .	1000
442	Za‘im- <i>al</i> -dawla Abū-Ḳāmil Baraka . . . . .	1050
443	‘Alam- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Ma‘ālī Ḳuraysh . . . . .	1051
453	Sharaf- <i>al</i> -dawla Abū-l-Makārīm Muslim . . . . .	1061
478	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1086
486	‘Alī . . . . .	1093
—489	[Seljūḳs]	—1096



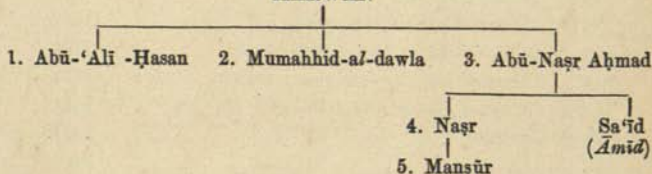
A.H.		A.D.
380—489	47. MARWĀNIDS	990—1096

## (DIYĀR-BAKR)

On the death of Bād, governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā, in 990 (380) his sister's son, Abū-'Alī b. Marwān, a Kurd by race, succeeded to his dominions, which included the chief towns of Diyār-Bakr, such as Āmid, Arzan, Mayyā-fāriḳīn, and Kayfā. His successor paid homage to the Fāṭimid Caliph of Egypt, and was rewarded with the government of Aleppo, as the Caliph's officer, for a time, in succession to the expelled Ḥamdānids. The Marwānids also acknowledged the suzerainty of the Buwayhids; but vanished upon the invasion of the Seljūks.

380	Abū-'Alī -Ḥasan . . . . .	990
387	Mumahhid-a/-dawla Abū-Manṣūr . . . . .	997
402	Naṣr-a/-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad . . . . .	1011
453	Nizām-a/-dawla Naṣr . . . . .	1061
472	Manṣūr . . . . .	1079
—489		—1096

## MARWĀN



[Seljūks]



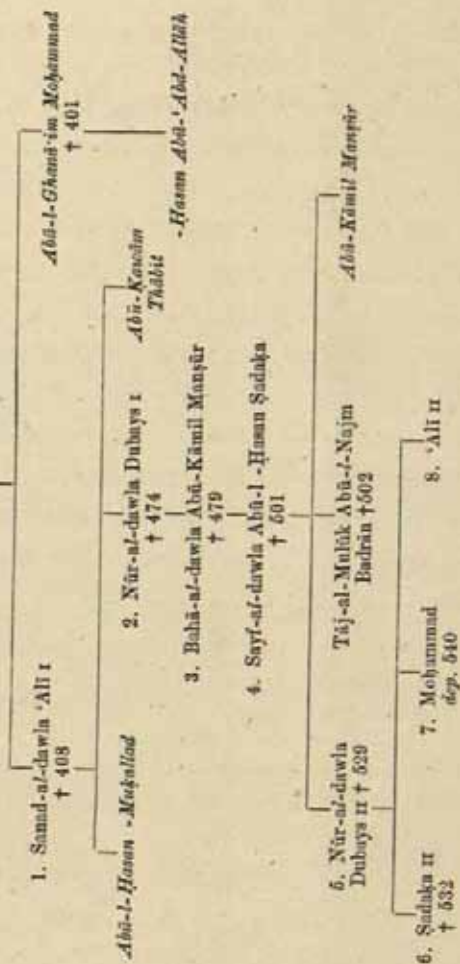
A.H.  
403—54548. MAZYADIDS  
(-HILLA)A.D.  
1012—1150

The Banū Mazyad, a tribe of the Banū Asad, after leaving Arabia, spread over the deserts to -Kādisīya on the left bank of the Tigris. The fourth of the dynasty, Ṣadaqa, built his new capital of -Hilla on the site of the town of -Jāmi'ān in 1101 (495), and the beauty of its buildings and extent of its trade were long celebrated. Ṣadaqa is one of the great heroes of Arab history, extolled by poets and chroniclers. The dynasty declined after his death, and in 1162 (558) the Caliph -Mustanjid attacked the tribes of the Banū Asad in -'Irāk, and killed 4000 of their fighting men, so that they disappeared from the Euphrates country. The Banū Muntaṣiḡ of the Batiha succeeded to part of their territory; the Zangids replaced them in power.

403	Sanad-al-dawla 'Alī I . . . . .	1012
408	Nūr-al-dawla Dubays I . . . . .	1017
474	Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Manṣūr . . . . .	1081
479	Sayf-al-dawla Ṣadaqa I . . . . .	1086
501	Nūr-al-dawla Dubays II . . . . .	1107
529	Ṣadaqa II . . . . .	1134
532	Moḥammad . . . . .	1137
540	'Alī II . . . . .	1145
—545		—1150

[Zangids]

## MAZYAD -ASADĪ



## VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

49. DULAFIDS (KURDISTĀN)
50. SĀJIDS (ADHARBĪJĀN)
51. 'ALIDS (TABARISTĀN)
52. TĀHIRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)
53. ŠAFFĀRIDS (PERSIA)
54. ŠĀMĀNIDS (TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)
55. ĪLAK KHĀNS (TURKISTĀN)
56. ZIYĀRIDS (JURJĀN)
57. ḤASANWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)
58. BUWAYHIDS (SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -'IRĀK)
59. KĀKWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)



## VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

### (PERSIAN PERIOD)

#### SÆC. IX—XI

The following group of dynasties ruling in Persia and the province of *Mā-warā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus), or Transoxiana, up to the inroad of the Seljūks, belongs to the period of Persian revival. The Caliph -Ma'mūn, whose mother was a Persian slave, attained to the Caliphate, and dethroned his brother -Amīn, by the aid of Persian troops raised in Khurāsān; his power was maintained by his Persian adherents; and his policy was unlimited conciliation of Persian national aspirations. The result was a revival of Persian influences at the expense of the old Arab polity, and the consequent weakening of the State. The great officers, governors, and generals, in the provinces began to acquire a dangerous degree of power, which -Ma'mūn and his successors in the Caliphate were unable to curb, and various Persian dynasties, professing a merely nominal



dependence upon the Caliphs, sprang up, just as the Arab tribes of Mesopotamia further west asserted their authority against the decrepit Caliphate. Some dynasties, such as the Buwayhids, were not even orthodox, but professed the Shi'ite tenets, which have always been popular in Persia, as they are at this day. Although the period is characteristically Persian, it is not to be assumed that all the dynasts were Persians by race. Abū-Dulaf, for example, was an Arab, Hasanwayh a Kurd, whilst the Īlak Khāns were Turks. The chief dynasties, however, were of Persian origin.

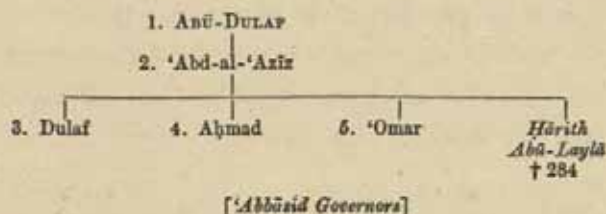
A.H.  
c. 210—c. 285

49. DULAFIDS  
(KURDISTÂN)

A.D.  
c. 825—c. 898

Abū-Dulaf -'Ijlī was an officer of the Caliph -Amīn, and received the government of Hamadhān, in which he was succeeded by his son 'Abd-al-'Azīz and his grandsons. 'Omar b. 'Abd-al-'Azīz increased his dominions by the acquisition of Iṣpahān and Nahāwand in 281. They were succeeded by other governors of the Caliphs.

c. 210	Abū-Dulaf -Kāsim b. Idrīs -'Ijlī . . .	c. 825
228	'Abd-al-'Azīz . . . . .	842
260	Dulaf . . . . .	873
265	Aḥmad . . . . .	878
280	'Omar . . . . .	893
—c. 285		—c. 898



A.H.		A.D.
266—c. 318	50. SĀJIDS	879—c. 930

## (ADHARBĪJĀN)

Abū-l-Saj Dīvdād was governor of -Kūfa and -Ahwāz at the time of his death, 879 (266). At that date his son Moḥammad was governor of the Hijāz; but was transferred to -Anbār in 269; and then to Adharbījān in 276, to which was added Armenia in 298 (285). On his death his brother Yūsuf, who had been Wālī of Mecca in 884 (271), succeeded to the government of Armenia and Adharbījān, setting aside Moḥammad's son Dīvdād. Yūsuf invaded -Rayy in 918 (306) and was imprisoned by the Caliph in the following year, but was restored to his appointments in 922 (310). He annexed -Rayy in 311, and waged war upon the Carmathians. In 931 (319) the government of Adharbījān was vested in Muḥṣib, a freedman of Yūsuf's.

266	Abū-l-Saj Dīvdād <i>died</i>	879
276	Moḥammad -Atshīn b. Dīvdād	889
288	Yūsuf b. Dīvdād	900
315	Abū-l-Musāfir -Fatḥ b. Moḥammad	927
—c. 318		—c. 930

[*Abbāsid Governors*]

A.H.  
250—316

51. 'ALIDS

A.D.  
864—928

(TABARISTĀN)

The branch of 'Alid, or Zaydite, Imāms who ruled at Sa'da in the Yaman has already been noticed (p. 102). Other members of the same family, descendants of either -Ḥasan or -Ḥosayn, the grandsons of the prophet Moḥammad, long maintained their rights to the Imāmate or Caliphate in the provinces bordering the southern shore of the Caspian, Daylam, Ṭabaristān, and Gilān. A list of merely spiritual pontiffs, or sporadic rebels, is beyond the present purpose, but in 864 (250) the 'Alids gained possession of Ṭabaristān, became a power, struck coins, and held the province for sixty-four years, until expelled by the *Sāmānids*. After this event, several rival houses of 'Alids continued to maintain themselves in Gilān and Daylam, and at least one of them, Abū-l-Faḍl Ja'far -Thā'ir fi-llāh, exercised the royal privilege of coinage.

250	-Ḥasan b. Zayd . . . . .	864
270	Moḥammad b. Zayd . . . . .	883
287	<i>Sāmānid government</i> . . . . .	900
301	-Nāṣir Ḥasan b. 'Alī -Utrūsh . . . . .	913
304	-Ḥasan b. -Kāsim . . . . .	916
—316		—928

[*Sāmānids; Zayārids.*]

A.H.  
205—259

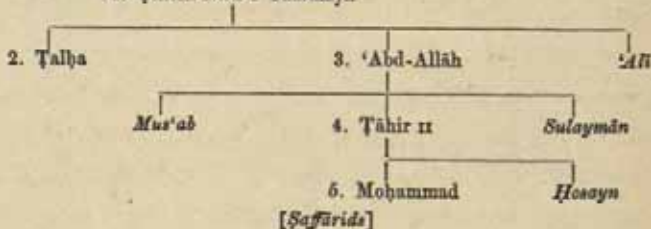
52. TĀHIRIDS  
(KHURĀSĀN)

A.D.  
820—872

Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn ('Ambidexter'), the celebrated general of -Ma'mūn, descended from a Persian slave, was appointed by that Caliph to the government of Khurāsān in 820 (205), where he and his dynasty became practically independent, though holding their authority by patent of the Caliphs and with express acknowledgment of vassalage. They did not attempt to extend their power much beyond the borders of their province, and after half a century collapsed tamely before the attack of Ya'qūb b. Layth the *Ṣaffārid*.

205	Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn . . . . .	820
207	Tālḥa . . . . .	822
213	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	828
230	Tāhir II . . . . .	844
248	Moḥammad . . . . .	862
—259		—872

1. TĀHIR DHŪ-L-YAMĪNAYN





A.H.  
254—290

53. ŞAFFĀRIDS

A.D.  
867—903

(PERSIA)

Ya'qūb, the son of -Layth the Şaffār ('Coppersmith'), was by a freak of fortune promoted from the leadership of a band of outlaws to a post of trust at the Court of the Caliph's governor of the province of Sijistān (Sīstān, or Nīmrūz), whom he eventually succeeded, sometime before 868 (255). By that year he had annexed Herāt and occupied Fārs, including the capital Shīrāz, to which he soon added Balkh and Tukhāristān, and in 872 (259) took Khurāsān from the Ṭāhirids. After an expedition in Ṭabaristān, where he defeated Ḥasan b. Zayd the 'Alid, he openly revolted against the Caliph -Mu'tamid, and advanced through Shīrāz and -Ahwāz upon Baghdād; but was routed by the Caliph's brother -Muwaffaq, and died in 878 (265). His brother and successor 'Amr was confirmed in the governments of Khurāsān, Fārs, Kurdistān, and Sijistān. The Caliph, however, distrusting 'Amr's increasing power, induced Ismā'il the Sāmānīd to attack him in 900 (287), when the

Šaffārid was defeated and made prisoner. His grandson Ṭāhir succeeded him in Sijistān, but, endeavouring to re-establish the power of his house in Fārs, was imprisoned 903 (290). Two other members of the family vainly sought to recover its lost territory. In 296 Sijistān was granted to the Sāmānids, but the Šaffārids continued for nearly a century to aim at the possession of this province, and several of them succeeded in holding it for a time.\*

254	Ya'kūb b. -Layth . . . . .	868
265	'Amr b. -Layth . . . . .	878
287	Ṭāhir b. Moḥammad b. 'Amr . . . . .	900
-296		-903

[Sāmānids]

\* See H. Sauvage, *Sur un fele Šaffāride inédit de la Collection de M. Ch. de l'École (Numismatique Chronicle, 1881)* for an account of the later Šaffārids of Sijistān.

A.H.  
261—389

## 54. SĀMĀNIDS

A.D.  
874—999

(TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)

Sāmān, a Persian noble of Balkh, being aided by Asad b. 'Abd-Allāh, the governor of Khurāsān, renounced Zoroastrianism, embraced Islām, and named his son Asad after his protector. Asad's four sons all distinguished themselves in the service of the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and were rewarded about 819 (204) with provincial governments: Nūḥ had Samarḳand; Aḥmad, Farghāna; Yahyā, -Shāsh; and Ilyās, Herāt. Aḥmad took the lead among his brothers, and not only succeeded Nūḥ at Samarḳand, but incorporated Kāshghar in his dominions. His second son Ismā'il took Khurāsān from the Ṣaffārids in 903 (290), defeated Moḥammad b. Zayd the 'Alid of Ṭabaristān, and brought under his sway the whole territory from the Great Desert to the Persian Gulf, and from the borders of India to near Baghdād. His power was most firmly established in Transoxiana, where Bukhārā and Samarḳand became the centre of civilisation, learning, art, and scholarship for a large part of the Moḥammadan world. His successors were weakened by rebellions in Khurāsān and Sijistān and by the growing power of

the *Bucayhids*. In half a century they were restricted to little more than Transoxiana and Khurāsān, whilst the real power fell more and more into the hands of the Turkish slaves with whom they filled their Court. One of these, Alptigin, founded the dynasty of the *Ghaznawids*, which in 994 (384) succeeded to the Sāmānid territory south of the Oxus. North of the river their power was curtailed by the *Īlak Khāns* of Turkistān, who had acquired the leadership of the Turkish tribes from Farghāna to the borders of China, and after invading Transoxiana and taking Bukhārā in 990 (380), finally put an end to the Sāmānid dynasty in 999 (389); though Ibrāhīm -Muntaṣir continued to fight for the throne till 1104 (395).

A. H.		A. D.
261	Naṣr 1 b. Aḥmad . . . . .	874
279	Ismā'īl b. Aḥmad . . . . .	892
295	Aḥmad b. Ismā'īl . . . . .	907
301	Naṣr 11 b. Aḥmad . . . . .	913
331	Nūḥ 1 b. Naṣr . . . . .	942
343	'Abd-al-Malik 1 b. Nūḥ . . . . .	954
350	Manṣūr 1 b. Nūḥ . . . . .	961
366	Nūḥ 11 b. Manṣūr . . . . .	976
387	Manṣūr 11 b. Nūḥ 11 . . . . .	997
389	'Abd-al-Malik 11 b. Nūḥ 11 . . . . .	999

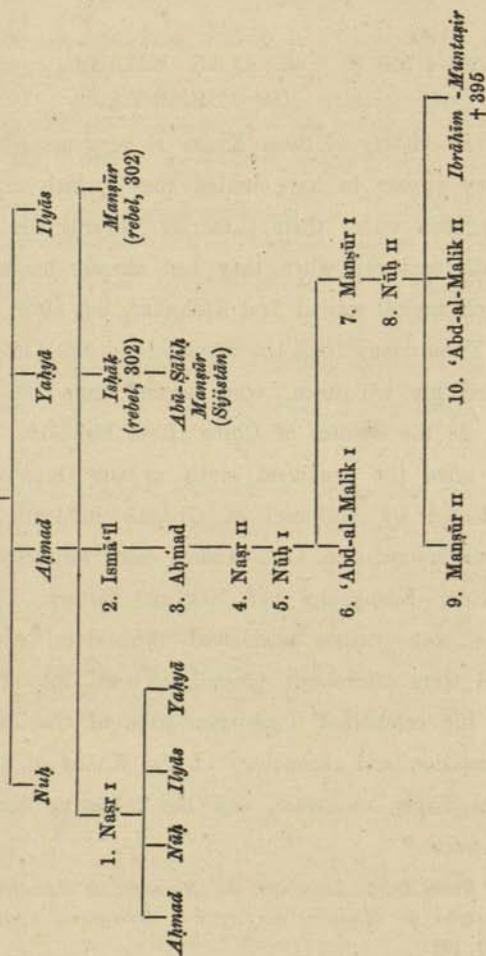
[*Khāns of Turkistān; Ghaznawids*]



## SĀMĀNIDS

SĀMĀN

Asad





A.H.

c. 320—c. 560

A.D.

c. 932—c. 1165

## 55. ĪLAK KHĀNS

## OF TURKISTĀN

The history of these Khāns is very meagrely recorded. They appear to have united the Turkish tribes east of Farghāna under their authority towards the end of the tenth century, when they had already become Muslims. Their capital was at first Kāshghar, but after the conquest of Transoxiana from the Sāmānids in 999 (389) Īlak Naṣr ruled his tribesmen, who roamed from the Caspian as far as the borders of China, from Bukhārā. An attempt to seize the provinces south of the Oxus was signally defeated by Maḥmūd of Ghazna in 1007 (398), and henceforward the Īlak Khāns were restricted to Transoxiana, Kāshghar, and Eastern Tartary. Under their rule, many tribes established themselves in Transoxiana and were afterwards pressed forward into Persia: such as the celebrated Turkomān tribe of the *Seljuks*. The succession and chronology of the Khāns of Turkistān are exceedingly uncertain, and the following list is merely tentative.\*

\* From Dorn, *Inventaire des Monnaies de l'Institut des langues orientales du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères*, Appendice (Petersburg, 1881).

'Abd-al-Ḳarīm Satuk

Mūsā b. Satuk

- † 383—4 Shihāb-al-dawla Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Sulaymān  
 c. 389—400 Abū-l-Ḥosayn Naṣr 1 b. 'Alī  
 c. 401—407 Ḳuṭb-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad 1 b. 'Alī  
 c. 403—408 Sharaf-al-dīn Tughān Khān b. 'Alī  
 Abū-l-Muḥaffar Arelān Khān 1 b. 'Alī  
 † 423 Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān 1  
 c. 421—425 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Arelān Khān 11  
 c. 425—435 Maḥmūd 1 Bughrā Khān

*In the West*

Chaghrtigin

- c. 440—460 Abū-l-Muḥaffar 'Imād-al-dawla Ibrāhīm Tufghāj  
 or Taṣḳāj Khān b. Naṣr  
 † 472 Shams-al-Mulk Naṣr 11 b. Taṣḳāj  
 Khiḍr Khān b. Taṣḳāj  
 † 488 Aḥmad Khān 11 b. Khiḍr  
 † 490-5 Maḥmūd Khān 11  
 † 495 Ḳadr Khān 11 b. 'Omar b. Aḥmad  
 Maḥmūd Arelān Khān 111 b. Sulaymān  
 Abū-l-Ma'ālī Ḥasan Tigīn b. 'Alī  
 Bukn-al-dīn Maḥmūd Khān 111 b. Arelān  
 c. 558 Ḳilij Taṣghāj Khān b. Moḥammad  
 Jalāl-al-dīn 'Alī Gürkān b. Ḥasan Tigīn

*In the East.*

- 439—55 Tughril Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān  
 455 Tighril Tigīn b. Tughril  
 455?—496 Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Yūsuf Ḳadr Khān  
 Nūr-al-dawla Aḥmad b. Arelān Khān

A.H.

316—434

A.D.

56. ZIYĀRIDS

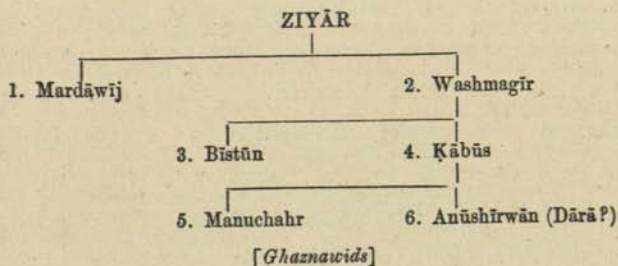
928—1042

(JURJĀN)

The southern shore of the Caspian had never been well affected to the Caliphate, and the followers of 'Alī had repeatedly established their heterodox power in these regions (see p. 127); nor were the Sāmānids more successful than the Caliphs in maintaining their authority there. Taking advantage of this, Mardāwīj b. Ziyār, descended from a long line of princes, made himself independent in Ṭabaristān and Jurjān, and even occupied Iṣpahān and Hamadhān, and pushed his forces as far as Ḥulwān, on the Mesopotamian frontier, between the years 928—931 (316—319). He was the patron of the Buwayhids, and gave 'Alī b. Buwayh his first appointment as governor of Karaj. Mardāwīj held his dominions as titular vassal of the 'Abbāsīd Caliph: his brother and successor Washmagīr paid nominal homage to the Sāmānids as well. After the rise of the *Bucayhids* in 932 (320), the authority of the Ziyārīds scarcely extended beyond the borders of Jurjān and Ṭabaristān;

and Kābūs was even exiled for 18 years (371—389) by the Buwayhid Mu'ayyid-al-dawla. On his return, however, he recovered Gilān as well as his former provinces, in which his sons succeeded him, until dispossessed by the *Ghaznawids*.

316	Mardāwīj b. Ziyār . . . . .	928
323	Ẓahīr-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr Washmagīr . . . . .	935
356	Bistūn . . . . .	967
366	Shams-al-Ma'ālī Kābūs . . . . .	976
403	Falak-al-Ma'ālī Manuchahr . . . . .	1012
420	Anūshīrwān (Dārā?) . . . . .	1029
—434		—1042





A. H.

c. 348—406

A. D.

c. 959—1015

57. ḤASANWAYHIDS

(KURDISTĀN)

Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn -Barzikānī was the chief of one of the Kurdish tribes which, like the Marwānids, began to make themselves prominent in the tenth century; before the middle of which he had possessed himself of a large part of Kurdistan, including the towns of Dīnawār, Hamadhān, Nahāwand, the fortress of Sarmāj, etc. His power was so considerable that the Buwayhids did not disturb him, and at his death 'Aḡud-al-dawla of that dynasty, after annexing his dominions, appointed Badr b. Ḥasanwayh as governor over his late father's province. Badr still further enhanced the dignity and authority of his family, and was decorated by the Caliph with the title of Nāṣir-al-dawla. His grandson Zāhir, who succeeded him in 1014 (405), only kept his position for a year, after which he was expelled by Shams-al-dawla the Buwayhid, and was shortly afterwards killed.

c. 348	Ḥasanwayh b. -Ḥosayn . . . . .	c. 959
369	Nāṣir-al-dīn Abū-l-Najm Badr b. Ḥasanwayh . . . . .	979
405	Zāhir b. Hilāl († 405) b. Badr . . . . .	1014
—406		—1015

[Buwayhids]



A.H.  
320—447

58. BUWAYHIDS

A.D.  
932—1055

(SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -IRĀḤ)

Buwayh, reputed to be a descendant of the ancient Kings of Persia, was the chief of a warlike clan of the highlanders of Daylam, and like most of his countrymen had taken part in the frequent wars which disturbed the provinces bordering on the Caspian. Like them, also, he had transferred his services from the Sāmānids to the rising chieftain Mardāwīj the Ziyārid about 930 (318), and his eldest son 'Alī ('Imād-al-dawla) had been granted by Mardāwīj the government of Karaj. 'Alī, with the help of troops from Daylam and Gīlān, soon extended his authority southwards, occupied Iṣpahān for a time, and annexed Arrajān 932 (320) and Nubandijān (321), whilst his brother Ḥasan (Rukn-al-dawla) drove the Arab garrison out of Kāzīrūn. The two brothers then pushed on to the eastward, and joined by the third, Aḥmad (Mu'izz-al-dawla), seized Shīrūz (322). The Caliph was forced to recognize them as his lieutenants, and when Mu'izz-al-dawla, working his way westward from Kirmān,

and reducing the province of -Ahwāz (or Khūzistān), entered Baghdād itself in 945 (334), the Caliph -Mustakfi not only bestowed the honorific titles of 'Imād, Rukn, and Mu'izz al-dawla on the three brethren, but granted Mu'izz the rank and style of *Amīr-al-Umarā*, or Premier Noble, a dignity which was held by many subsequent members of the family. It is a mistake to say that they were ever given the title of *Sulṭān*, for they never styled themselves so on their coinage, but used the titles *Amīr* and *Malik*. Their authority, nevertheless, was as absolute as any *Sulṭān*'s in Baghdād, and the Caliphs were their abject puppets, though treated with outward homage, in spite of the Buwayhids' Shī'ite proclivities. How the brothers and their descendants divided Persia and -'Irāq among themselves is shown in the following tables, as well as the intricate history of the dynasty permits. Division among the princes encouraged aggression, and the wide dominions of the Buwayhids fell peacemeal to the *Ghaznawids*, *Kākwayhids*, and *Seljuks*.

## I. OF FĀRS

320	'Imād-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī . . .	932
338*	'Aḍud-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū . . .	949
372*	Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris Shīr Zayd . . .	982
379	Şamşām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān . . .	989
388*	Bahā-al-dawla (of -'Irāk) . . .	998
403*	Sultān-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' . . .	1012
415*	'Imād-al-dīn Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān . . .	1024
440*	Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firūz -Raḥīm . . .	1048
—447		—1055

\* Also ruling -'Irāk, etc., see next list.

## II. OF -'IRĀK, -AHWĀZ, AND KIRMĀN

320	Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥosayn Aḥmad . . .	932
356	'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār . . .	967
367	Aḍud-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . .	977
372	Sharaf-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . .	982
379	Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Firūz . . .	989
403	Sultān-al-dawla (of Fārs) . . .	1012

## DIVIDED PROVINCES:

## -'IRĀK

411	Musharrif-al-dawla . . .	1020
416	Jalāl-al-dawla . . .	1025
435	'Imad-al-dīn (of Fārs) . . .	1043
440	Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firūz (of Fārs) . . .	1048
—447		—1055

## KIRMĀN

403	Ḳawām-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris . . .	1012
419	'Imād-al-dīn (of Fārs) . . .	1028
440	Abū-Manṣūr Fallād Battūn . . .	1048
—448		—1056

## III. OF -RAYY, HAMADHÂN, AND IŞPAHÂN

320	Rukn-ul-dawla Abû-'Alî Ḥasan . . . . .	932
366-	Mu'ayyid-ul-dawla Abû-Manṣûr ( <i>Ispahân</i> <i>only</i> ) . . . . .	976
—378		—983
366	Fakhr-ul-dawla Abû-l-Ḥasan 'Alî ( <i>adding</i> <i>Ispahân</i> 373) . . . . .	976
387	Majd-ul-dawla Abû-Tâlib Rustam ( <i>deposed</i> <i>by Maḥmûd of Ghazna</i> ) . . . . .	997
—420		—1029
387	Shams-ul-dawla Abû -Ṭâhir ( <i>Hamadhân only</i> )	997
c. 412	Samâ-ul-dawla Abû-l-Ḥasan ( <i>deposed by Ibn-</i> <i>Kākwayh</i> ) . . . . .	c. 1021
—414		—1023

[*Kākwayhids; Ghaznawids; Seljûqs*]

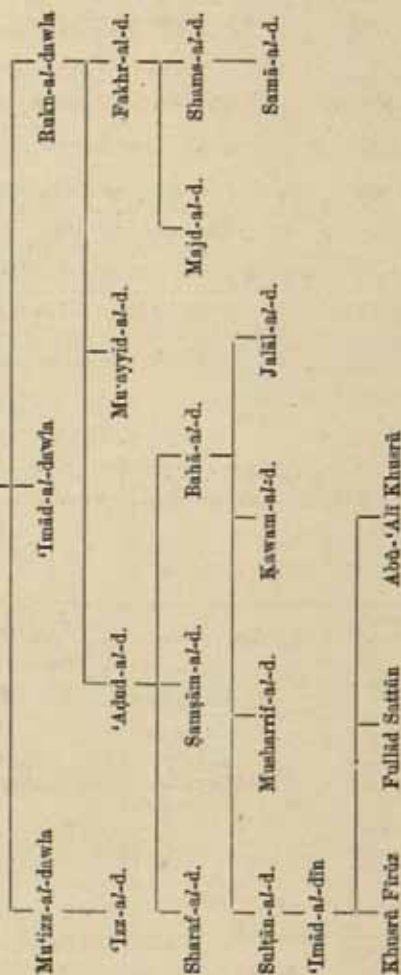
# GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE BUWAYHIDS

FĀRS	KIRMĀN, 'AHWĀZ, 'IRĀK	'RĀYY, HAMADHĀN	ĪSPAHĀN
320 'Imād-al-dawla	320. Mu'izz-al-dawla	320 Rukn-al-dawla	
338 'Aḡud-al-dawla			
	355 'Izz-al-dawla		
	367 ('Aḡud)	366 Fakhr-al-dawla	366 Mu'ayyid-al-dawla
372 Sharaf-al-dawla		373	
379 Šamšām-al-dawla	379 Bahā-al-dawla		
388 (Bahā)		387 Shams-al-dawla	387 Majd-al-dawla
403 Sulṭān-al-dawla	(KIRMĀN) 403 Ka-wām-al-d.		398 (Kāk-wayhids)
	411 Mu-sharraf-al-d.	412 Samā-al-dawla	
415 'Imād-al-dīn	416 Jalāl-al-d.	414 (Kāk-wayhids)	420
	419 ('Imād)		(Ghazna-wide)
	435		
440 Khusrū Fīrūz — 447	(Seljūks)	440 Fullād — Sattūn 448	



## BUWAYHIDS

## BUWAYH



A.H.  
398—443

59. KĀKWAYHIDS  
(KURDISTĀN)

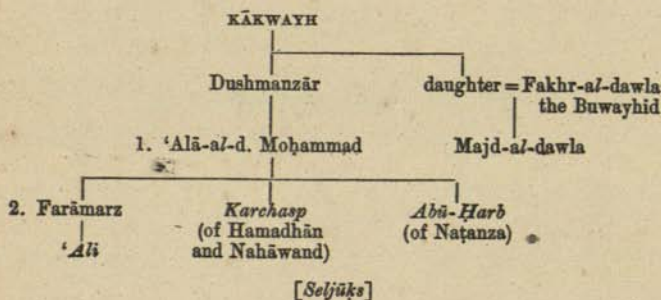
A.D.  
1007—1051

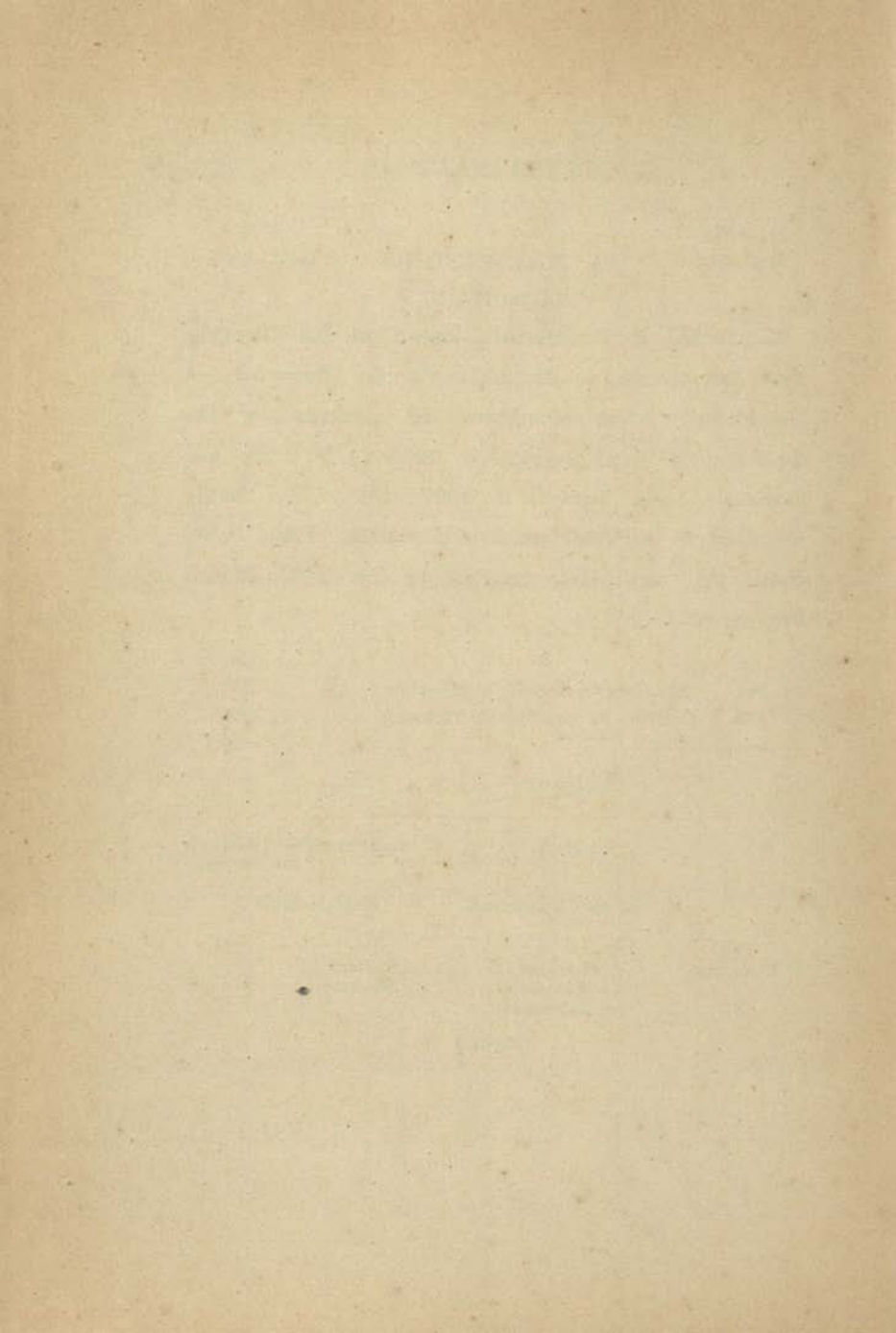
Moḥammad b. Dushmanzār, known as Ibn-Kākwayh, was first cousin to Majd-al-dawla the Buwayhid, of Hamadhān, whose dominions he annexed by the deposition of Samā-al-dawla in 1023 (414). He had previously taken Iṣpahān in 1007 (398). The family continued to rule in Iṣpahān, Hamadhān, Yazd, Nahāwand, etc., until their conquest by the *Seljūks* Ṭughril Beg in 1051 (443).

A.H.  
398  
433  
—443

'Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja'far Moḥammad . .  
Ẓāhir-al-dīn Abū-Manṣūr Farāmarz . .

A.D.  
1007  
1041  
—1051





## VIII. THE SELJŪKS

SÆC. XI—XII

60. A GREAT SELJŪKS OF PERSIA

B SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN

C SELJŪKS OF SYRIA

D SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK

E SELJŪKS OF -RŪM

---

60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS (CAPPADOCIA)





A.H.		A.D.
429—700	60. THE SELJŪKS	1037—1300
	(WESTERN ASIA)	

The advent of the Seljūkian Turks forms a notable epoch in Moḥammadan history. At the time of their appearance the Empire of the Caliphate had vanished. What had once been a realm united under a sole Moḥammadan ruler was now a collection of scattered dynasties, not one of which, save perhaps the Fāṭimids of Egypt (and they were schismatics) was capable of imperial sway. Spain and Africa, including the important province of Egypt, had long been lost to the Caliphs of Baghdād; northern Syria and Mesopotamia were in the hands of turbulent Arab chiefs, some of whom had founded dynasties; Persia was split up into the numerous governments of the Buwayhid princes (whose Shi'ite opinions left little respect for the puppet Caliphs of their time), or was held by sundry insignificant dynasts, each ready to attack the other and thus contribute to the general weakness. The prevalence of

schism increased the disunion of the various provinces of the vanished Empire. A drastic remedy was needed, and it was found in the invasion of the Turks. These rude nomads, unspoilt by town life and civilised indifference to religion, embraced Islām with all the fervour of their uncouth souls. They came to the rescue of a dying State, and revived it. They swarmed over Persia, Mesopotamia, Syria, and Asia Minor, devastating the country, and exterminating every dynasty that existed there; and, as the result, they once more reunited Moḥammadan Asia, from the western frontier of Afghānistān to the Mediterranean, under one sovereign; they put a new life into the expiring zeal of the Muslims, drove back the re-encroaching Byzantines, and bred up a generation of fanatical Moḥammadan warriors, to whom, more than to anything else, the Crusaders owed their repeated failure. This it is that gives the Seljūks so important a place in Moḥammadan history.

The Seljūks, or Saljūkids, were the descendants of Seljūk b. Yakāk, a Turkomān chieftain in the service of one of the Khāns of Turkistān. Seljūk migrated from the Kirghiz steppes with all his clan to Jand in the province of Bukhārā, where he and his people enthusiastically

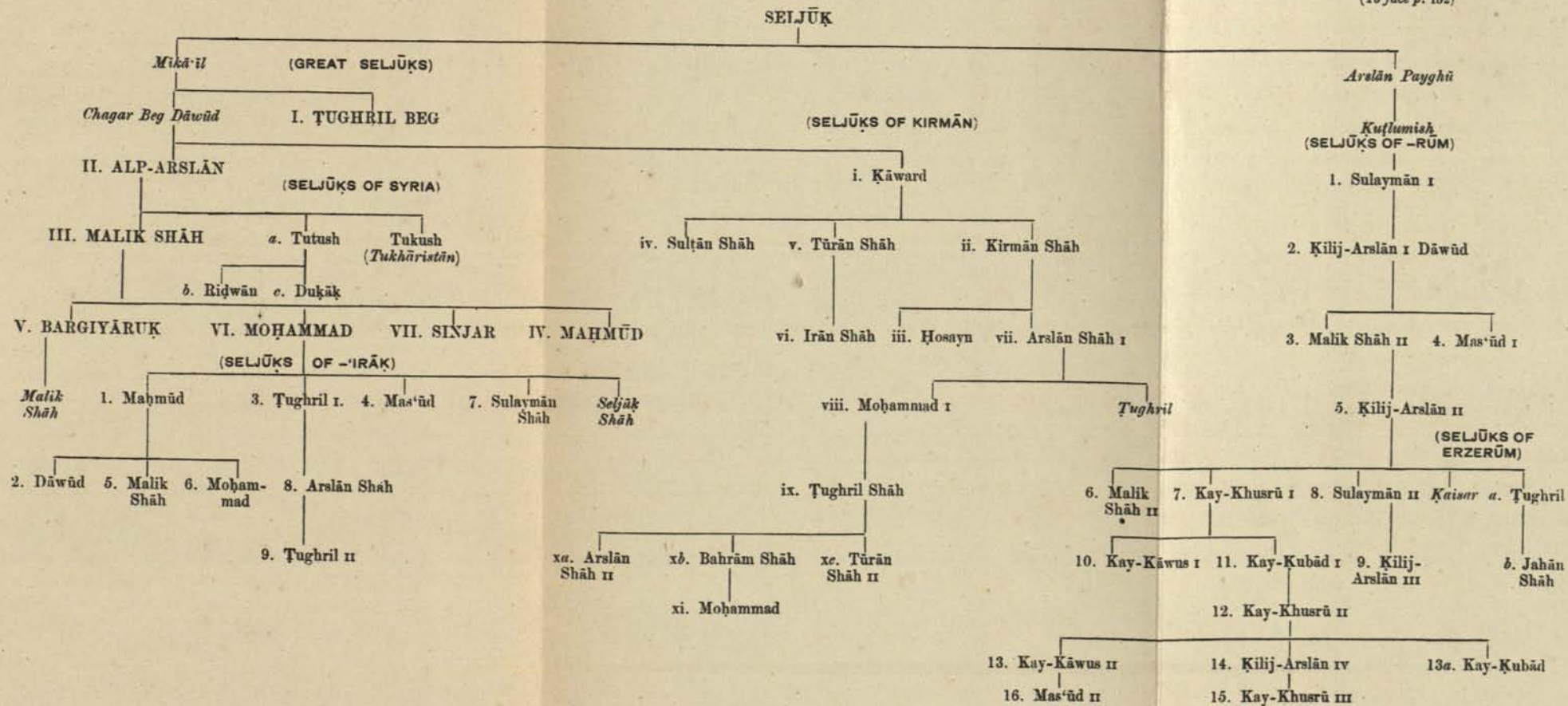
embraced Islām. He and his sons and grandsons took part in the wars between the Sāmānids, the Ilak Khāns, and Maḥmūd of Ghazna, and the brothers Ṭughril Beg and Chagar Beg eventually became strong enough to venture upon the invasion of Khurāsān at the head of their wild Turkomān tribes, and after several victories over the Ghaznawid armies succeeded in taking the chief cities. In 1037 (429) the public prayer was said in the name of Chagar Beg Dāwūd, 'King of Kings,' in the mosques of Merv, while his brother Ṭughril Beg was similarly proclaimed in Nayshāpūr. Balkh, Jurjān, Ṭabari-stān, and Khwārizm were speedily annexed; the Jibāl, Hamadhān, Dīnawār, Ḥulwān, -Rayy, and Iṣpahān followed (433—7), and in 1055 (447) Ṭughril Beg entered Baghdād itself, and had his name proclaimed as Sulṭān in the city of the Caliph.

Other Turkish tribes came to swell their armies, and the whole of western Asia, from the borders of Afghānistān to the frontier of the Greek Empire in Asia Minor and of the Fātimid Caliphate of Egypt, became united under the rule of the Seljūks before 1077 (470).

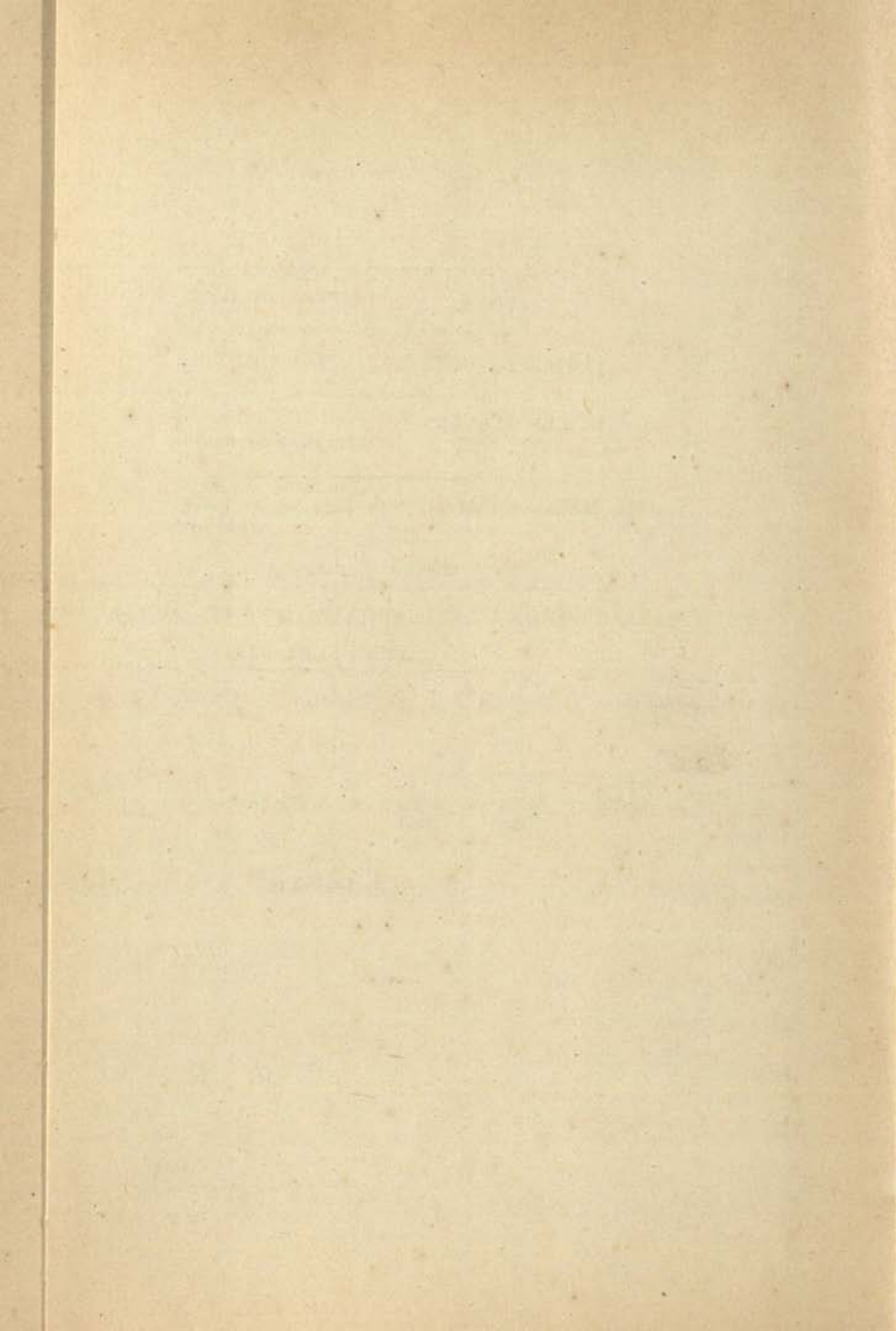
Ṭughril Beg, Alp-Arslān, and Malik Shāh held supreme sway over the whole of this vast Empire, but after the



death of the last, civil war sprang up between the brothers Bargiyāruḡ and Moḡammad, and separate branches of the Seljūḡ family attained virtual independence in different parts of the widely scattered dominions, although the main line still preserved a nominal suzerainty down to the death of Sinjar, the last 'Great Seljūḡ' (whose rule was almost confined to Khurāsān) in 1157 (552). The Seljūḡs of Kirmān, of -'Irāḡ, of Syria, and of -Rūm or Asia Minor, were the chief sub-divisions of the family, but individual members of it ruled in Adharbījān, Tukhāristān, and other provinces. In the East, the Seljūḡ empire succumbed before the attack of the Khwārizm Shāh; in Adharbījān, Fārs, Mesopotamia, and Diyār-Bakr it was supplanted by dynasties founded by Seljūḡ officers, or Atābegs, but in -Rūm it survived until the beginning of the power of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1300.







A.H.		A.D.
429—552	A. GREAT SELJŪKS	1037—1157
429	Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Ṭālib Ṭughril Beg . . .	1037
455	‘Aḡud- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Shujā’ Alp-Arslān . . .	1063
465	Jalāl- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Faṭḥ Malik Shāh . . .	1072
485	Nāṣir- <i>al</i> -dīn Maḥmūd . . . . .	1092
487	Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Muẓaffar Bargiyārūḡ . . .	1094
498	Malik Shāh 11 . . . . .	1104
498*	Ghiyāth- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-Shujā’ Moḥammad . . .	1104
511†	Mu‘izz- <i>al</i> -dīn Abū-l-Ḥārith Sinjar . . .	1117
—552		—1157

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

433—583	B. SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN	1041—1187
433	‘Imād- <i>al</i> -dīn Qarā-Arslān Qāward Beg . . .	1041
465	Kirmān Shāh . . . . .	1072
467	Ḥosayn . . . . .	1074
467	Rukn- <i>al</i> -dīn Sulṭān Shāh . . . . .	1074
477	Tūrān Shāh . . . . .	1084
490	Irān Shāh . . . . .	1097
494	Arslān Shāh . . . . .	1100
536	Mughith- <i>al</i> -dīn Moḥammad 1 . . . . .	1141
551	Muḥyi- <i>al</i> -dīn Ṭughril Shāh . . . . .	1156
563	{ Bahrām Shāh Arslān 11 Shāh } (rivals) . . . . .	1167
583	Turkān Shāh Moḥammad 11 . . . . .	1187

[*Ghuzz Turkomāns*]

\* Moḥammad had been at open war with Bargiyārūḡ for many years before the latter's death.

† Sinjar had been governor of Khurāsān for twenty years before his accession as Great Seljūḡ.

A.H.		A.D.
487—511	C. SELJŪKS OF SYRIA	1094—1117
487	Tutush b. Alp-Arslān . . . . .	1094
488	Riḍwān b. Tutush ( <i>at Aleppo</i> ) . . . . .	1095
	(Duḡāk b. Tutush <i>at Damascus</i> 488—497)	
507	Alp-Arslān - Akhras b. Riḍwān . . . . .	1113
508	Sultān Shāh b. Riḍwān . . . . .	1114
—511		—1117

[*Būrids, Ortuḡids*]

A.H.		A.D.
511—590	D. SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK AND KURDISTĀN	1117—1194
511	Mughīth- <i>al-dīn</i> Maḥmūd . . . . .	1117
525	Ghiyāth- <i>al-dīn</i> Dāwūd . . . . .	1131
526	Ṭughril I . . . . .	1132
527	Ghiyāth- <i>al-dīn</i> Mas'ūd . . . . .	1133
547	Mu'in- <i>al-dīn</i> Malik Shāh . . . . .	1152
548	Moḥammad . . . . .	1153
554	Sulaymān Shāh . . . . .	1159
556	Arslān Shāh . . . . .	1161
573	Ṭughril II . . . . .	1177
—590		—1194

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

A.H.	E. SELJŪKS OF -RŪM	A.D.
470—700	(ASIA MINOR)	1077—1300
470	Sulaymān I b. Ḳuṭlumish . . . . .	1077
479	<i>Interregnum</i> . . . . .	1086
485	Ḳilij-Arslān Dāwūd . . . . .	1092
500	Malik Shāh I . . . . .	1106
510	Mas'ūd I . . . . .	1116
551*	'Izz-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān II . . . . .	1156
584	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Malik Shāh II . . . . .	1188
588	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū I . . . . .	1192
597	Rukn-al-dīn Sulaymān II . . . . .	1200
600	Ḳilij-Arslān III . . . . .	1203
601	Kay-Khusrū I <i>restored</i> . . . . .	1204
607	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus I . . . . .	1210
616	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād I . . . . .	1219
634	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū II . . . . .	1236
643	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus II † . . . . .	1245
655	Rukn-al-dīn Ḳilij-Arslān IV. . . . .	1257
666	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū III . . . . .	1267
682	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mas'ūd II † . . . . .	1283
696	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Ḳubād II . . . . .	1296
—700		—1300

[*Mongols, 'Othmānī Turks, etc.*].

\* Ḳilij-Arslān survived till 588, but divided his dominions among his sons some years earlier.

† In conjunction with his brothers Ḳilij-Arslān III and Kay-Ḳubād.

‡ Mas'ūd was allowed by the Mongol Abāgā to govern Siwās, Arzan-jān and Erzerūm, from the death of his father Kay-Kāwus in 677, during the nominal sovereignty of his cousin Kay-Khusrū III, whom he succeeded in 682. Mas'ūd appears to have been restored to his kingdom on the deposition of his nephew Kay-Ḳubād in 700, and to have reigned for four years; but the last four Seljūks were merely governors under the Mongols of Persia.



A.H.

A.D.

c 490—560 60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS c 1097—1165

(SĪWĀS, CAESAREA, MALATĪA)

Whilst the Seljūks were extending their empire in Asia Minor, another Turkish chief, Gumishtigin, son of Dānishmand, established his power in Cappodocia over the cities of Sīwās (Sebaste), Kayşariya (Caesarea), and Malaṭṭiya (Melitene), near which last place he inflicted a sanguinary defeat upon the Franks. His successors played a distinguished part in the wars of the Crusades, but the dynasty was soon absorbed in its greater Seljūk neighbour.

A.H.

A.D.

	Moḥammad I Gumishtigin b. Tilā Dānishmand	
499	Ghāzī b. Gumishtigin . . . . .	1105
529	Moḥammad II. b. Ghāzī . . . . .	1134
537	Dhū-l-Nūn b. Moḥammad II . . . . .	1142
	Yaghī (or Ya'kūb) Arslān b. Ghāzī	
560	Ibrāhīm b. Moḥammad II . . . . .	1165

[Seljūks of -Rūm]



# IX. THE ATĀBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

S/EC. XII-XIII

- |       |                                   |                     |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 61.   | BŪRIDS                            | ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS |
| 62. A | ZANGIDS                           | " " -MŌSIL          |
| B     | "                                 | " " ALEPPO          |
| C     | "                                 | " " SINJĀR          |
| D     | "                                 | " " -JAZĪRA         |
| 63.   | BEGTIGĪNIDS                       | " " ARBELA          |
| 64. A | ORTUKIDS OF KAYFĀ                 |                     |
| B     | " " MĀRIDĪN                       |                     |
| 65.   | SHĀHS OF ARMENIA                  |                     |
| 66.   | ATĀBEGS OF ADHARBĪJĀN             |                     |
| 67.   | SALGHARIDS, ATĀBEGS OF FĀRS       |                     |
| 68.   | HAZĀRASPIDIS, ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN |                     |
| 69.   | SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM                 |                     |
| 70.   | KUTLUGH KHĀNS OF KIRMĀN           |                     |



## IX. THE ATÁBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

### SÆC. XII—XIII

The Seljūk Empire was a military power, and the army on which it depended was commanded by Turkish slaves. Free men could not be trusted with the highest commands or the rule of distant provinces; it was necessary to rely on the fidelity of purchased slaves brought up at the court in close relations with the Seljūk princes. Every Seljūk had a following of mamlūks, generally brought from Kipchak, who filled the chief offices of the court and camp, and eventually won their manumission by hard service. The inevitable result of this system was the supplanting of the senile master by the virile slave. As the Seljūks grew weak and their empire broke up into sub-divisions, their mamlūks, who had fought their battles for them, became the guardians or regents (Atābegs) of their youthful heirs,

and speedily exchanged the delegated function for the privileges of sovereignty. In this way Tughtigīn, a mamlūk of the Seljūk Tutush, was appointed Atābeg over his youthful heir Duḡāk, and on his death assumed full sovereign powers at Damascus. 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, founder of the Atābegs of -Mōḡil and Aleppo, etc., was the son of a slave of the third Seljūk Sultān Malik Shāh; the Adharbijān Atābegs sprang from a Kipchak mamlūk of Mas'ūd the Seljūk Sultān of -'Irāk; Anushtigīn, ancestor of the Khwārizm Shāhs, was cupbearer tō Sultān Malik Shāh; Ortuḡ and Salghar, founders of dynasties in Diyār-Bakr and Fārs, were Seljūk officers; and the Begtiginids, Hasāraspids, and Ḳutlugh Khāns were officers of the slaves of the Seljūks. In the twelfth century the whole Seljūk empire, save Anatolia, was in the hands of these captains of their hosts, who form a distinct group of dynasties.

A.H.  
497—549

## 61. BŪRIDS

A.D.  
1103—1154

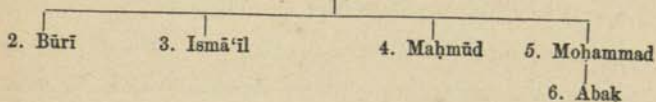
(ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS)

Ṭughtigīn—one of the numerous officers who held command in the Seljūk armies, became Atābegs or regents of the younger Seljūk princes, and eventually usurped their power—was an enfranchised mamlūk of Sulṭān Tutush, and afterwards, 1095 (488), was appointed Atābeg of his son Duḳāk, the Seljūk prince of Damascus, whom he succeeded.

A.H.		A.D.
497	Sayf-al-Islām Ṣaḥīr-al-dīn Ṭughtigīn . . .	1103
522	Ṭāj-al-Mulūk Būrī . . . . .	1128
526	Shams-al-Mulūk Ismā'īl . . . . .	1132
529	Shihāb-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . . .	1134
533	Jamāl-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1138
534	Mujīr-al-dīn Abaḳ (or Anaz, † 564) . . .	1139
—549		—1154

[Zangids]

## 1. Ṭughtigīn





A.H.

521—648

62. ZANGIDS

A.D.

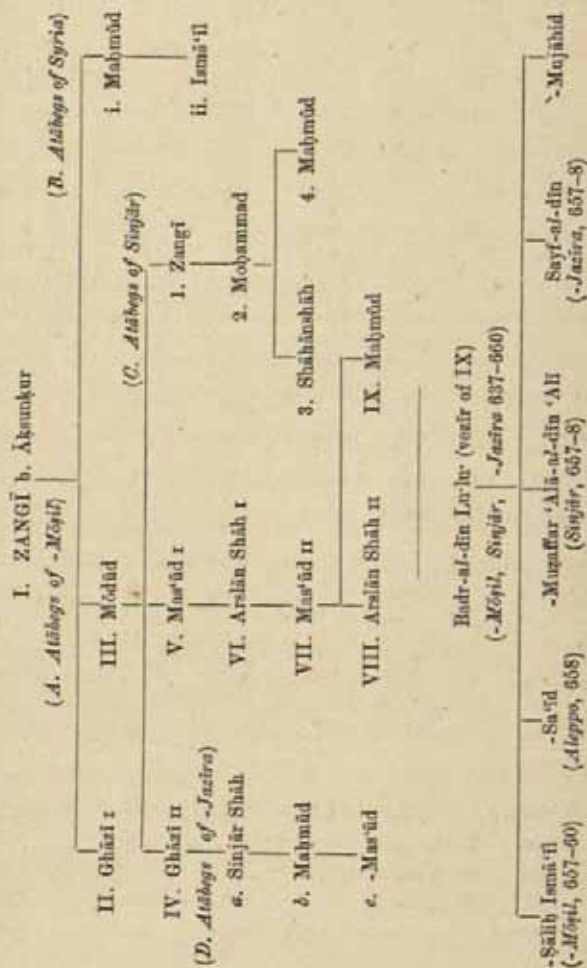
1127—1250

## (ATĀBEGS OF MESOPOTAMIA AND SYRIA)

The Atābeg 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī was the son of Āksunḡur the Hājib (chamberlain), a Turkish slave of Malik Shāh, and from 1085 to 1094 (478-487) lieutenant of Tutush at Aleppo, against whom he rebelled, and was slain. Zangī was appointed governor of -'Irāḡ, including Baghdād, in 1127 (521), and in the same year annexed -Mōṣil, Sinjār, -Jazīra and Harrān, and then Aleppo (522) and other Syrian cities. He especially distinguished himself as the champion of the Muslims against the Crusaders, and was the true forerunner of Saladin. On his death his dominions were divided between his sons Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd, another famous anti-crusader, who held Syria, and Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī, who ruled in -Mōṣil and Mesopotamia. In the next generation the Syrian branch died out; but a new offshoot had been established at Sinjār; whilst a fourth sub-dynasty sprang up somewhat later at -Jazīra. The Sinjār line gave place to the Ayyūbids in 1221 (618); the others came under the rule of Lu'lu', the slave and vezīr of the last of the -Mōṣil Zangids, until all were absorbed in the empire of the *Mongols*.

A.H.		A.D.
521—631	A. ATĀBEGS OF -MŌṢIL	1127—1234
521	'Imād-al-dīn Zangī ( <i>with Aleppo</i> ) . . . . .	1127
541	Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī I . . . . .	1146
544	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Mōdūd . . . . .	1149
565	Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī II . . . . .	1169
576	'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd I . . . . .	1180
589	Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh I . . . . .	1193
607	'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd II . . . . .	1210
615	Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh II . . . . .	1218
616	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . . .	1219
631	Badr-al-dīn Lu'lu' . . . . .	1233
657	Ismā'il b. Lu'lu' . . . . .	1259
—660	[ <i>Mongols</i> ] . . . . .	—1262
541—577	B. ATĀBEGS OF SYRIA	1146—1181
541	Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd b. Zangī . . . . .	1146
569	-Ṣāliḥ Ismā'il . . . . .	1173
—577		—1181
	[ <i>Atābegs of -Mōṣil and Sinjār, 577; then Ayyūbids, 579</i> ]	
566—617	C. ATĀBEGS OF SINJĀR	1170—1220
566	'Imād-al-dīn Zangī b. Mōdūd . . . . .	1170
594	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1197
616	'Imād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh . . . . .	1219
616	Maḥmūd ( <i>or</i> 'Omar) . . . . .	1219
—617	[ <i>Ayyūbids</i> ] . . . . .	—1220
576—648	D. ATĀBEGS OF -JAZĪRA	1180—1250
576	Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjār Shāh . . . . .	1180
605	Mu'izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . . .	1208
6xx	-Mas'ūd . . . . .	12xx
—648	[ <i>Ayyūbids</i> ] . . . . .	—1250

## ZANGIDS



A.H.		A.D.
539—630	63. BEGTIGĪNIDS	1144—1232
	(ATĀBEGS OF ARBELA, ETC.)	

In 1144 (539) 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī appointed one of his Turkish officers, Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn, to be his viceroy at -Mōṣil, and in 1149 (544) placed Sinjār and afterwards Harrān, Takrit, Irbil (Arbela), etc., under his authority. On Zayn-al-dīn's death at Irbil in 1167 (563), his elder son Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī fled to Harrān, whilst Irbil passed to the younger son Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, under the tutorship of the Amīr Mujāhid-al-dīn Kā'imāz. On Yūsuf's death in 1190 (586), Saladin, who then exercised supreme influence over Syria and Mesopotamia, appointed Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī as his brother's successor at Irbil and Shahrāzūr, but gave his former governments of Harrān, -Rubā (Edessa) and Sumaysāt to his own nephew Taḡī-al-dīn 'Omar. Kūkbūrī died in 1232 (630), and being without sons bequeathed Irbil to the 'Abbāsīd Caliph.

539	Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn . . .	1144
563	Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf b. 'Alī (at Irbil) † 586 . .	1167
563	Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī b. 'Alī (at Harrān),	1167
586	" " " " " (at Irbil)	1190
—630		—1232

[*'Abbāsīds; then Mongols*]

A.H.  
495—712

64. ORTUKIDS

A.D.  
1101—1312

(DIYĀR-BAKR)

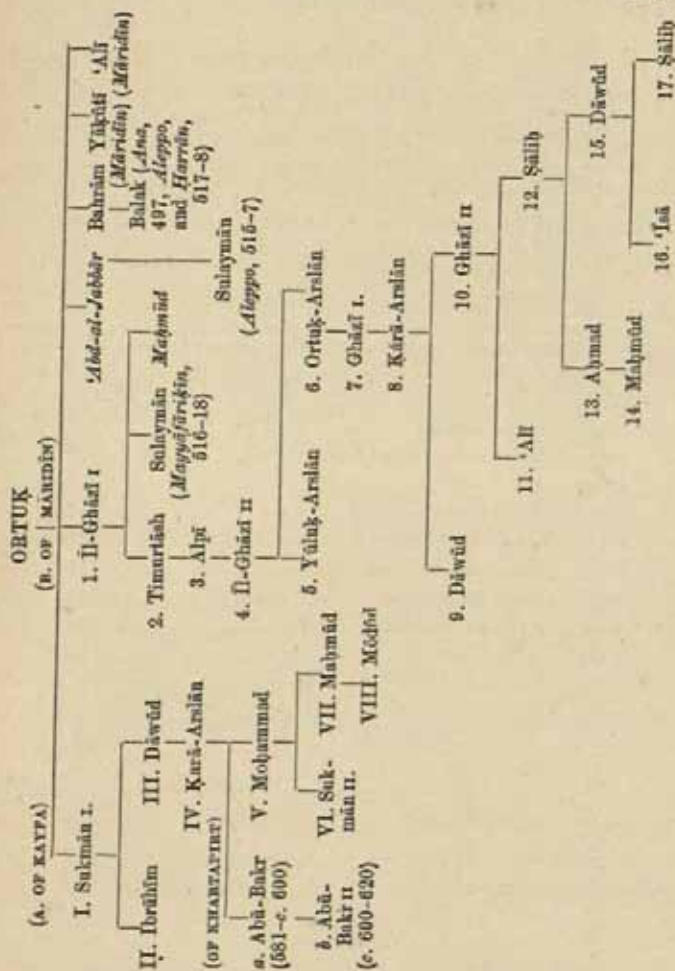
Ortuḡ b. Aksab, the founder of this dynasty, was a Turkomān officer in the Seljūḡ armies, and was appointed governor of Jerusalem when the Holy City was conquered by his commander Tutush the Seljūḡ Sultān of Damascus. Ortuḡ's sons Sukmān and ʾĪl-Ghāzī, both famous in the wars with the Latin princes of Palestine succeeded to their father's post in 1091 (484), until the city was annexed by the Fāṭimid Caliph in 1096 (489), when they retired to Edessa (-Ruhā) and -ʾIrāk respectively. In 1101 (495) ʾĪl-Ghāzī was appointed prefect of Baghdād by the Seljūḡ Sultān Moḥammad, and in the same year Sukmān was made governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā in Diyār-Bakr, to which he added Māridīn a year or two later. In 1108 (502), however, Māridīn was transferred to his brother ʾĪl-Ghāzī, and henceforward there were two collateral lines of Ortuḡids, at Kayfā and at Māridīn. The Kayfā branch, after the warlike exploits of Sukmān against Baldwin and Jocelin, settled down into tranquil obscurity, hastened to



pay homage to Saladin, when his power became threatening, and were rewarded with the addition of the city of Amid to their territory in 1183 (579), until their line was suppressed by the *Ayyūbid* -Kāmil in 1231 (629). A minor branch of the Kayfā family governed Khartapirt (Quart-Pierre) in Diyār-Bakr from 1127 (521) to 1223 (620). Īl-Ghāzī, the founder of the Māridīn line, and one of the most redoubtable of Muslim warriors against the Crusaders, gained possession of Aleppo in 1117 (511), and in 1121 (515) was also invested with the government of Mayyāfāriqīn (in Diyār-Bakr) by the Seljūq Sultān Maḥmūd. Māridīn and Mayyāfāriqīn continued to be held by his descendants, the latter until 1184 (580), the former until their submission to Tīmūr and absorption by the Karā-Ḳuyunlī in 1408 (811); but the Māridīn Amīrs ceased to be of importance after the Ayyūbid supremacy was established in Syria and Mesopotamia. Aleppo fell 1123 (517) to another Ortuqid chief, Balak b. Bahrām, who had also held Āna (497) and Khartapirt (515), and was a prominent leader in the wars with the Crusaders.

A.H.		A.D.
495—529	A. ORTUĞIDS OF KAYFĀ	1101—1231
495	Mu'in-al-dawla Sukmān I . . . . .	1101
498	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1104
c. 502	Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd . . . . .	1108
c. 543	Fakhr-al-dīn Karā-Arelān . . . . .	1148
570	Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1174
581	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Sukmān II . . . . .	1185
597	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . . .	1200
619	Rukn-al-dīn Moḥūd . . . . .	1223
—629	[Ayyūbids]	—1231

A.H.		A.D.
502—811	B. ORTUĞIDS OF MĀRIDĪN	1108—1408
502	Najm-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī . . . . .	1108
516	Ḥusām-al-dīn Timurtāsh . . . . .	1122
547	Najm-al-dīn Alpī . . . . .	1152
572	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī . . . . .	1176
580	Ḥusām-al-dīn Yülük-Arelān . . . . .	1184
c. 597	Nāṣir-al-dīn Ortuğ-Arelān -Manṣūr . . . . .	1200
637	Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī I -Sa'īd . . . . .	1239
658	Karā-Arelān -Muṣaffar . . . . .	1260
c. 691	Shams-al-dīn Dāwūd . . . . .	1292
693	Najm-al-dīn Ghāzī II -Manṣūr . . . . .	1294
712	'Imād-al-dīn 'Alī Alpī -'Ādil . . . . .	1312
712	Shams-al-dīn Ṣāliḥ . . . . .	1312
765	Aḥmad -Manṣūr . . . . .	1363
769	Maḥmūd -Ṣāliḥ . . . . .	1367
769	Dāwūd -Muṣaffar . . . . .	1367
778	Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Zūhir . . . . .	1376
809	Ṣāliḥ . . . . .	1406
—811	[Ḳara Kuyunlı]	—1408



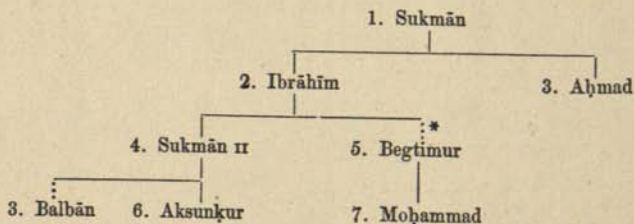
A.H.

A.D.

## 493—604 65. SHĀHS OF ARMENIA 1100—1207

Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī, so called because he was once the slave of Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Ismā'īl, the Seljūq governor of Marand in Adharbījān, wrested the town of -Khalāṭ in Armenia from the Marwānids in 1100 (493), and his descendants and their mamlūks continued to govern this region for a century until their conquest by the *Ayyūbids* in 1207.

A.H.		A.D.
493	Sukmān -Ḳuṭbī . . . . .	1100
506	Zahīr-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh-Arman . . . . .	1112
521	Aḥmad . . . . .	1127
522	Nāṣir-al-dīn Sukmān II . . . . .	1128
579	Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur . . . . .	1183
589	Badr-al-dīn Āksunḳur . . . . .	1193
594	-Manṣūr Moḥammad . . . . .	1198
603	'Izz-al-dīn Balbān . . . . .	1206
—604		—1207

[*Ayyūbids*]

\* Dotted lines indicate the relationship between master and slave.

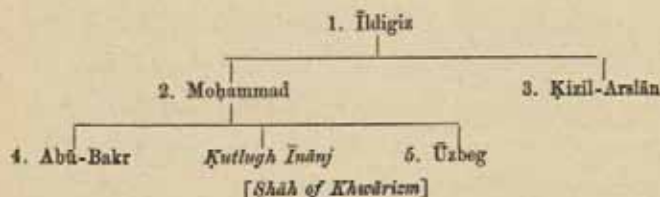
A.H.  
531—622

66. ATĀBEGS OF  
ADHARBĪJĀN

A.D.  
1136—1225

İldigiz, a Turkish slave from Kipchak, rose in favour at the court of Mas'ūd, the Seljūk Sultān of -'Irāk, and was finally granted the government of Adharbījān, together with the Sultan's widowed sister-in-law. His son Moḥammad was the virtual ruler of the Seljūk kingdom of -'Irāk as well as of his own province. Moḥammad's brother Kizil-Arslān, who had acted as his deputy in Adharbījān, succeeded to his authority, and was created *Amir-al-Umarā*; but on his claiming sovereign rights, he was assassinated, and his two nephews, who followed him, moderated their ambition.

A.H.		A.D.
531	Shams-al-dīn İldigiz . . . . .	1136
568	Moḥammad -Pahlawān Jahān . . . . .	1172
581	Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān . . . . .	1185
587	Abū-Bakr . . . . .	1191
607	Muḥaffar-al-dīn Ūzbeg . . . . .	1210
—622		—1225





A.H.

543—686

A.D.

67. SALGHARIDS

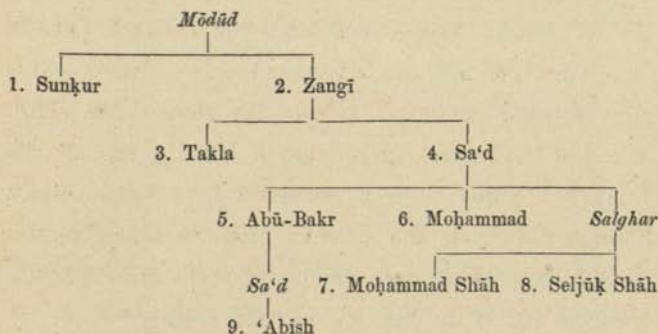
1148—1287

## (ATĀBEGS OF FĀRS)

Salghar was the chief of a band of Turkomāns who migrated into Khurāsān, and after a career of rapine attached themselves to the Seljūk Tughril Beg, who appointed Salghar one of his chamberlains. One of his descendants, Sunḡur b. Mōdūd, made himself master of the province of Fārs in 1148 (543), and founded a dynasty which lasted nearly a century and a half. Atābeg Sa'd became tributary to the Shāh of Khwārizm, to whom he surrendered Iṣṭakhr and Ashkūrān; and Atābeg Abū-Bakr, in his turn, paid homage to Ogotai Khān the Mongol, and was rewarded with the title of ẖutlugh Khān. The later Atābegs were merely vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, and the last of them, the princess 'Abish, was the wife of Mangū-Tīmūr, a son of Hūlāgū. The poet Sa'dī lived at the court of the Atābeg Abū-Bakr.

A.H.		A.D.
543	Sunḡur* . . . . .	1148
557	Zangī . . . . .	1162
571	Takla . . . . .	1175
591	Sa'd . . . . .	1195
623	Abū-Bakr . . . . .	1226
658	Moḡammad . . . . .	1260
660	Moḡammad Shāh . . . . .	1262
660	Seljūk Shāh . . . . .	1262
662	'Abish . . . . .	1263
—686		—1287

[Mongols]



\* Most of the Salgharids used the title Muẓaffar-aḡ-dīn.

A. H.		A. D.
543—740	68. HAZĀRASPIDES	1148—1339

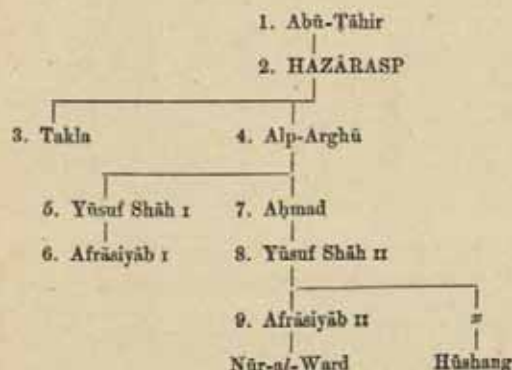
## (ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN)

The founder of this line was Abū-Ṭāhir, a general who was sent by the Salgharid Atābeg to reduce the Greater Lūristān in 1148 (543). This original territory was augmented by a grant of the province of Khūzistān by the Mongol Abūgā. The Atābeg Afrāsiyāb I seized Iṣpahān on the death of Arghūn, but was speedily punished. This petty dynasty continued to rule till about 1339 (740). Many of the dates are uncertain. Their capital was Īdaj; but Yūsuf Shāh II is recorded to have annexed Shūstar, Ḥuwayza, and -Baṣra. There was also another petty dynasty of Atābegs, who governed the *Lesser* Lūristān from the end of the 12th to the 16th century.\*

\* For both dynasties see Sir Henry Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, Part III. pp. 140, 406, 751-6.

A.H.		A.D.
543	Abū-Tāhir b. Moḥammad . . . . .	1148
c. 600	Naṣrat-al-dīn Hazārasp . . . . .	c. 1203
c. 650	Takla . . . . .	c. 1252
c. 657	Shams-al-dīn Alp-Arghū . . . . .	c. 1259
c. 673	Yūsuf Shāh I . . . . .	c. 1274
c. 687	Afrāsiyāb I . . . . .	1288
696	Naṣrat-al-dīn Aḥmad . . . . .	1296
733	Rukn-al-dīn Yūsuf Shāh II . . . . .	1333
740	Muḥaffar-al-dīn Afrāsiyāb II . . . . .	1339
756	Shams-al-dīn Hūshang (or Nūr-al-Ward) . . . . .	1355
c. 780	Aḥmad . . . . .	c. 1378
c. 815	Abū-Sa'īd . . . . .	1408
c. 820	Ḥosayn . . . . .	c. 1417
827	Ghiyāth-al-dīn . . . . .	1423

*Expelled by Ibrāhīm b. Shāh Rukh*



[Timūride]

A. H.

A. D.

c. 470—628      69. SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM      1077—1231

A Turkish slave of Balkātigīn of Ghazna, named Anush-tigīn, rose to be the cup-bearer of the Seljūq Sultān Malik Shāh, who made him governor of Khwārizm (Khiva), a post to which his son succeeded with the title of *Khwārizm Shāh*. Atsız was the first of the line to show any ambition for independence, but his revolt in 1138 (533) was punished by his expulsion from Khwārizm by Sultān Sinjar. Atsız, however, shortly returned, and henceforward the Khwārizm Shāhs enjoyed sovereign power. Atsız extended his authority as far as Jand on the River Sīhūn (Jaxartes). Tukush added Khurāsān, Rayy and Ispahān to his dominions 1193-4 (589-590), and his son, the celebrated 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, after a stubborn war with the *Ghūrīds* in Khurāsān, reduced the greater part of Persia by the year 1210 (607), subdued Bukhārā and Samarḳand, and invading the territory of the Gūr-Khān of Ḳarā-Khitay, seized his capital Otrār. In 1214 (611) he entered Afghānistān and took Ghazna, and then, having adopted

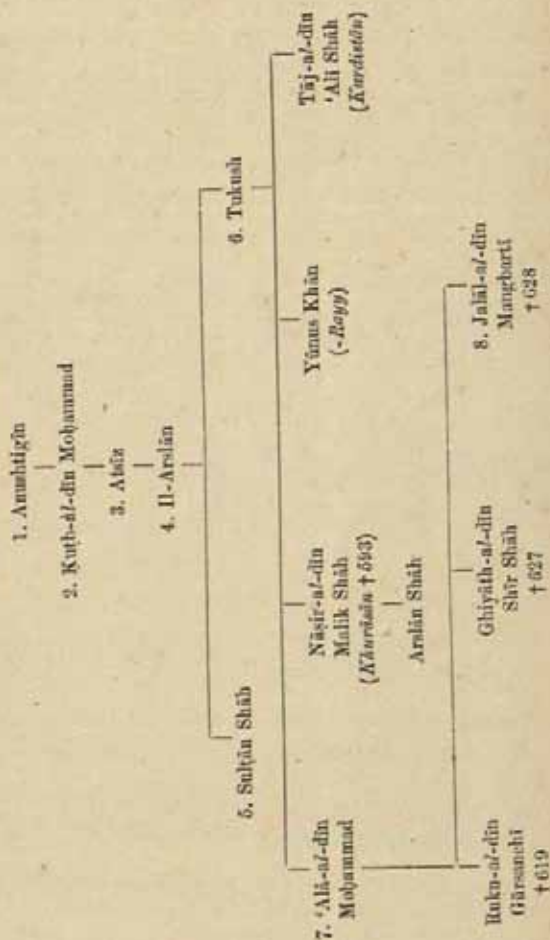


the 'Alid heresy (614) prepared to put an end to the 'Abbāsid Caliphate. His career of conquest was suddenly cut short by the appearance of the Mongol hordes of Chingiz Khān on his northern borders. Moḥammad fled incontinently before this appalling swarm, and died in despair on an island of the Caspian Sea, 1220 (617). His three sons wandered for some time through the provinces of Persia, and one of them, Jalāl-al-dīn, even visited India for two years; but after a decade of stirring adventures, during which he contrived to hold Adharbijān from 622-8, he was finally banished by the Mongols in 1231 (628). At one time the rule of the Khwārizm Shāh was almost conterminous with the Seljūq empire, but this period of widest extent scarcely lasted a dozen years.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 470	Anushtigīn . . . . .	c. 1077
490	Ḳutb-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1097
521	Atsız . . . . .	1127
551	Īl-Arslān . . . . .	1156
568	Sultān Shāh Maḥmūd († 589) . . . . .	1172
568	Tukush . . . . .	1172
596	'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . . .	1199
617	Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbarti . . . . .	1220
—628		—1231

[Mongols]

## SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM



A. H.		A. H.
619—703	70. ḲUTLUḠ KHĀNS	1222—1303
	(KIRMĀN)	

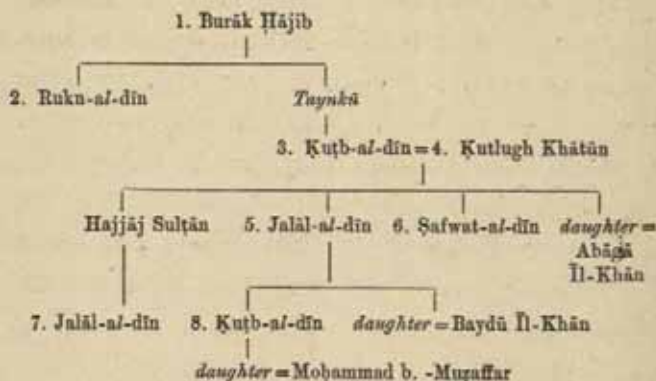
Burāk Hājib, a native of Ḳarā-Khitay, and an officer of 'Alā-al-dīn the Khwārizm Shāh, succeeding in establishing his power in Kirmān in 1222 (619), during the period of anarchy which followed the overthrow of the Khwārizm Shāh by Chingiz Khān; and his authority was confirmed by the Mongol Ogotāy, who conferred upon him the title of *ḲutluḠ Khān*. The dynasty kept within the limits of Kirmān, and were loyal vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, two of whom married daughters of the family. The daughter of the last of the line married Moḥammad the *Muẓaffarid* of Fārs.

A. H.		A. D.
619	Burāk Hājib ḲutluḠ Khān. * . . .	1222
632	Rukn-al-dīn Khōjat-al-Ḥaḳḳ . . . .	1234
650	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad . . . .	1262
655	ḲutluḠ Khātūn ( <i>widow of preceding</i> )* . . .	1267
681	Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish . . . .	1282
693	Ṣafwat-al-dīn Pādishāh Khātūn . . . .	1293
694	Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh . . . .	1294
701	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān . . . .	1301
—703		—1303

[*Mongol governors till 741; then Muẓaffarids.*]

\* From 555 to 660 her son Hajjāj Sultān was the titular ruler.

# ḲUTLUGH KHÂNS



## X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

### AMĪRS OF ASIA MINOR

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 71. KARĀSĪ       | (MYSIA)       |
| 72. ḤAMĪD        | (PISIDIA)     |
| 73. KARMIYĀN     | (PHRYGIA)     |
| 74. TAKKA        | (LYCIA)       |
| 75. ŠĀRŪ KHĀN    | (LYDIA)       |
| 76. AYDĪN        | (LYDIA)       |
| 77. MANTASHĀ     | (CARIA)       |
| 78. KIZIL-AḤMADĪ | (PAPHLAGONIA) |
| 79. KARAMĀN      | (LYCAONIA)    |

80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ SULTĀNS OF TURKEY





## X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

### SÆC. XIV—XIX

We have seen how the Atābegs and other officers of the Seljūks succeeded to the government of the Persian, Mesopotamian, and Syrian provinces of their wide empire, but, failing to found powerful dynasties, were forced to make way for the Mongols in the thirteenth century. There was, however, one part of the Seljūk empire where the Mongols made no lasting impression, and where the Seljūks were followed by a dynasty greater than their own, the splendid line of the '*Othmānlī* or *Ottoman Turks*. Before entering upon the Mongol period of Moḥammadan history, these successors of the Seljūks in the West must be noticed.

In the second half of the thirteenth century the Seljūks of -Rūm, or Hither Asia, became the vassals of the Mongols of Persia, who directed affairs in Anatolia through a governor. But the hold of the Mongols upon this distant province was slight and brief. The

decayed Seljūks might submit, but the young dynasties which sprang up among their ruins paid little heed to the remote despots of Persia, who made few efforts to restrain them. Ten States soon divided the Seljūk kingdom of -Rūm amongst themselves. The *Karāsī* dynasty occupied Mysia; the families of *Şārū Khān* and *Aydīn*, Lydia; the *Mantashā* princes, Caria; those of *Takka*, Lycia and Pamphylia; *Hamīd*, Pisidia and Isauria; *Karamān*, Lycaonia; *Karmiyān*, Phrygia; *Kızıl-Aḥmadlı*, Paphlagonia; whilst the house of 'Othmān held Phrygia Epictetus.

All these dynasties were gradually absorbed by the rising power of the 'Othmānlis, once the least among them. *Karāsī* was annexed in 1336 (737); *Hamīd* was purchased as a marriage dower in 1382 (783); and in 1390 (792) *Bāyazīd* (*Bajazet*) 1 annexed *Karmiyān*, *Takka*, *Şārū Khān*, *Aydīn*, and *Mantashā*, in a single campaign, and completed his conquest by adding *Karamān* and *Kızıl-Aḥmadlı* in 1392-3 (794-5). Thus at the end of the fourteenth century, not a hundred years after the assumption of independence by 'Othmān 1, the arms of his great-grandson had swept away the nine rival dynasties.







After the battle of Angora in 1402 (804), when Bāyazīd was defeated and made prisoner by Timūr, and the 'Othmānlī power in Asia seemed to be annihilated by the Tatar hordes, seven of these dynasties (but not Karāsī or Ḥamīd) were restored by the conqueror, and enjoyed a renewed vitality for about a quarter of a century. By that time, however, the 'Othmānlīs had recovered from the blow, and in 1426-8 (829-832) five of the restored dynasties were re-absorbed by Murād (Amurath) II; and in 1471 (877), after the second conquest of Karamān, the rule of the Ottoman Turks, in the strong hands of Moḥammad II, was again supreme over all the provinces which once owned the sway of the Ten Amīrs, as it is at this day.

The following table shows the division of the Seljūk kingdom of Rūm among the Ten States, and their absorption by the 'Othmānlīs, and gives the names and (so far as known) the dates of their princes.\*

\* Details may be consulted in my article on the Successors of the Seljūks, in *Journal R. As. Soc.*, N.S. xiv. (1882).

A.H.

A.D.

699—1311 80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN 1299—1893

## SULTĀNS OF TURKEY

The 'Othmānlī or Ottoman Turks were a small clan of the Oghuz tribe, who were driven westward from Khurāsān by the Mongol migration, and took refuge in Asia Minor early in the thirteenth century. In recognition of their aid in war, the Seljūk Sultān allowed them to pasture their flocks in the province anciently known as Phrygia Epictetus (henceforward called Sultān-öni) on the borders of the Byzantine Bithynia, with the town of Sugut (Thebasion) for their headquarters. Here 'Othmān, the eponymous founder of a dynasty which numbers thirty-five Sultāns in the direct male line, was born in 1258 (656), 'Othmān pushed the Byzantine frontier further back, and his son 'Orkhān took Brūsa and Nicaea, absorbed the neighbouring State of Karāsī, and organized the famous corps of Janizaries (*Yani chari* 'new soldiery'), who for several centuries were the flower of the conquering armies of the 'Othmānlis. In 1358 (759) the Turks crossed the Hellespont, established a

garrison at Gallipoli, and began the conquest of the Byzantine Empire in Europe. Adrianople and Philippopolis fell a few years later, and the victories of the Maritza (1364), Kosovo (1389), and Nicopolis (1394) over the chivalry of all Europe gave the Turks assured possession of the whole Balkan peninsula, except the district surrounding Constantinople. The capital of the Eastern Empire was temporarily saved by the diversion caused by the invasion of Asia Minor by Tīmūr (Tamerlane) and the overwhelming defeat of the Ottoman Sultān Bāyazīd I (commonly called Bajazet, from an ignorant pronunciation of the German spelling) in 1402 (804) on the field of Angora.

For the moment an empire which had stretched from the Danube to the Orontes appeared to be almost annihilated by a single blow. Its recovery, however, under the wise rule of Moḥammad I, ‘The Gentleman,’ was scarcely less remarkable, and, after an interval of peace and consolidation, Murād II was able to defend the empire from the attacks of Hunyady, the ‘White Knight of Wallachia,’ and to avenge a violated treaty by the decisive victory of Varna (1444) over a vast army of Christian crusaders. This signal success secured the



Turks from invasion from the north, and the history of the next two centuries is a long record of triumphs. Constantinople fell to Moḥammad II in 1453, and the last remnant of the Byzantine Empire was thereby destroyed. The Crimea was annexed (1475), the Aegean islands became Ottoman soil, and the Turkish flag waved even in Italy over the castle of Otranto. In his brief reign of eight years, Selīm I, 'the Grim,' defeated the Shāh of Persia, and added Kurdistan and Diyār-Bakr to the Turkish Empire; took Syria, Egypt and Arabia from the Mamlūks (1517); and not only became the master of the Holy Cities of Mecca and -Medīna, but received from the last 'Abbāsīd Caliph of Cairo the relics of the Prophet Moḥammad and the right of succession to the Caliphate, in virtue of which the Ottoman Sultāns have ever since claimed the homage of the faithful.

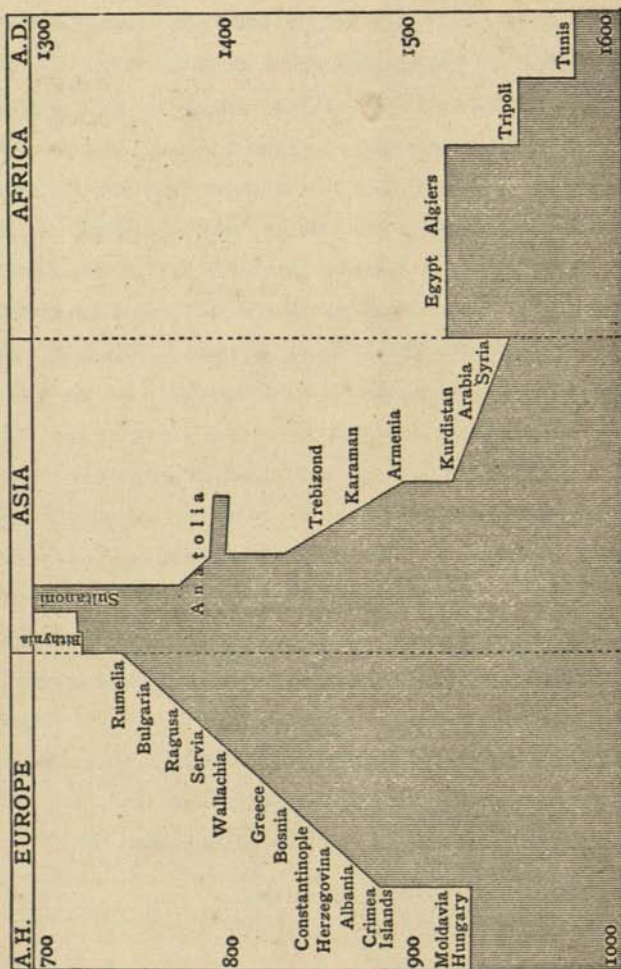
Sulaymān the Great, *patris fortis filius fortior*, overshadowed Selīm's exploits by his own magnificent achievements. In 1522 he expelled the Knights of Rhodes from their corsairs' stronghold. In the north he conquered Belgrade, and in 1526 utterly crushed the Hungarians on the field of Mohács, slaying their king Louis II and 20,000

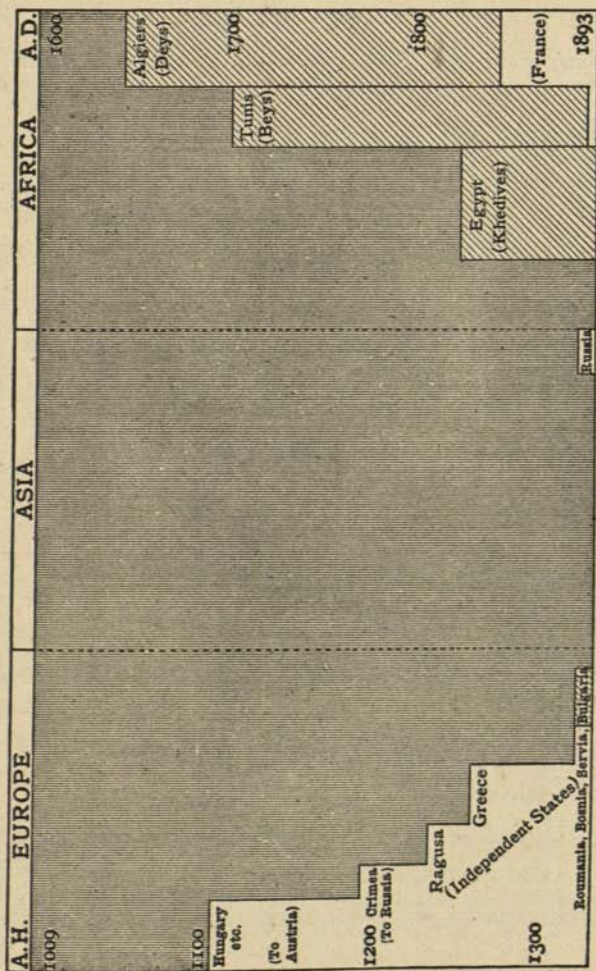
of his troops. For a century and a half Hungary became a Turkish province. Sulaymān even besieged Vienna (1629), and, though he failed to subdue it, he compelled the Archduke Ferdinand to pay him tribute. ‘The Sultan’s claim to be called The Great rests not merely upon his undoubted wisdom and ability, and the splendid series of his successes, but upon the fact that he maintained and improved his grand position in an age of surpassing greatness—the age of Charles I, Francis I, Elizabeth, and Leo X—of Columbus, Cortes, and Raleigh. In the great days of Charles he dared to annex Hungary and lay siege to Vienna; and in the epoch of great navies and admirals, of Doria and Drake, he swept the seas to the coasts of Spain, and his admirals Barbarossa, Pialó, and Dragut, created panic fear along all the shores of the Mediterranean, drove the Spaniards out of the Barbary States, and defeated pope, emperor, and doge together at the great sea-fight off Prevesa (1538).’\* The empire of Sulaymān stretched from Buda-Pesth on the Danube to Aswān on the Cataracts of the Nile, and from the Euphrates almost to the Straits of Gibraltar.

\* See my *History of Turkey*, ch. x (1888).



## GROWTH OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.





DECLINE OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

The reign of Sulaymān the Great is the apogee of Ottoman power. The downward course began with the blow inflicted upon the naval prestige of Turkey by Don John of Austria's signal victory off Lepanto (1571). In spite of the conquest of Cyprus (1571) and such successes on land as the defeat of the Austrians on the Keresztes (1596), the Turks were no longer the terror of Europe. Murād iv added Baghdād to their Asiatic dominions in 1638, and Candia and other islands were wrested from the Venetians in 1645; but on the continent of Europe the defeats at St. Gothard (1664), Choczim (1673), and Lemberg (1675) by John Sobieski, culminating in the fatal siege of Vienna (1682) and the rout at Mohács, were followed by the total loss of Hungary (1686), and the invasion of Bosnia and Greece by the Austrians and Venetians. Prince Eugene delivered a final blow at the battle of Zenta (1697), and the treaties of Carlovitz (1699) and Passarovitz (1718) mark the end of Turkish supremacy in Hungary, Podolia, and Transylvania.

The frontiers of the empire remained almost unchanged from this epoch of humiliation up to the recent partition of 1878. Russian aggression began in 1736 with the annexa-



tion of Oczakov and Azov, and continued with the seizure of the Crimea in 1783, besides several invasions of the Danubian Principalities. Turkey itself was a prey to the exactions of a disorderly soldiery, and Maḥmūd II, the greatest of modern Sultāns, though he massacred the mutinous Janizaries (1826), could not arrest the process of disintegration which was going on in the Ottoman empire. In Africa, Egypt became practically independent under Moḥammad ‘Alī in the first quarter of this century, and since 1883 has been still further removed from the ‘sphere of Turkish influence’ by the British occupation. Algiers and Tunis became semi-independent under their Deys and Beys in 1659 (1070) and 1705 (1117) respectively, and France has been the possessor of Algiers since 1830, and of Tunis, in all but name, since 1881. The regency of Tripoli is all that now remains of the Turkish empire in Africa. In Asia, however, it has lost little since the day when Murād IV took Baghdād from the Persians; though Kars and Batūm were awarded to Russia in 1878 by the Treaty of Berlin, when the island of Cyprus was hypothecated to Great Britain.

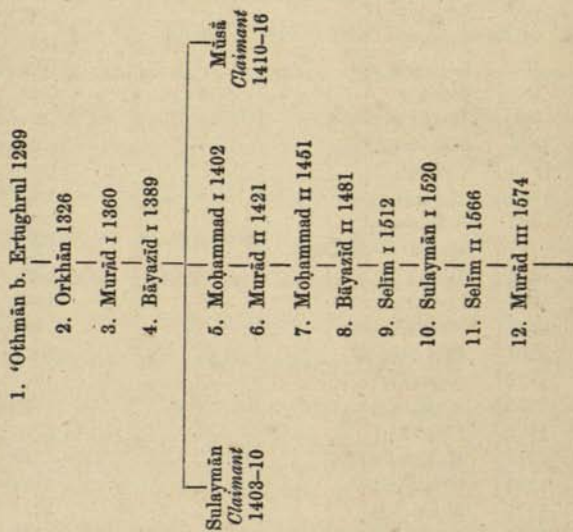
Turkey’s most serious losses have been in Europe.

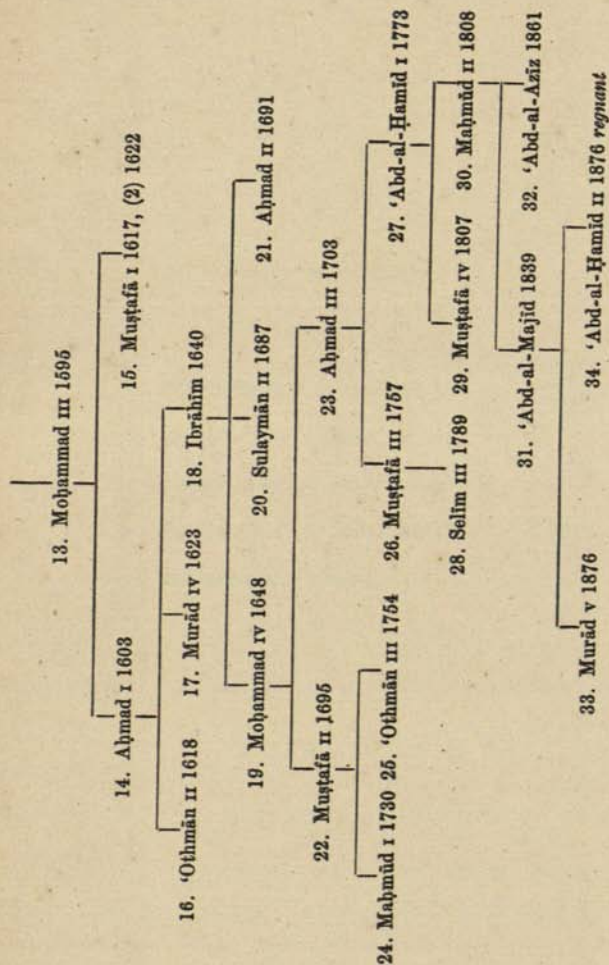
Greece parted from her in 1828; the Danubian Principalities coalesced into the State of Roumania in 1866; and Servia got rid of her Turkish garrisons in 1867. The designs of Russia, which had been checked by England and France in the Crimean War (1854-5), were again manifested in the invasion of Turkey in 1877-8; but the Great Powers did not sanction the aggrandizing ambition of Russia. The Treaty of Berlin (1878), though it gave little to Russia, carried out the partition of Turkey in Europe which had already begun. Roumania and Servia were created separate kingdoms, the independence of Montenegro was recognized, Greece was given Thessaly, Bosnia and Herzegovina were entrusted to Austria, and a new tributary principality of Bulgaria was established, to which Eastern Roumelia was added in 1885, whereby Turkey was virtually deprived of her last possession north of the Balkans. The Ottoman Empire in Europe is now reduced to a strip of territory south of the Balkans, corresponding to ancient Thrace, Macedon, Epirus, and Illyria, instead of stretching almost to the gates of Vienna as it did in the great days of Sulaymān.



A. H.		A. D.
699	‘Othmān I . . . . .	1299
726	Orkhān . . . . .	1326
761	Murād (Amurath) I . . . . .	1360
792	Bāyazīd (Bajazet) I . . . . .	1389
805	Moḥammad I . . . . .	1402
824	Murād II . . . . .	1421
855	Moḥammad II . . . . .	1451
886	Bāyazīd II . . . . .	1481
918	Selīm I . . . . .	1512
926	Sulaymān I . . . . .	1520
974	Selīm II . . . . .	1566
982	Murād III . . . . .	1574
1003	Moḥammad III . . . . .	1595
1012	Aḥmad I . . . . .	1603
1026	Muṣṭafā I . . . . .	1617
1027	‘Othmān II . . . . .	1618
1031	Muṣṭafā I ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1622
1032	Murād IV . . . . .	1623
1049	Ibrāhīm I . . . . .	1640
1058	Moḥammad IV . . . . .	1648
1099	Sulaymān II . . . . .	1687
1102	Aḥmad II . . . . .	1691
1106	Muṣṭafā II . . . . .	1695
1115	Aḥmad III . . . . .	1703
1143	Maḥmūd I . . . . .	1730
1168	‘Othmān III . . . . .	1754
1171	Muṣṭafā III . . . . .	1757
1187	‘Abd-al-Ḥamīd I . . . . .	1773
1203	Selīm III . . . . .	1789
1222	Muṣṭafā IV . . . . .	1807
1223	Maḥmūd II . . . . .	1808
1255	‘Abd-al-Majīd . . . . .	1839
1277	‘Abd-al-‘Azīz . . . . .	1861
1293	Murād V . . . . .	1876
1293	‘Abd-al-Ḥamīd II <i>regnant</i> . . . . .	1876

## ‘OTHMÁNĪ OR OTTOMAN TURKS





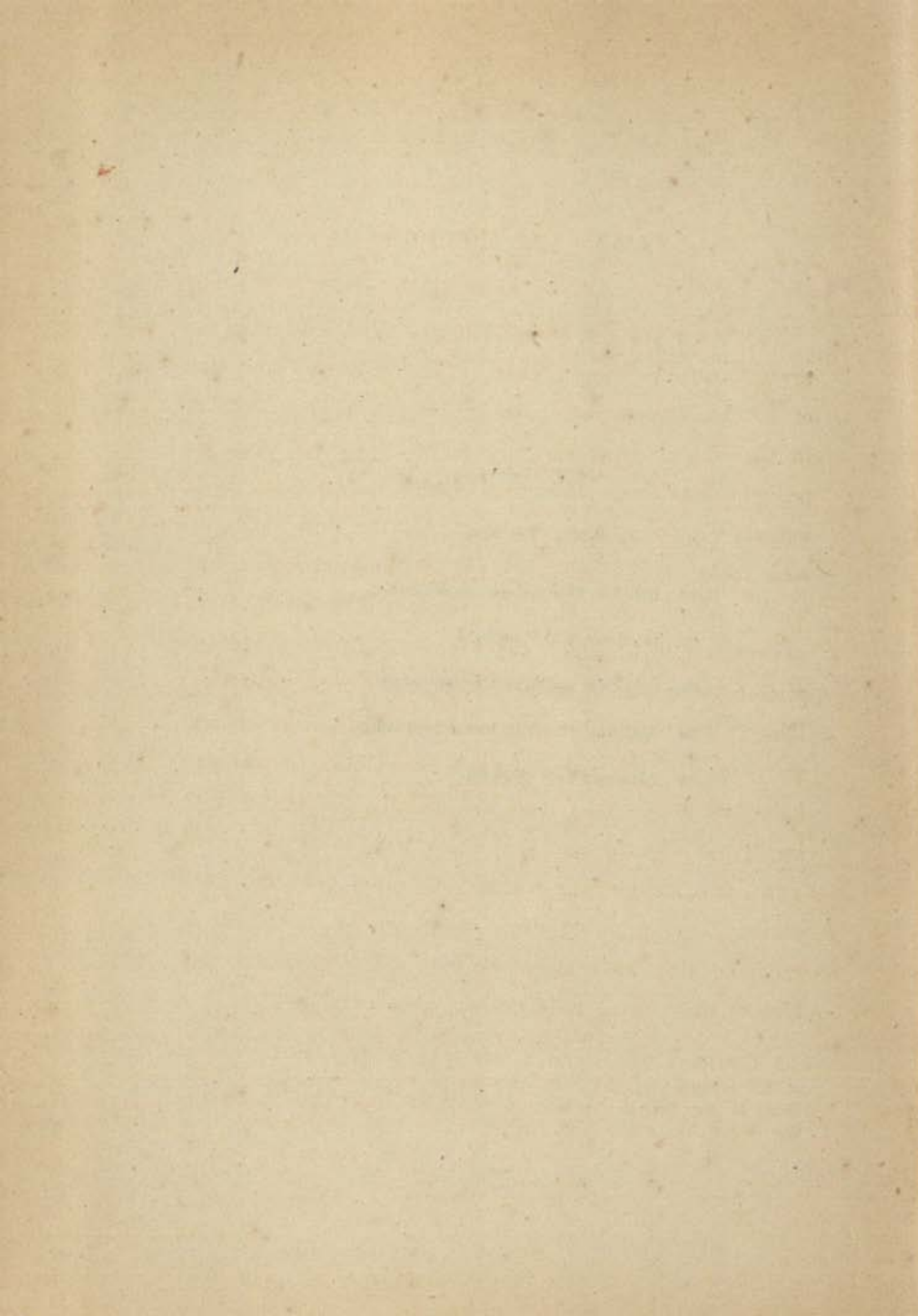


## XI. THE MONGOLS

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

- 81. GREAT KHĀNS OF MONGOLIA
- 82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA
- 83. GOLDEN HORDE OF KIPCHAK
- 84. KHĀNS OF THE ẖRIM (CRIMEA)
- 85. CHAGHATĀY KHĀNS





## XI. THE MONGOLS\*

### SÆC. XIII—XVIII

The history of the Mongols begins practically with the great conqueror Chingiz Khān. There are many traditions of his ancestors current among his biographers, but, as in the case of many another man of unexpected fame, his pedigree has been elaborated rather on the ground of natural propriety than of fact. All that can safely be said about the early history of the Mongols is that they were a clan among clans, a member of a great nomad confederacy that ranged the country north of the desert of Gobi in search of water and pasture; who spent their lives in hunting and the breeding of cattle, lived on flesh and sour milk (kumis), and made their profit by bartering hides and beasts with their kinsmen the Khitans, or with the Turks and Chinese, to whom they owed allegiance. The name Mongol was not known abroad until the tenth century, and probably came to be applied to the whole group of clans only when the chief of a particular clan bearing that name acquired an ascendancy over the rest

\* The following introduction, and those to the succeeding sections of the Mongol dynasties, are reprinted from my *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum*, vol vi. They are of course based upon Sir Henry Howorth's great History.

of the confederacy, and gave to the greater the name of the less. If not the founder of the supremacy of his clan, Yissugāy was a notable maintainer of it, and it was probably he who first asserted the independence of the Mongols from Chinese rule. In spite, however, of conquest and annexation, the people who owned the sovereignty of Yissugāy numbered only forty thousand tents. Yet it was upon this foundation that Yissugāy's son, Chingiz Khān, built up in twenty years the widest empire the world has ever seen. The father died in 1175 A.D., and Temujin his son, a child of thirteen years, and not yet called by the high title of Chingiz Khān, ruled in his stead over the tribes that wandered by the banks of the Onon.

A detailed chronicle of the career of conquest inaugurated by this Asiatic Alexander is no part of the present purpose.\* It is sufficient to say that after thirty years of struggle against home-foes, in which he succeeded in firmly establishing his authority over his own and the neighbouring clans, in face of powerful and treacherous conspiracies, Temujin found himself free to devote the twenty years that remained of his life to wider and more ambitious designs. Having reduced all the tribes north of the desert

\* See Sir H. H. Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, i. 49—115.

of Gobi, from the Irtysh to the Khinggan Mountains, and having incorporated among his subjects the Karaits, who had forfeited their independence by the treachery of their king, Wang Khân (the Prester John of European fable, and an old but perfidious ally of Yissugāy and his son), Temujin summoned, in 1206, a Kuriltāy or Diet of the chiefs of all the tribes; and a *shaman*, or priest, announced to the assembled nobles that a higher title than belonged to others had been decreed by Heaven to Temujin, and henceforward his name should be Chingiz Khân, 'the Very Mighty King.' Thus at the age of forty-four did Chingiz begin his undisputed reign. Three years later, after receiving the submission of the Uighurs, he began his invasion of China, and though it was reserved for his grandson to complete the subjugation of the Celestial Empire, a great part of the northern provinces, the ancient kingdom of Liau-tung, and the Tangut Kingdom of Hia, were added, as subject provinces or feudatory states, to the Mongol dominions during the great Khân's own lifetime. The next obstacle in the path to universal sovereignty was the old Turkish kingdom of Khārā-Khitay, which corresponded nearly to the modern limits of Eastern Turkistān, and was ruled by a line of kings called Gūr-



Khāns, who exacted homage from the border states of Persia and Transoxiana. Chingiz and his horsemen, however, instead of paying homage, speedily rode down all resistance, and soon found themselves masters of Kāshghar, Khoten, and Yārkhand, with the rest of the territory of Gūr-Khāns. The Mongol dominions now marched with the wide kingdom which had recently been conquered by the Khwārizm Shāh; and this, therefore, became the next object of attack and the next example of the futility of resistance. The Mongol armies, divided into several immense brigades, swept over Khwārizm, Khurāsān, and Afghānistān, on the one hand, and on the other over Adharbijān, Georgia, and southern Russia, whilst a third division continued the reduction of China. In the midst of these diverging streams of conquest, Chingiz Khān died, in 1227 (624), at the age of sixty-four. The territory he and his sons had conquered stretched from the Yellow Sea to the Euxine, and included lands or tribes wrung from the rule of Chinese, Tanguts, Afghāns, Persians, and Turks.

It was the habit of a Mongol chief to distribute the clans over which he had ruled as appanages among his sons; and this tribal rather than territorial distribution

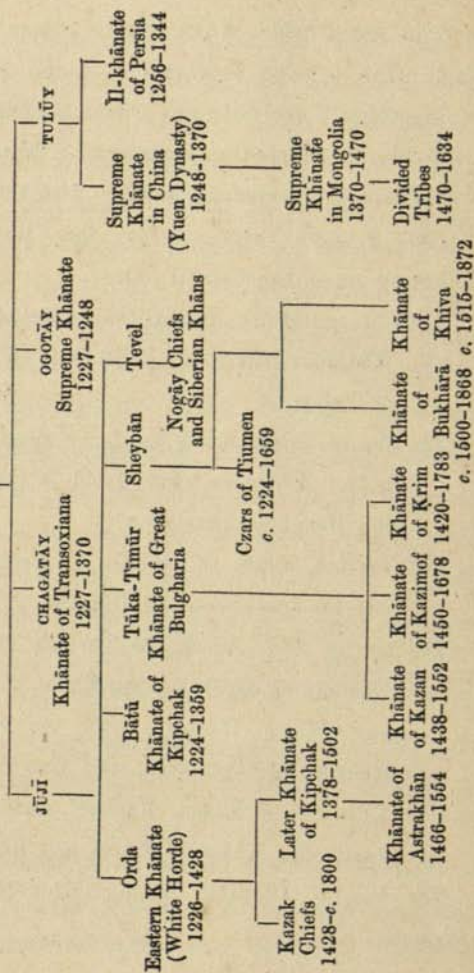


obtained in the division of the empire among the sons of Chingiz. The founder appointed a special appanage of tribes in certain loosely defined camping-grounds to each son, and also nominated a successor to himself in the supreme Khānate. Beginning therefore with the *Khākaāns*, or supreme suzerains over all the other Mongol chiefs, the following seems the natural order:

1. *The line of Ogotāy*, ruling the tribes of Zungaria; *Khākaāns*, till their extinction by the family of Tulūy.
2. *The line of Tulūy*, ruling the home clans of Mongol-istān; *Khākaāns* after Ogotāy's line, down to the Manchu supremacy.
3. *The Persian branch of the line of Tulūy*; Hūlāgū and his successors, the Īl-khāns of Persia.
4. *The line of Jūjī*, ruling the Turkish Tribes of the Khānate of Kipchak; the Khāns of the Golden and White Hordes, with the sequel, the Khānate of Astrakhān, and the offshoots, the Khānates of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim; and finally the Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā.
5. *The line of Chagatāy*, ruling Mā-warā-l-nahr, or Transoxiana.

## SKETCH-TREE OF THE DYNASTIES SPRUNG FROM CHINGIZ KHÂN

## CHINGIZ



A.H.

A.D.

603—1043

81. GREAT KHĀNS

1026—1634

1. *Line of Ogotāy*:—Appanage, Zungaria\*; Supreme Khākaāns (1227—1248).

By the will of Chingiz, Ogotāy besides receiving his appanage in Zungaria was appointed to succeed to the supreme authority; and it is a singular testimony to the reverence in which the intentions of the great founder of Mongol power were held that Ogotāy, although neither the eldest nor the most capable of the sons of Chingiz, was suffered quietly to assume the sovereignty over all the chiefs of the family and tributaries, and received their loyal homage at the general Diet held in 1229. His reign was marked by a considerable extension of the Mongol dominions. The Kin empire, or northern half of China, which had only been partially reduced in the lifetime of Chingiz, was now (1234) entirely subdued; (the southern

\* It will be simpler thus to indicate roughly the position of the camping-grounds of Ogotāy's subjects, than to say "the clans camping in or about Zungaria," etc. In this instance the tribes in question were the Naymans and the ancestors of the modern Kalmuks.



half, or Sung empire, resisted the invaders till the time of Khubilāy.) Korea was annexed (1241). The gallant and unfortunate Jalāl-al-dīn, son of the late Khwārizm Shāh Moḥammad, was hunted through the wide territory which had once owned his father's rule. A great expedition into Europe was conducted by Bātū, son of Jūji; the Mongols entered Moscow and Novgorod, penetrated to Hungary, burned Cracow, and laid siege to Pesth. The opportune death of Ogotāy called for a general assembly of the family, and a reverse sustained at Liegnitz, at the hand of the Grand Duke of Austria, saved Europe. Meanwhile the internal affairs of the empire had been organized and ably administered under the wise and just rule of the prime minister Yeliu Chutsāy, a Khitan, who did much to restore order and security to the provinces, in spite of the incapacity of his imperial master, who was given over to the prevailing Mongol vice of habitual drunkenness.

Ogotāy's death in A.D. 1241 (637) was followed by an interregnum of several years, during which his widow Turakina governed the empire as regent for her eldest son Kuyuk, until he should return from Europe, where he had been distinguishing himself in the invasion of

Hungary under his cousin Bātū. He received the summons in Hungary, and on his return to Karakorum in 1246, was elected Khākaān by a general Kuriltāy attended by most of the chiefs of the family, except the sons of Jūjī, who were dissatisfied with the succession and excused themselves. Kuyuk restored the tranquility which had been disturbed during the rule of his mother, and armies were now despatched to continue the work of extension in China and Persia.

Kuyuk was the only member of the family of Ogotāy who succeeded to the supreme throne, and on his death in 1248 the empire passed to the line of Tulūy, and neither Kuyuk's sons nor any of his brothers succeeded him. Under the first Khākaān of the new line, the family of Ogotāy offered no opposition to their dethronement; but when Mangū died and Khubilāy was elected to the sovereignty by an informal Diet held in China, the discontent of Ogotāy's descendants manifested itself in immediate and general revolt, and a series of disastrous campaigns ensued.\* Kaydū, the grandson of Ogotāy, fought no less than forty-one battles with the supporters of Tulūy on the east, and fifteen with their Kipchak allies on

\* See Howorth, i. 173—186.



the west: but the struggle was unequal, and soon after Kaydū's death (about 1301, 701) the family of Ogotāy did homage to the line of Tulūy; their clans were dispersed among the tribes of Transoxiana and Kipchak, and their chiefs lived in obscurity under the rule of the Chagatāy Khāns. Once and again, in a period of confusion, some representative of Ogotāy's house was raised to the throne of Transoxiana; and it was the fancy of the great Tīmūr to bring again to light the heirs of the heir of Chingiz by setting up Suyurghātmish and his son Maḥmūd in the stead of the deposed house of Chagatāy; but this was only a fictitious revival, and these two *rois fainéants* cannot be said to represent the original Khaḡaāns.

2. *Line of Tulūy*:—Appanage, Mongolistān; Khāḡaāns (1248–1634) in three stages, (1) Yuen dynasty in China (1248–1370), (2) Diminished empire at Karakorum (1370–1543), (3) Divided tribes and gradual submission to Manchus (1543–1634).

Mangū, the son of Tulūy, owed his accession partly to his personal reputation as a warrior and general, and partly to the adherence of the numerous tribes of Mongolia proper, the nucleus of the Mongol armies under Chingiz, which formed the appanage of Tulūy. In 1251 his inauguration took place, and in 1257 he died. Yet in this short reign there was room for the beginning of two important changes. Mangū kept his court at the usual capital Karakorum, north of the desert of Gobi, and appointed his brother Khubilāy governor of the southern provinces: this was the beginning of the transfer of the seat of government from Karakorum to Peking. The other change was the despatch of another brother, Hūlāgū, to Persia, where in place of the shifting rule of provincial governors he established his own dynasty, and thus Persia now possessed a line of kings of the royal house of Chingiz, like the other great divisions of the Mongol empire.

The death of Mangū in 1257 was the signal for a general struggle. The house of Ogotāy laid claim to the supreme sovereignty, as has been said; and Arikbuka, a brother of Mangū and Khubilāy, was the candidate in the Mongol homeland. Khubilāy was saluted Khākaān by the chiefs of the army in China; Arikbuka was elected by another Diet at Karakorum; and Kaydū received the like title and homage from the tribes of Ogotāy and Chagatāy further west. Jūji's line in Kipchak did not attempt to gain the Khākaānship, but supported the house of Tulūy. The fine generalship, large resources, and wide personal popularity of Khubilāy—Marco Polo's Great Khān and Coleridge's Kubla Khan—carried him safely through these early complications. Arikbuka was speedily routed, and Kaydu was kept at a distance, though he did not cease from troubling till after Khubilāy's death.

The Khākaāns of the blood of Chingiz now became a Chinese dynasty. By 1280 Khubilāy had conquered the southern or Sung empire of China, and, having thus united the whole country under his sole rule, fixed his court at Khān Baligh (Cambaluk) or the 'City of the Khān,' now called Peking; whilst the old capital Karakorum became a provincial centre during the first of the three



periods into which the history of his descendants may be divided. This *first period* includes the century which elapsed between his founding of the Mongol empire in China and the expulsion of the invaders under his tenth successor, Tughān-Timūr (1370).\* The Mongol Khāḡaāns of this period are known in Chinese annals as the *Yuen Dynasty*. With what sumptuous glory this dynasty began we know from Marco Polo: the causes of its decay—the extravagance of the court, the favouritism of the Lamas, the poverty and sickness of the people, the plagues and famines, earthquakes and other ‘signs’—may be read in Sir Henry Howorth’s History. The attempts of various pretenders were crowned by the successful attack of Chu Yuen Chang, prince of U, the founder of the Ming Dynasty, who assumed the royal title and seized Peking in 1368. In two years China was rid of the Mongols; and the most prosperous period of the history of the Khāḡaāns was over.

The *second period* extends from the expulsion from China to the temporary revival under Dayan Khān (1370–1543). This is the time of the *Diminished Empire*, when the Mongols were confined to the steppes from which they

\* Howorth, i. 284–340

first went forth to conquer, the camping-grounds by the rivers Kerulon and Onon, north of the desert of Gobi. Even here they were not absolutely independent. The Ming armies surprised the Mongols by Lake Buyur and totally routed them, capturing 80,000 prisoners, lifting 150,000 head of cattle, and carrying off an immense booty. This defeat effectually tamed the spirit of the Khākaāns, supreme now in name alone; and they became actual vassals of the Ming emperors, who appointed the rulers of the tribes by patents drawn up in Peking. In the 15th century a worse thing happened to them; many of the clans became for a while subject to the Uirats. But at the end of the same century Dayan Khān, the fourteenth Khākaān in succession from Tughān-Tīmūr, effected a temporary union among the scattered tribes, and organized them in certain groups.

The *third period* is the history of the disastrous results of Dayan's decentralizing policy—civil war among the *Divided Tribes*, and the consequent absorption of them one by one by the Manchu power which had newly risen on the ruins of the Ming in China. Internal wars, separate dynasties, and universal disunion, soon brought even the nominal sovereignty of the Khākaāns to an end; and after 1634 the descendants of Khubilāy were mere vassals of China.



## GREAT KHĀNS

A.H.		A.D.
603	Chingiz Khān . . . . .	1206
624	Ogotāy . . . . .	1227
639	<i>Interregnum</i> : Turakina . . . . .	1241
644	Kuyuk . . . . .	1246
646	Mangū . . . . .	1248

## YUEN DYNASTY

655	Khubilāy . . . . .	1257
693	Üljā-itū . . . . .	1294
706	Kuluk . . . . .	1307
711	Buyantu . . . . .	1311
720	Gegen . . . . .	1320
723	Yisun-Timūr . . . . .	1323
728	Rajipeka . . . . .	1328
729	Kushala . . . . .	1329
729	Jiyaghatu . . . . .	1329
732	Rintshenpal . . . . .	1332
732	Tughān-Timūr . . . . .	1332

## DIMINISHED EMPIRE

771	Biliktu . . . . .	1370
780	Ussukhal . . . . .	1378
790	Engke Soriktu . . . . .	1388
794	Elbek . . . . .	1392
802	Gun-Timūr . . . . .	1400
805	Uljai-Timūr . . . . .	1403
814	Delbek . . . . .	1411
837	Adsai . . . . .	1434
843	Taisong . . . . .	1439
856	Akbarji . . . . .	1452

857	Ukektu	.	.	.	.	.	.	1453
857	Molon	.	.	.	.	.	.	1453
867	Mandaghol	.	.	.	.	.	.	1463
875	Dayan	.	.	.	.	.	.	1470

## DIVIDED TRIBES

951	Bodi	.	.	.	.	.	.	1544
955	Kudang	.	.	.	.	.	.	1548
964	Sasaktu	.	.	.	.	.	.	1557
1001	Setzen	.	.	.	.	.	.	1593
1013	Lingdan	.	.	.	.	.	.	1604
—1043								—1634

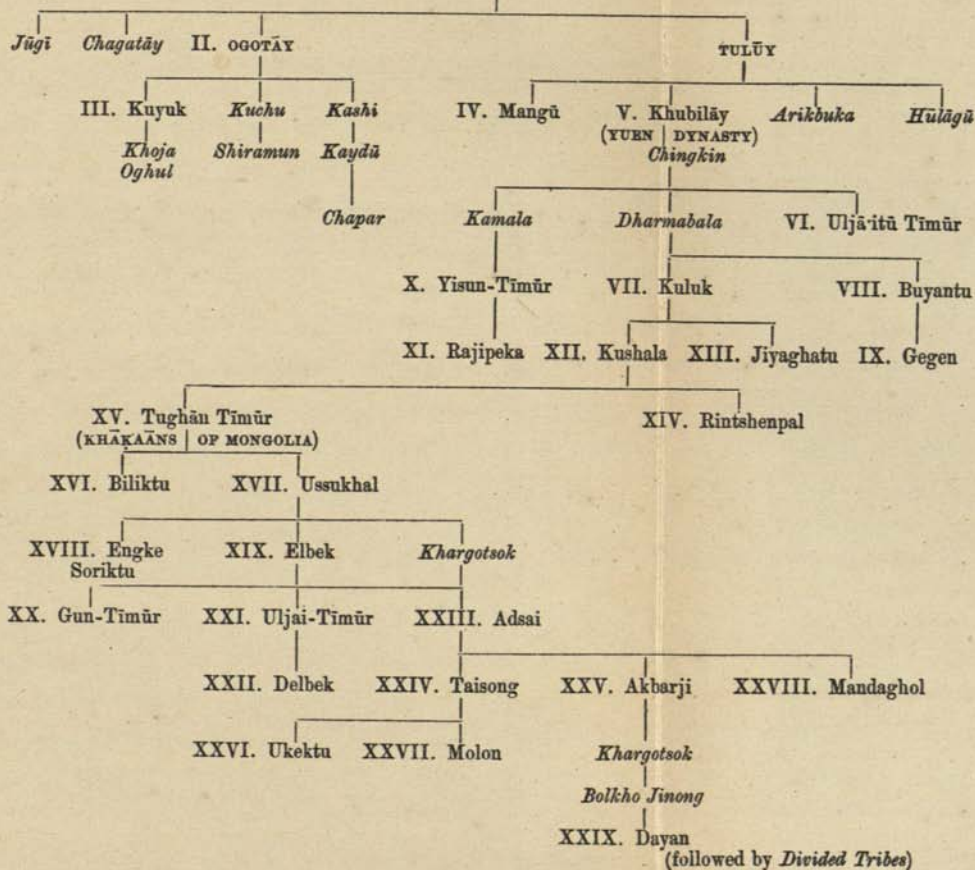
[Manchu Tatars]

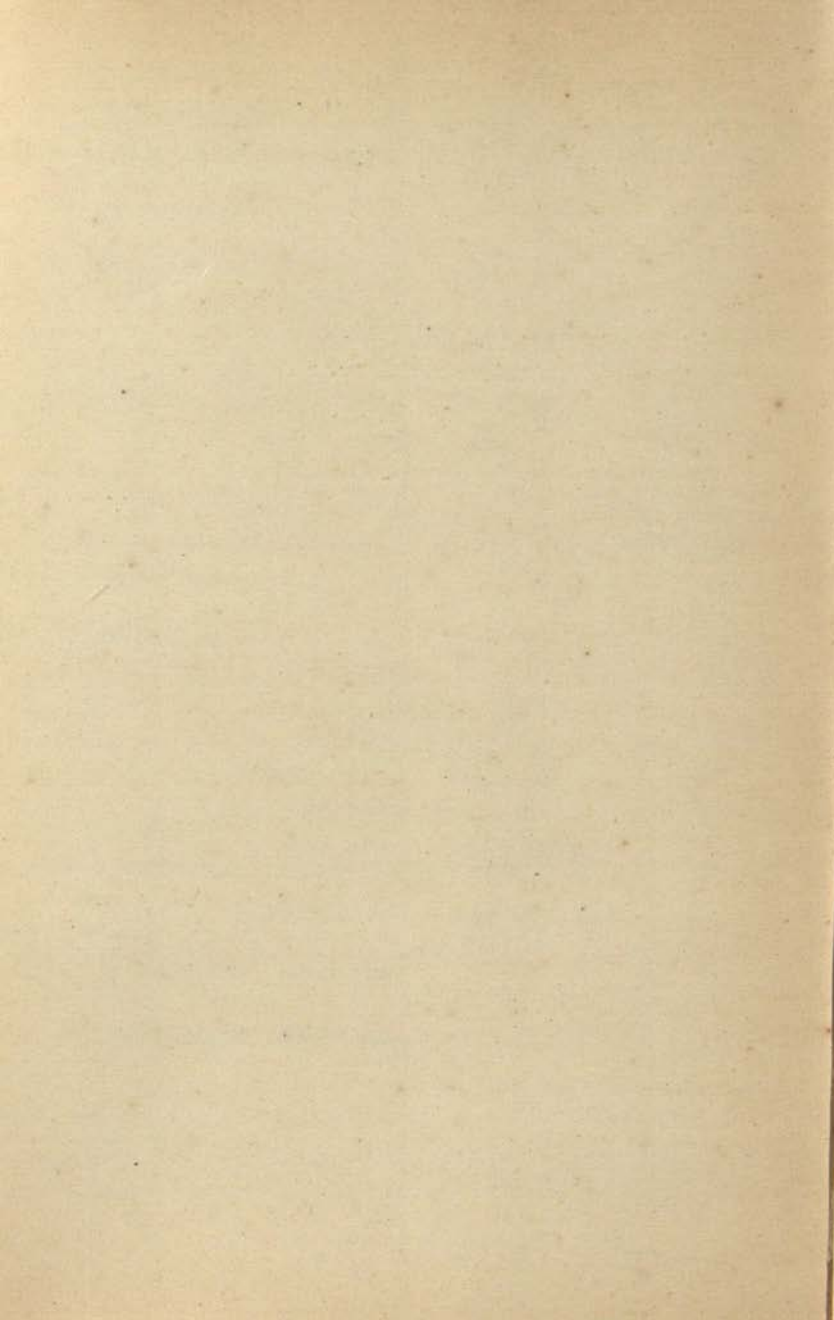
# THE HOUSES OF OGOTĀY AND TULŪY

(To face p. 216.)

## SUPREME KHĀNS

### I. CHINGIZ





A.H.		A.D.
654—750	82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA *	1256—1349

It was in the reign of Mangū that Persia was given a royal dynasty in the House of Hūlāgū (of the line of Tulūy), called Īl-khāns, or provincial Khāns, to indicate the homage they owed and invariably acknowledged (very cheaply) to the supreme Khākaāns. Hūlāgū had little difficulty in establishing his authority over the country allotted to him. The ambitious Shāh of Khwārizm whom Chingiz had routed had already cleared the way by conquering the better part of Persia, and there were no formidable opponents to meet. Hūlāgū speedily drove before him the small princes who were trying to build their little dynasties on the ruins of the great empire of Khwārizm; came to Baghdād and cruelly murdered -Mustaʿsim, the feeble representative of the 'Abbāsīd Caliphs; and discovered no serious obstacle in his path till he was checked in Syria by the valiant Mamlūks of Egypt, who kept him successfully at arm's length. Hūlāgū was now master of

\* Howorth, iii.



all the provinces of Persia and Asia Minor from India to the Mediterranean. His dominions marched with those of Chagatāy and Jūji on the north, and with the territory of the Egyptian Sultāns on the south; and within these limits for nearly a century his dynasty reigned in practical independence, whilst rendering a certain feudal homage to the remote Khāḡān in China. Save for an occasional contest over the succession, the country was quietly and peaceably governed, and the Il-khāns showed a praiseworthy desire to emulate the examples of earlier rulers of Persia in the encouragement of science and letters.

In the reign of Abū-Sa'īd, however, the dynasty was undermined by the same causes which had previously destroyed the power of the Caliphs and the Seljūks, and were destined at last to bring about the downfall of the Mamlūks in Egypt: rival amīrs, generals, ministers, fanatics, began to take a large share in the government of the country, and in their jealousies and animosities lay the prime danger of the Il-khāns. After Abū-Sa'īd's death the throne of Persia became the toadstool on which the puppet sovereigns set up by rival amīrs seated themselves, only to find it crumbling beneath them. Two great houses tore Persia in sunder: that of Amīr Chūpān, a favourite

general of Ghāzān and of his successors; and that of Amīr Ḥosayn the Jalayr, also called the Ilkānian. Each of these had a son named Ḥasan, distinguished by the epithets Great and Little; the son of Chūpān was Amīr Ḥasan Kāchuk or the Little; and the son of the Jalayr was Amīr Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg or the Great. Their power was immediately felt. Arpā Khān, a descendant not of Hūlāgū but of Arikbuka his brother, was placed on the throne after Abū-Sa'id's death, but was deposed the same year (1336) by Mūsā, who drew his pedigree from Baydū the sixth Il-khān. Mūsā was quickly displaced by the nominees of the Greater Ḥasan, whose rival of the line of Chūpān presently set up an opposition in the sovereignty in the person of Sātt-Beg, a sister of Abū-Sa'id, who had been the wife of Chūpān, then of Arpā, and was finally married to Sulaymān, who nominally supplanted her in the supremacy. After the troubled reign of Nūshīrwān, the Jalayrs were the chief power in Persia, and the dynasty of Hūlāgū became extinct. The Jalayrs, Muẓaffarids, Sarbadārīds etc., made havoc of the country till the great Tīmūr came and swept them away.

A.H.		A.D.
654	Hülägü . . . . .	1266
663	Abāgā . . . . .	1265
680	Aḥmad . . . . .	1281
683	Arghūn . . . . .	1284
690	Gaykhātū . . . . .	1291
694	Baydū . . . . .	1295
694	Ghāzān Maḥmūd . . . . .	1295
703	Uljai-tū . . . . .	1304
716	Abū-Sa'id . . . . .	1316
736	Arpā . . . . .	1335
736	Mūsā . . . . .	1336

## RIVAL KHĀNS\*

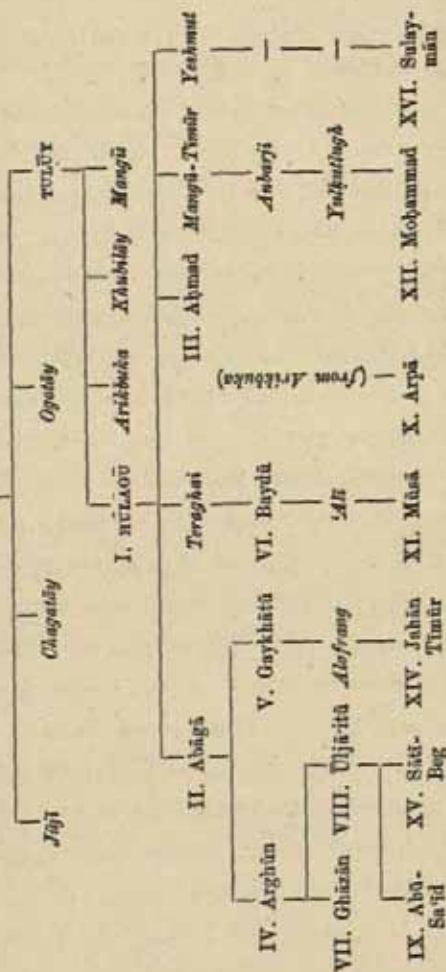
736-8	Moḥammad . . . . .	1336-8
739-52	Tughā-Tīmūr . . . . .	1338-51
739-41	Jahān-Tīmūr . . . . .	1339-40
739-40	Sāti-Beg (princess) . . . . .	1339
740-4	Sulaymān (m. Sāti Beg) . . . . .	1339-43
745	Nūshīrwān . . . . .	1344

---

\* Moḥammad, Tughā-Tīmūr, and Jahān-Tīmūr were set up as puppet-khāns by the Jalayr Amīr, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg; Sāti-Beg and her husband Sulaymān were nominees of the rival Amīr Ḥasan Kūchuk Chūpānī; and Nūshīrwān of Ashraf Chūpānī. All were of the posterity of Hülägü, except Tughā-Tīmūr who was descended from a brother of Chingiz Khān, and Nūshīrwān whose pedigree is doubtful.

## IL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA

## CHINGIZ





A.H.

A.D.

621—907

83. KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN  
HORDE

1224—1502

To Jūji, the eldest son of Chingiz, were assigned the tribes of the old empire of Kārū-Khitay, north of the Sihūn or Jaxartes, and here he, dying before his father, was succeeded by his eldest son Orda. A younger son of Jūji, Bātū, by his famous invasion of Europe, extended the appanage of his family much further to the west, and secured for himself the sovereignty of the Turkish Khānate of Kipchak. North of Bātū's territory, another brother, Tūka-Tīmūr, appears to have been allotted the district of Great Bulgaria, on the Upper Volga; a fourth son of Jūji, Shaybān, ruled the steppes now known as those of the Kirghiz Kazaks, north of Orda's appanage, and a fifth, Teval, led the Pechenegs, afterwards known as Nogāys, between the Ural and Yemba. All these tribes and their chiefs were more or less subject to the family of Bātū, which, although a younger branch, had acquired the greatest power and had made their capital Sarāy on the Volga the metropolis of the Jūjid empire; and all these tribes are included in the general name *Golden Horde*, so-called from the Khān's royal camp, *Sir Orda* or Golden Camp. It must be added that only the ruling family



and the cream of the army were of Mongol race: the vast majority of the tribes allotted to the sons of Jūji were conquered Turks or Turkomans.

The family of Jūji has, therefore, to be considered in the following distinct lines:—

- A. *The line of Bātū*, chief Khāns of the Golden Horde, ruling the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak (1224-1359).
- B. *The line of Orda*, titular heads of the family, ruling the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak (1226-1428), Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak after Bātū's line (1378-1502); and finally decaying as Khāns of Astrakhān (1466-1554).
- C. *The line of Tūka-Tīmūr*, Khāns of Great Bulgaria, north of Kipchak; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak; finally Khāns of Kazan (1438-1552), Kazimof (1450-1678), and Krim (1420-1783).
- D. *The line of Shaybān*, in the Uzbek or Kirghiz Kazak steppes (1224-1659); afterwards migrating and becoming Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā (1500-1872).

A. *The line of Bata*:—Chief Khāns of the Golden Horde; appanage, the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak\* (1224-1359).

Bātū's line had the privilege of ruling what was emphatically the Great Khānate of the West. Its history is important in its relations with the growth of Russia. At first the liege-lords of the Russian princes, receivers of their tribute, and owners of their daughters, it was the fate of the Great Khāns of Kipchak eventually to become the vassals of those whom they had once held in bondage. But before this stage in the decay of the Golden Horde, Bātū's line had become extinct, and the Khāns had been supplied from his brothers' families. So long as the descendants of Bātū held the reins of government, the great domain of the Khānate of Kipchak was maintained in all its power. The history of this line, through ten Khāns, to Jānī-Beg, the last great ruler of this branch of Jūji's family, is comparatively plain. But on his death in 1357 anarchy ensued. His son Birdī-Beg reigned for

\* The country watered by the Don and the Volga, extending east and west from the Ural or Yaik to the Dnieper, and north and south from the Black Sea and Caspian to Ukek. Howarth, ii. 36-194.

two years; two Khāns asserting themselves to be sons of Jānī-Beg succeeded in a single year; and then follows an intricate period of twenty years of rival candidates.

There were five branches of Jūji's house from which claimants for the Golden Khānate might spring, on the extinction of Bātū's line. North and south, in Great Bulgaria and the Krim, ruled the numerous progeny of Tūka-Tīmūr. South also, by the Caucasus, camping along the Terek and Kuma, were the descendants of Baraka, the younger brother and second successor to Bātū, to whom the Golden Horde owed much of its terrible prestige. East of the Great Khānate was the White Horde with its chiefs of the family of Orda; and also east, but further north, were the Uzbek tribes of Shaybān's leading; whilst along the northern shore of the Caspian the clans of Nogāy pastured their herds. The attribution of the fifteen khāns of this period of rival families to their several ancestors in the table on page 230 is partly conjectural, but their dates are established by coins. In 1378, the sovereignty of the Golden Horde passed into the family of Orda in the person of Tōktāmish.

B. *The line of Orda*:—Appanage, the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak,\* 1226-1428; Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak, 1378-1502; Khāns of Astrakhān, 1466-1554.

Although Bātū was the most powerful of the sons of Jāji, Orda the eldest inherited his father's appanage by the Jaxartes, and received a special homage as hereditary head of the family. He ruled the left division of the Golden Horde, known as the White Horde (Āk Orda), (a colour which ranked higher than the Blue), in distinction from the right wing, or Bātū's tribes, which were designated the Blue Horde (Kök Orda) in token of imaginary dependence. Living in the far-away steppes beyond the Caspian, the White Horde soon yielded the palm to its Blue brethren on the Don and Volga; but in its rough wintry life it retained a vigour and hardihood which eventually placed its rulers on the throne of the more civilized and decayed descendants of Bātū.

Of the earlier rulers of the White Horde little is

\* The country of the Lower Jaxartes and the Ulugh and Kūchuk Tāg Mountains: bounded on the west by Bātū's Blue Horde, on the north by Shaybān's Uzbeks, on the east by Chagatāy's Khānate, on the south by the desert of Kizil Kum and the Alexandrovski range. Howorth, ii. 216-362.



known; the Khānate passed regularly from father to son; and the only noticeable fact is the possession by Kūchi of a territory at Ghazna and Bāmiyān under the suzerainty of either the Chagatāy Khāns or the Il-khāns of Persia. Ūrūs Khān is the first chief of Orda's line who possesses any individuality in the history of the White Horde. He had the distinction of defeating the troops of Tīmūr more than once. Tīmūr in his overbearing fashion had appointed to the sovereignty of the tribes of Jūjī's appanage a member of Orda's family, Tōktāmish, whose father had been killed and he himself exiled by Ūrūs Khān. Assisted by the troops supplied by Tīmūr to carry his nomination into effect, Tōktāmish sustained several repulses at the hands of Ūrūs, and it was not till after the death of this Khān and the short reign of Tōktakya his son that Tōktāmish was able to wrest the command of the White Horde from another son of Ūrūs, Tīmūr Malik.

Tōktāmish is 'the last really great figure in the history of the Golden Horde.' After seizing the throne of the White Horde he marched upon Western Kipchak, defeated Mamāy, the king-maker of Sarāy, and by this victory in 1378 (780) put an end to the division between the White and the Blue Hordes, and united Eastern and Western



Kipchak under his sole rule. Henceforward Orda's family ruled the Blue Horde, bringing no doubt the cream of the White Horde with them; and their original camping-grounds gradually passed into the hands of the descendants of Shaybān. Under Töktāmish the Golden Horde recovered much of its prestige. A great campaign was carried into Russia, Moscow was sacked and burnt (1382), and the Grand Principality was ravaged with the ancient fury of the Mongols. This revival of the glory of Kipchak, however, was only the flicker of a dying torch. Töktāmish had the misfortune or the ingratitude to quarrel with the prince who had helped him to his success; and no one offended Tīmūr with impunity. The great conqueror in two campaigns, one marked by the battle of Urtupa on the 18th June, 1391, and the second by a crushing defeat near the Terek in 1395, when Töktāmish had returned from exile, destroyed for ever the power of the Khāns of Kipchak. Töktāmish indeed re-entered Sarāy in 1398, after Tīmūr's departure, but he was speedily driven out again by Tīmūr Kutlugh, son of his old enemy, Ūrūs, and forced to take refuge with the Lithuanian prince Vitut, whom he involved in war with the Tatars; he died in 1406.

The period succeeding the overthrow of Töqtämish is one of the most obscure in the labyrinth of dark passages which the history of the Golden Horde affords. It is filled with the incessant struggles of *Rival Families* for the throne. There were at least three distinct sets of candidates for the decayed Khānship: the family of Ūrūs Khān, supported by the Nogāy chief Idiku, the second king-maker of Kipchak; the sons of Töqtāmish; and some younger members of the family of Shaybān. The table on page 232 will give an idea of this confused period. The rival Khāns not only ruled simultaneously in Kipchak, but held the same cities in the same years; and the history of Sarāy and other large towns must have been the record of continual sieges and recaptures.

This is the end of the Golden Horde. It was absorbed by Russia in 1502 (907), and its history degenerates into the petty annals of its scattered fragments. Of these one alone belonged to the family of Orda—the insignificant Khānate of Astrakhān,\* founded by Kāsim, a grandson of Kūchuk Moḥammad, about 1466, and held by his descendants until its abolition in 1554 by the Grand Prince of Moscow.

\* Howorth, ii. 349-362.

## KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE

## i. THE BLUE HORDE OF WESTERN KIPCHAK

## a. FAMILY OF BĀTŪ

A.H.		A.D.
621	Bātū . . . . .	1224
654	Sartak . . . . .	1256
654	Baraka . . . . .	1256
664	Mangū-Timūr . . . . .	1266
679	Tūda-Mangū . . . . .	1280
686	[Tāla Bughā] . . . . .	1287
689	Tekṭā . . . . .	1290
712	Ūzbeg . . . . .	1312
741	Tini-Beg . . . . .	1340
741	Jāni-Beg Maḥmūd . . . . .	1340
758	Birdi-Beg Moḥammad . . . . .	1357
760	Kūlnā . . . . .	1359
760	Nūrūz-Beg . . . . .	1359

## b. RIVAL FAMILIES

A.H.	OF SHAYKHĀN	OF ORDA	OF TŪKA-TĪMŪR
760	Khiḍr		
762	Mardūd	762 Timūr Khōja	762 Kildī Beg
		762 Murid Khōja	
764-8	Palād Khōja	764 Kutlugh Khōja	764 'Azīz Shaykh
		764 'Abd-Allāh	
			768 Ḥasan
772	Tālūn-Beg	771 Moḥammad Bālāk	—772
775	Ilbān	—780	
777	Khāghān		
779	'Arab Shāh		
—780			

[780 United to White Horde 1378]

H. THE WHITE HORDE OF EASTERN KIPCHAK  
FAMILY OF ORDA

A.H.		A.D.
623	Orda . . . . .	1226
679	Küchi . . . . .	1280
701	Bayān . . . . .	1301
709	Sāsibūkā . . . . .	1309
c. 715	Ibisan . . . . .	1315
720	Mubārak Khōja . . . . .	1320
745	Chimtāy . . . . .	1344
762	Ūrās . . . . .	1361
777	Töktakya . . . . .	1375
777	Timūr Malik . . . . .	1375
778	Töktämish Ghiyāth-al-din . . . . .	1376
—793	(who unites Blue and White Hordes 1378)	—1391

[*Rival Families*]

## iii. RIVAL FAMILIES

OF ORDA		OF SHAYRÂN	
A.H.	Eastern Kipchak Branch Koirjak	House of Črūs	House of Töqtämish
		797 Timūr Kutluğh 802 Shādi Beg { 810-15 Palād { 809-18 Timūr	793 Beg Palād  814 Jalāl-al-dīn 815 Karīm Birdī 817 Kibak c. 818 Jabār Birdī
823	Burāk (seizes part of West Kipchak 827-831)	818 Chakra	
		827 Kūchuk Moḥammad —c. 864	805-22 Darwish
	FAMILY OF TŪKA-TİMŪR		823 Sayyid Aḥmad
830			
	Dawlat Birdī (in absence of Burāk)	c. 864 Maḥmūd 864 Aḥmad 886 { Sayyid Aḥmad { Murtadā { Shaykh Aḥmad	

[907 Final submission to Russia. 1502]



A. H.		A. D.
c. 823—1197	84. KHĀNS OF THE K̲RIM (CRIMEA)	c. 1420—1783

- C. *The Line of Tuka-Tīmūr*:—Appanage, Great Bulgaria, and subsequently K̲rim and Kaffa; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; finally, Khāns of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim.\*

Tūka-Tīmūr was the youngest son of Jūjī, and was attached to the left (or Orda's) wing of the Golden Horde, but probably had his own camping-grounds on the Upper Volga, including part at least of Great Bulgaria. Almost nothing is known of this branch in its original seats. Mangū-Tīmūr (of Bātū's line) gave Urang-Tīmūr, son of Tūka-Tīmūr, K̲rim and Kaffa, and the family being thus established north and south of Bātū's Khānate soon began to interfere in its dynastic succession. We have seen how three Khāns of the first period of rival families belonged probably to Tūka-Tīmūr's line, and one of the second period. But the chief importance of this branch is after the downfall of the Golden Khānate which followed upon Tīmūr's invasions.

\* Howorth, ii. 198-216, 274, 363-626, 1074-5

One of the line, Ulugh Moḥammad, after attempting to seize the Great Khānate on Burāk's death, betook himself in 1438 to his old possession of Great Bulgaria, and there revived his forefathers' Khānate, under the title of *Khānate of Kazan*, which, no longer overshadowed by the Great Khānate on its south, became an independent thorn in the side of the growing Muscovite giant. With the death, however, of Moḥammad Amīn, in 1519, the Moḥammadan posterity of the founder of Kazan came to an end, and Khāns of the true faith had to be transplanted from the Kazimof, Krim, Astrakhān and other stocks, under the auspices of Russia, who finally suppressed the Khānate and appointed a Russian governor of Kazan in 1552.

When Ulugh Moḥammad was murdered by his son Maḥmūdak, in 1446, two of his other sons fled to Russia, and after some service in the Muscovite army one of these, Kāsim, was granted the town and district of Gorodetz on the Oka, in the division of Riazan. He gave the town his own name, and the line of Khāns ruling here, and known as the *Khāns of Kazimof*, were used by Russia to play off against their more powerful neighbour at Kazan, and were allowed to supply a couple of Khāns to the greater Khānate on the ex-

tion of Ulugh Moḥammad's direct Muslim line. This Khānate, which never had a really independent existence, was absorbed by Russia in 1678.

The most important of the three Khānates sprung from the house of Tūka-Timūr was that of the Krim. Ulugh Moḥammad had a brother, Tāsh-Timūr, who was once a general under Töktāmish, and was the actual founder of the powerful dynasty of the *Khāns of the Krim* or Crimea, though his son, Hājji Girāy, is generally regarded as the first Khān. The Krim dynasty was always an element in the Eastern Question, and as an outpost of Turkey or an ally of Russia was an object of consideration on both sides. Eventually the inconvenience of these violent neighbours was agreed between Russia and Turkey, and the Khānate of the Krim was extinguished by treaty in 1783. A lineal descendant of these powerful Khāns, one Sultān Krim Girāy Kattī Girāy, settled in Edinburgh and married a Scottish lady.\*

\* *Athenaeum*, No. 2762

## KHĀNS OF THE K̄RIM (CRIMEA)

A.H.		A.D.
c. 823	Hājji Girāy . . . . .	c. 1420
871	Nūr-Dawlat . . . . .	1466
873	Mangli Girāy I . . . . .	1469
878	Nūr-Dawlat ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1474
882	Jānī-Beg Girāy I . . . . .	1477
883	Mangli Girāy ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1478
921	Moḥammad Girāy I . . . . .	1515
929	Ghāzī Girāy I . . . . .	1523
929	Sa'adat Girāy I . . . . .	1523
938	Islām Girāy I . . . . .	1532
938	Şāhib Girāy I . . . . .	1532
958	Dawlat Girāy I . . . . .	1551
985	Moḥammad Girāy II . . . . .	1577
992	Islām Girāy II . . . . .	1584
996	Ghāzī Girāy II . . . . .	1588
1002	Faṭḥ Girāy I . . . . .	1594
1002	Ghāzī Girāy II ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1594
1017	Salāmat Girāy I . . . . .	1608
1019	Jānī-Beg Girāy II . . . . .	1610
1031	Moḥammad Girāy III . . . . .	1627
1036	Jānī-Beg II ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1635
1045	Ināyat Girāy . . . . .	1638
1048	Bahādur Girāy . . . . .	1642
1052	Moḥammad Girāy IV . . . . .	1644
1054	Islām Girāy III . . . . .	
1064	Moḥammad IV ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1654
1075	ʿĀdil Girāy . . . . .	1665
1081	Selīm Girāy I . . . . .	1670
1088	Murād Girāy . . . . .	1677
1094	Hājji Girāy II . . . . .	1683



1095	Selīm I ( <i>restored</i> )	1684
1102	Sa'adat Girāy II	1691
1102	Şafā Girāy	1691
1103	Selīm I ( <i>again restored</i> )	1692
1109	Dawlat Girāy II	1698
1114	Selīm I ( <i>again restored</i> )	1702
1117	Ghāzī Girāy III	1705
1119	Kaplan Girāy I	1707
1119	Dawlat Girāy ( <i>restored</i> )	1707
1125	Kaplan I ( <i>restored</i> )	1713
1127	Karā Dawlat Girāy	1715
1127	Sa'adat Girāy III	1715
1136	Mangli Girāy II	1724
1142	Kaplan I ( <i>again restored</i> )	1730
1149	Fatḥ Girāy II	1736
1150	Mangli II ( <i>restored</i> )	1737
1152	Salāmat Girāy II	1739
1153	Selīm Girāy II	1743
1161	Arslān Girāy	1748
1168	Hākim Girāy	1755
1171	Krīm Girāy	1758
1177	Selīm Girāy III	1764
1180	Arslān Girāy ( <i>restored</i> )	1767
1181	Makhşūd Girāy I	1767
1182	Krīm Girāy ( <i>restored</i> )	1768
1184	Dawlat Girāy III	1770
1184	Kaplan Girāy II	1771
1184	Selīm III ( <i>restored</i> )	1771
1185	Makhşūd Girāy II	1771
1185	Şāḥib Girāy II	1772
1189	Dawlat III ( <i>restored</i> )	1775
1191	Shāhin Girāy	1777
—1197	[Crimea ceded to Russia]	—1783



- D. *The Line of Shaybān* :—Appanage, the Uzbek country (between the Ural and Chu rivers); occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; Khāns or Czars of Tiumen, *circ.* 1226—1659; Khāns of Bukhārā, 1500—1868, and of Khiva, 1515—1872.\*

When Bātū invaded Hungary in 1240, his brother Shaybān accompanied him, and acquitted himself so well that Bātū not only made him King of Hungary, a title of a somewhat nominal value, but gave him an appanage of certain tribes north of Orda's Khānate. Shaybān was to camp in summer from the Ural mountains to the rivers Ilek and Irghiz, and in winter about the lands watered by the Sir, Chu, and Sarisu. His descendant in the sixth generation, Mangū-Tīmūr, was a contemporary of the great Khān Uzbek of the Golden Horde, and from him the tribes of Shaybān's appanage took the name of Uzbeks, which has since become famous. On the extinction of Bātū's line, the family of Shaybān supplied several Khāns to the Golden Horde; and in the second period of rival families, after the overthrow of

\* Howorth, ii. 686-1010

Töktämish, the house of Shaybān is represented, in all probability, by Darwīsh Khān and Sayyid Aḥmad.

The home-line of Shaybān remained in the original camping-grounds and assumed the title of *Czars of the Tiumen*, under which they were obeyed over a great part of Siberia. They survived till 1659, when their country was occupied by the Kalmuks: but for some time before this their authority had been purely nominal.

Much more important were the branches descended from Pūlād, son of Mangū-Tīmūr, and once ruler of the Golden Horde. Pūlād's two sons, Ibrāhīm and 'Arab-Shāh, were respectively ancestors of the *Khāns of Bukhārā* and *Khwārizm* or *Khiva*. The former Khānate was founded by Moḥammad Shaybānī, grandson of Abū-l-Khayr, who was grandson of Ibrāhīm, in 1500, and survives to the present day, although General Kaufmann made it a Russian dependency in 1868. 'Arab-Shāh, the founder of the Khānate of Khiva, is also known as, if not a Khān of the Golden Horde, at least a striker of coins in Kipchak just before the invasion of Töktämish. His descendant in the fifth generation, Ilbars Khān, took forcible possession of Transoxiana and adjacent provinces after Shaybānī's death, probably about 1515, and his

posterity are still called Khāns of Khiva, but they have been tributary to Russia since 1872. The history of these Khānates, which sprang up on the ruins of the empire of Tīmūr, belong to a later section (XIII).

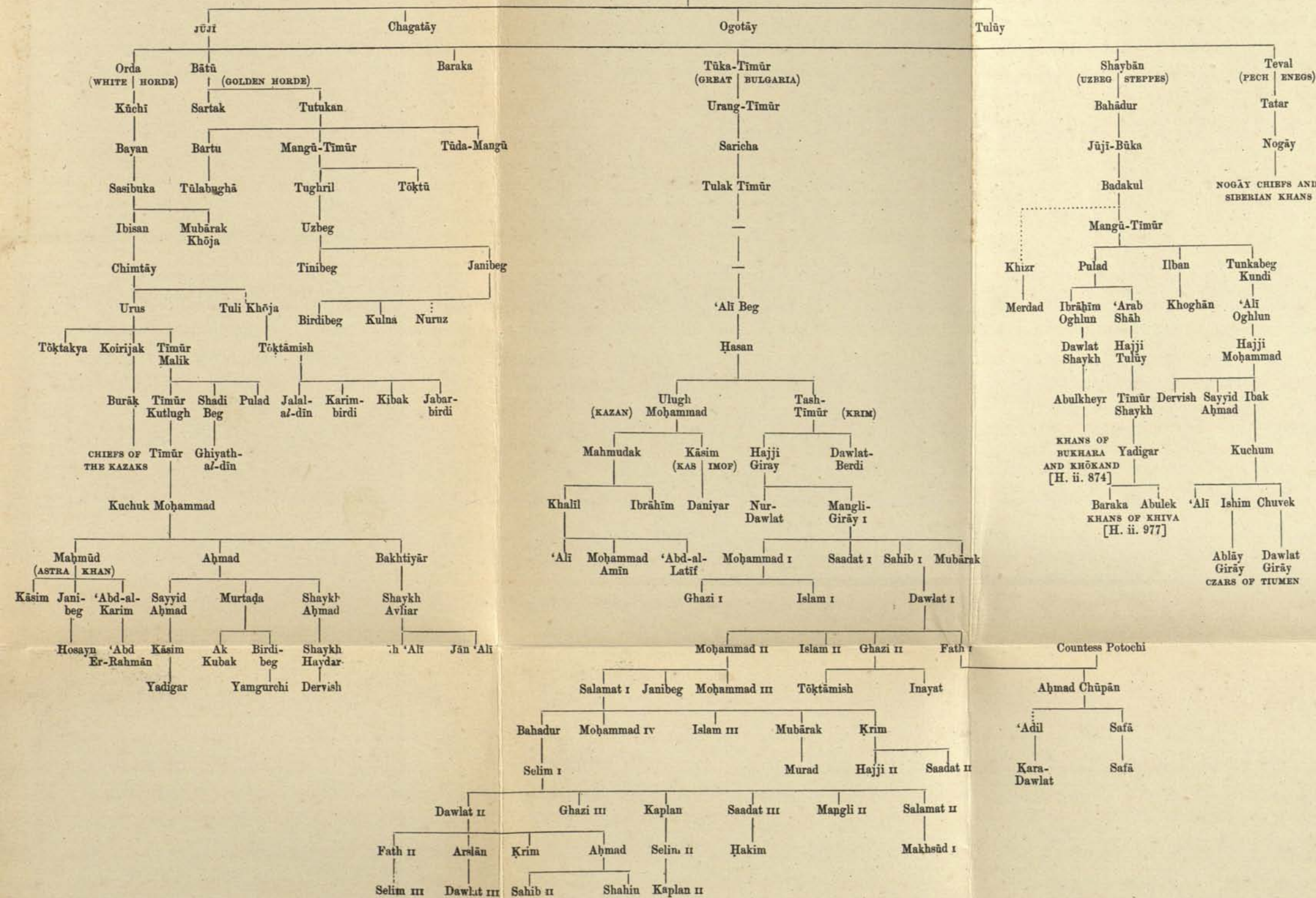
It should be added that another son of Jūjī, Teval, was the chief of the Pechenegs, camping about the river Bug in Southern Russia, and was the grandfather of Nogāy, who took a large part in the affairs of the Golden Horde, but afterwards fell out with Tōktū and was driven, along with his tribes, who adopted the name of Nogāys, beyond the Volga, and found settlements between the Ural and the Yemba. The history of this horde is very fragmentary, and their state was peculiarly migratory.\*

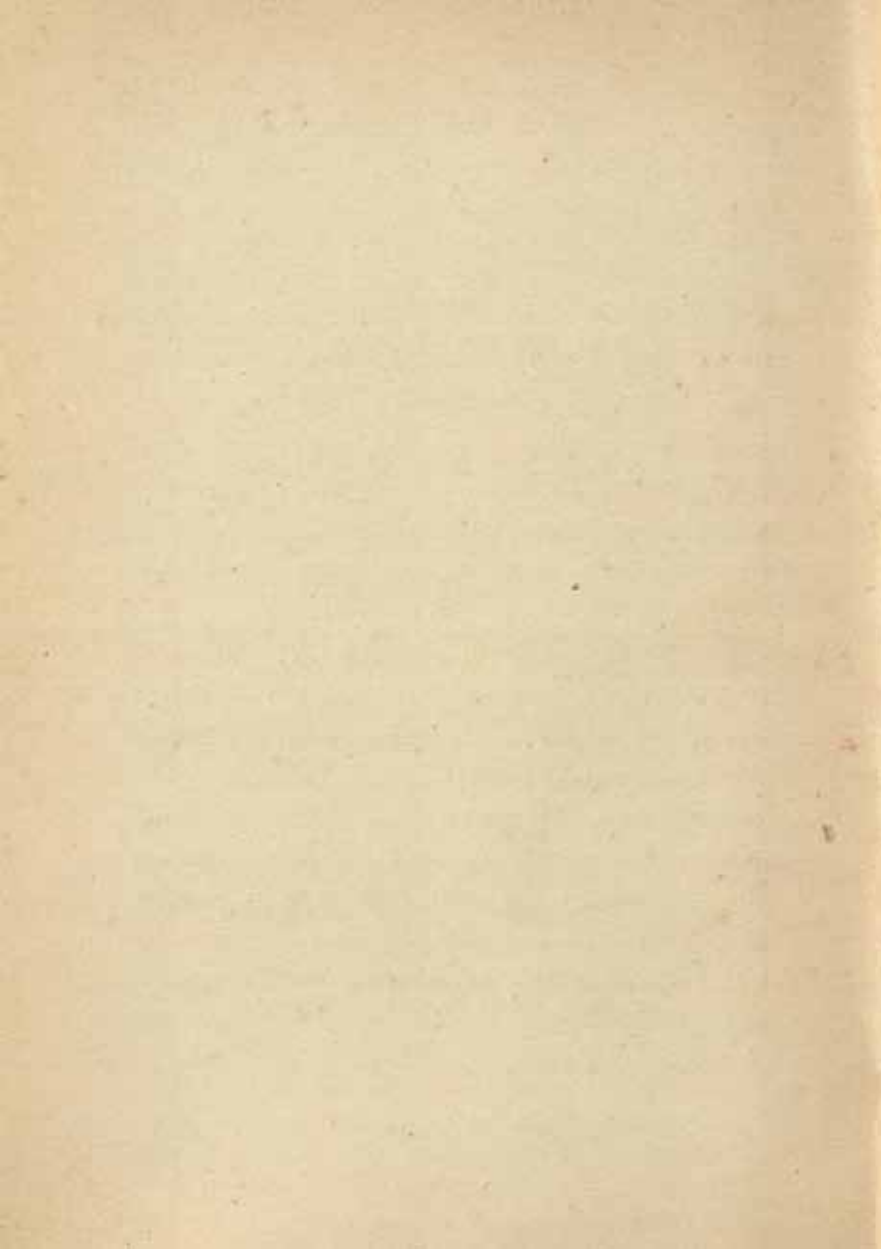
\* Howorth, ii. 1011-1068



(To face p. 240)

Ogotāy







A.H.

A.D.

624—760

85. CHAGATĀY KHĀNS

1227—1358

(TRANSOXIANA)

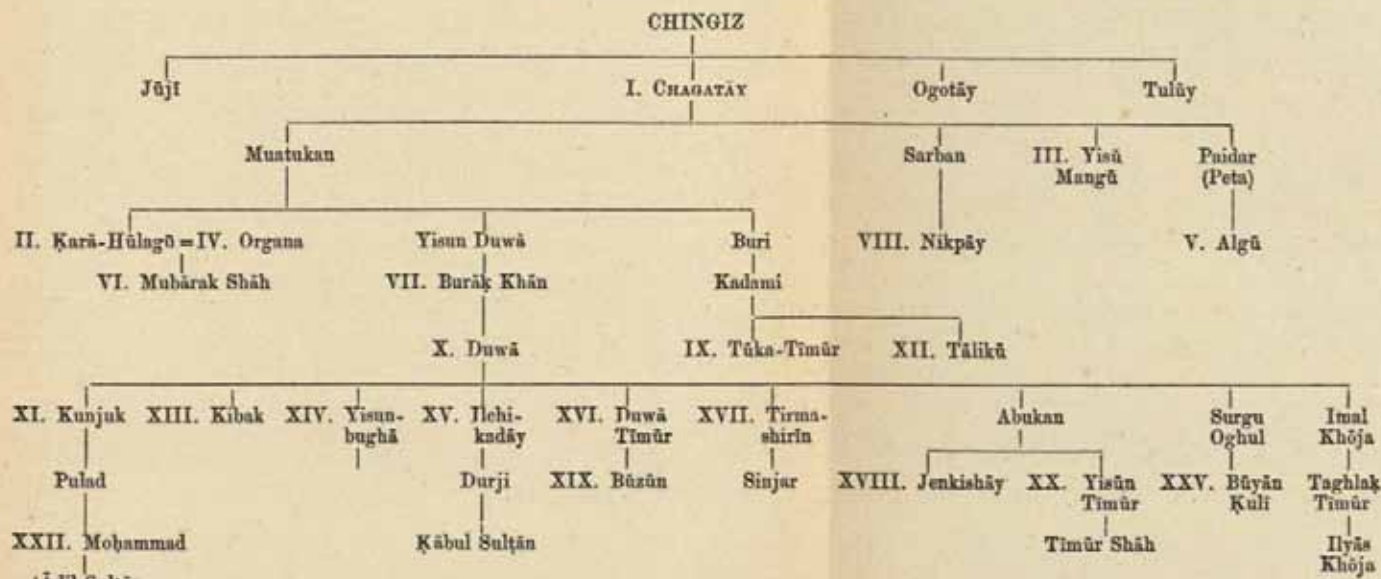
The Khānātes founded by three sons of Chingiz—Ogotāy, Tulūy, and Jūjī—have in turn been noticed. There remains Chagatāy, who was allotted the appanage of Mā-warā-l-nahr, or Transoxiana (Bukharia), with part of Kāshghar, Badakhshān, Balkh, and Ghazna, and who founded the Khānate of those regions. The history of his descendants is very scantily recorded, and, beyond occasional raids over the Persian border and internal disputes, nothing of note has been set down. Two members of Ogotāy's family ('Alī and Dānishmandja) intrude themselves into the series, proving the presence of Ogotāy chiefs of rank and importance in the Chagatāy dominions (pp. 210, 265). The genealogy and chronology of this branch are alike doubtful; and the following list is merely tentative.

A.H.		A.D.
624	Chagatây . . . . .	1227
639	Ḳarā-Hūlāgū . . . . .	1242
645	Yisū Mangū . . . . .	1247
650	Ḳarā-Hūlāgū ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1252
650	Organa Khātūn . . . . .	1252
659	Algū . . . . .	1261
664	Mubārak Shāh . . . . .	1266
664	Burūḳ Khān . . . . .	1266
668	Nikpāy . . . . .	1270
670	Tāka-Tīmūr . . . . .	1272
c. 672	Duwā Khān . . . . .	c. 1274
706	Kunjuk Khān . . . . .	1306
708	Tālikū . . . . .	1308
709	Kibak Khān . . . . .	1309
709	Yisunbughā . . . . .	1309
c. 718	Kibak Khān ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1318
721	Ilchikadāy . . . . .	1321
721	Duwā Tīmūr . . . . .	1321
722	Tirmaahirtū . . . . .	1322
730-4?	Sinjar? . . . . .	1330-4?
734	Jingishay . . . . .	1334
c. 735	Būrūn . . . . .	c. 1335
c. 739	Yisun Tīmūr . . . . .	c. 1339
c. 741	'Alī (of Ogotāy stock) . . . . .	c. 1340
c. 743	Moḥammad . . . . .	c. 1342
744	Kazan . . . . .	1343
747	Dānishmandja (of Ogotāy stock) . . . . .	1346
749	Būyān Kulī . . . . .	1348
—760		—1359

[*Anarchy and rival chiefs, until*  
771 *Supremacy of Tīmūr 1370.*]

# THE HOUSE OF CHAGATĀY\*

(To face p. 242.)



\* This table has been kindly arranged for me by Sir Henry Howorth



## XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

86. JALAYRS (-'IRĀK)  
87. MUẒAFFARIDS (FĀRS)  
88. SARBADĀRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)  
89. KARTS (HERĀT)  
TĪMŪRIDS (*See* XIII)  
90. ẖARĀ-ẖUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)  
91. Aẖ-ẖUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)  
92. ŞAFAVIDS  
93. AFGHĀNS  
94. AFSHĀRIDS  
95. ZANDS  
96. ẖĀJĀRS
- SHĀHS  
OF  
PERSIA





## XII. PERSIA

### SÆC. XIV—XIX

On the decay of the power of the Persian Mongols a number of prominent chiefs and provincial governors asserted their independence. Of these the Jalayrs were the most powerful, and held the provinces of -'Irāk and Adharbījān, in which they were succeeded by the Turkomāns of the Black and White Sheep. The more eastern provinces were ruled by the Muzaffarids, but not without a severe struggle with Abū-Ishāq and other members of the family of Maḥmūd Shāh Injū, whose seat was Ispahān. In the north-east, Khurāsān was for a time divided between the Sarbadārids and the Kart Maliks of Herāt. Tīmūr swept across Persia in 1384-93, and his descendants held part of the country for a century. At the beginning of the 16th century, however, Shāh Ismā'il the Ṣafavid established his authority over all the provinces governed by the Tīmūrids, Turkomāns, and minor dynasties, and presently added Khurāsān, since which time the modern kingdom of the Shāhs of Persia has remained practically unchanged in its boundaries, save for some losses on the west to Turkey.

A.H.  
736—814

86. JALAYRS  
(-‘IRĀḲ, ETC.)

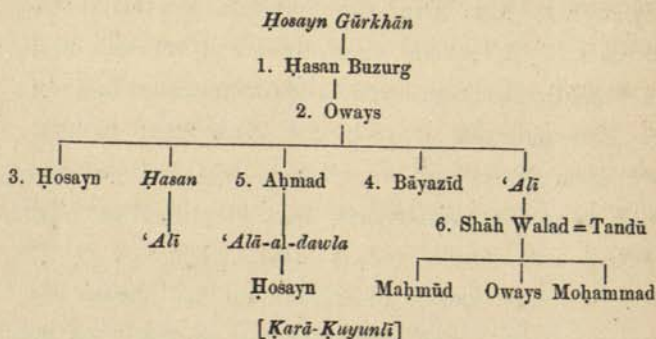
A.D.  
1336—1411

The chiefs of the tribe of Jalayrs, also called Ilkānians, became the leading family in Persia after the death of the Mongol Abū-Sa‘īd. Their head, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg (‘the Great’), as has been seen (pp. 219, 220), set up three puppets on the Mongol throne; after which he assumed sovereign functions himself, and taking possession of -‘Irāḳ made Baghdād his capital. His son Oways, who succeeded him in 757 (1356), took Adharbījān and Tabrīz from the Golden Horde (759), and added -Mōṣil and Diyār-Bakr to his dominions (766). Ḥusayn, his successor, was engaged in wars with his neighbours the Muzaffarids of eastern Persia, and with the Turkomāns of the Black Sheep, who had made themselves dominant in Armenia and the country south of Lake Van; until the latter agreed to become his allies (779). On his death in 1382 (784), the kingdom was divided between his two sons; Adharbījān and -‘Irāḳ falling to Sulṭān Aḥmad, and part of Kurdistān

(for a year) to Bāyazīd. On the invasion of Tīmūr, who overran northern Persia and Armenia in 1384-7, and reduced Baghdād, Mesopotamia, Diyār-Bakr, and Vān in 1393 (796), Sultān Aḥmad fled to Egypt, where he took refuge with the Mamlūk Sultān Barqūḳ, who assisted him to recover Baghdād after Tīmūr's return to Samarḳand. From this time until Tīmūr's death in 1405 (807) Sultān Aḥmad's life was spent in losing and recapturing his dominions, and when in 808 he was once more actual ruler of Baghdād, his breach with Ḳarā-Yūsuf the Turkomān and his ensuing invasion of Adharbījān ended in his defeat and death, 1410 (813). His nephew Shāh Walad continued to govern Baghdād until the arrival of the Black Sheep in 1411; and Shāh Walad's widow, Tandū (who had previously been married to the Mamlūk Barqūḳ) reigned at Wāsiṭ, -Baṣra, and Shūstar (doing homage, however, to the Tīmūrid Shāh Rukh) till 819, when her stepson succeeded to the government, and was followed by his brothers Oways (822-829) and Moḥammad, and by their cousin Ḥusayn, who was killed by the Black Sheep Turkomāns.\*

\* See Sir H. H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols*, iii, 654-679.

A.H.		A.D.
736	Shaykh Hasan Buzurg . . . . .	1336
757	Shaykh Oways . . . . .	1356
777	Hosayn . . . . .	1374
784-5	Bāyazīd (in Kurdistān) . . . . .	
784	Sultān Aḥmad . . . . .	1382
	<i>(Repeatedly expelled by Timūr 796-807)</i>	
813	Shāh Walad . . . . .	1410
—814		—1411



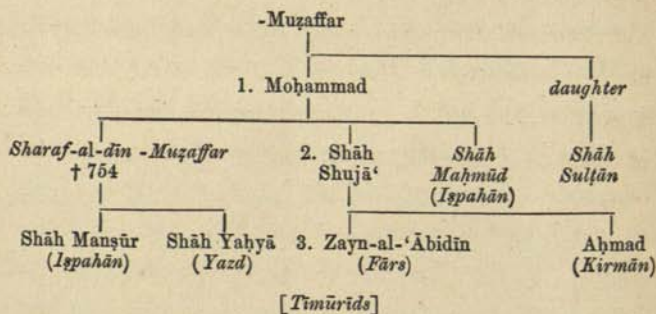


A.H.		A.D.
713—795	87. MUẒAFFARIDS	1313—1393
(FĀRS, KIRMĀN, AND KURDISTĀN)		

The Amīr -Muẓaffar, founder of this dynasty, a grandson of Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ḥājji of Khurāsān, after holding various posts at the court of the Mongols of Persia, was appointed governor of Maybudh near Ispahān. His son Mubārīz-al-dīn Moḥammad succeeded him in his government in 1313 (713), and received the much more important command of Yazd in Fārs in 1319 (719) from the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Kirmān was added in 1340 (741), and after a prolonged struggle with Abū-Ishāk Injū, Moḥammad captured Shīrāz and all Fārs in 1353 (754), and added Ispahān in 1356 (758), when Abū-Ishāk was executed. After carrying his arms successfully as far north as Tabrīz, Moḥammad was deposed and blinded in 1357 (759), and, although restored for a brief space, died in a second exile in 1364 (765). His successors retained the government of Fārs, Kirmān, and Kurdistān until the irruption of Timūr in 1387.\* The poet Ḥāfiẓ lived at the court of Shāh Shujā'.

\* Howorth, iii, 693-716.

A.H.		A.D.
713	Mubārīz-al-dīn Moḥammad b. -Muẓaffar .	1313
759	Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā' . . . . .	1357
786-9	Mujāhid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidīn . . .	1384-
	(Expelled by <i>Timūr</i> )	—1387
789	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Shāh Yahyā (at <i>Yazd</i>)</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Sultān Aḥmad (at <i>Kirmān</i>)</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Shāh Maṣṣūr (at <i>Ispahān</i>)</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 5px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">contemporary .</div> </div>	1387
—795		—1393



A.H.  
737—783

## 88. SARBADĀRIDS

A.D.  
1337—1381

(KHURĀSĀN)

'Abd-al-Razzāk, a native of the village of Bashtin in Khurāsān, and at one time in the service of the Ilkhān Abū-Sa'īd, in 1337 (737) headed a rebellion of his countrymen against the oppression of the local governor. The rebels took the name of *Sar-ba-dār* or "Head to the gibbet" in token of the neck-or-nothing-ness of their cause. Nevertheless they obtained possession of Sabzawār and the neighbouring district, and held it for nearly half a century, during which period twelve successive chiefs assumed the command, nine of whom suffered violent deaths.

A.H.		A.D.
737	'Abd-al-Razzāk b. Faḍl-Allāh . . . . .	1337
738	Wajih-al-dīn Mas'ūd b. Faḍl-Allāh . . . . .	1338
744	Ay-Timūr Moḥammad . . . . .	1344
746	Iṣfandiyār . . . . .	1346
747	Faḍl-Allāh . . . . .	1346
748	Shams-al-dīn 'Alī . . . . .	1347
753	Yahyā . . . . .	1352
756	Zahīr-al-dīn . . . . .	1355
760	Haydar -Kaṣṣāb . . . . .	1359
760	Luṭf-Allāh . . . . .	1359
761	-Ḥasan -Dāmighānī . . . . .	1360
766	'Alī -Mu'ayyad . . . . .	1364
—783	[Abolished by Timūr]	—1381

A.H.  
643—791

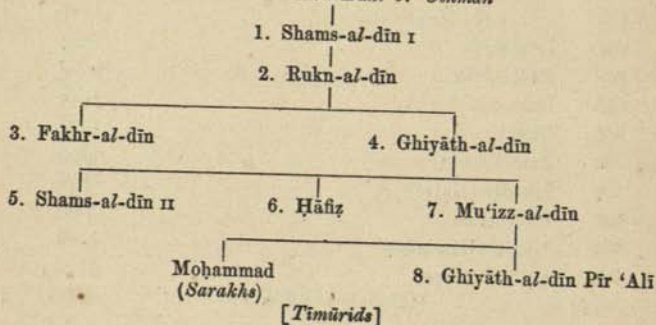
89. KARTS  
(HERĀT)

A.D.  
1245—1389

The Maliks of Herāt of the Kart race of Ghōr had held their government from the early days of the Mongol rule in Persia. As the Mongols grew weak, the Karts became an important power in Khurāsān, until Herāt was conquered by Tīmūr in 1381 (783), and, after a period of vassalage, the dynasty was extinguished in 1389 (791).

A.H.		A.D.
643	Shams-al-dīn I . . . . .	1245
	677—82 Rukn-al-dīn, <i>contemp.</i> 1278—83 . . . . .	
684	Fakhr-al-dīn . . . . .	1285
708	Ghiyāth-al-dīn . . . . .	1308
729	Shams-al-dīn II . . . . .	1328
730	Hāfiz . . . . .	1329
732	Mu'izz-al-dīn . . . . .	1331
772	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Pir 'Alī . . . . .	1370
—791		—1389

*Rukn-al-dīn Abū-Bakr b. 'Othmān*



A.H.		A.D.
780—874	90. ḲARĀ-ḲUYUNLĪ	1378—1469

TURKOMANS OF THE BLACK SHEEP

(ADHARBĪJĀN, ETC.)

In the last quarter of the fourteenth century a clan of Turkomāns, known as the Black Sheep, from the device on their standard, dominated the country south of the lake of Van, and, having allied themselves with the Jalayr Sultān Ḥosayn, established a dynasty in Armenia and Adharbījān. Ḳarā-Yūsuf, the second chief of the line, was several times driven into exile by Tīmūr, but as often returned, and after the conqueror's death in 1405 (807) resumed his former dominions, and in 1411 added those of the Jalayrs. The Black Sheep were superseded in 1469 (874) by Uzun Ḥasan of the rival clan of the White Sheep.

A.H.		A.H.
780	Ḳarā-Moḥammad . . . . .	1378
c. 790	Ḳarā-Yūsuf . . . . .	c. 1388
802	<i>Invasion of Tīmūr</i> . . . . .	1400
808	Ḳarā Yūsuf ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1405
823	Iskandar . . . . .	1420
841	Jahān Shāh . . . . .	1437
872	Ḥasan 'Alī . . . . .	1467
—874		—1469

[*Āḡ-Ḳuyunlī*]



A.H.		A.D.
780—908	91. ĀK-ḲUYUNLĪ	1378—1502

## TURKOMANS OF THE WHITE SHEEP.

(ADHĀRBĪJĀN, ETC.)

The White Sheep or Ak-Ḳuyunlī succeeded their rivals the Black Sheep in Adharbījān and Diyār-Bakr, but after some thirty years of sole authority they were defeated by Shāh Ismāʿīl the Ṣafavid at the great battle of Shurūr in 1502 (907), and the dynasty soon afterwards expired.

A.H.		A.D.
780	Ḳarā-Yūluḳ 'Othmān . . . . .	1378
809	Ḥamza . . . . .	1406
848	Jahāngīr . . . . .	1444
871	Uzun Ḥasan . . . . .	1466
883	Khalīl . . . . .	1478
884	Ya'ḳūb . . . . .	1479
896	Baysunḳur* . . . . .	1490
897	Rustam . . . . .	1491
902	Aḥmad . . . . .	1496
903	Murād . . . . .	1497
905	Alwand . . . . .	1499
906	Moḥammad . . . . .	1500
907	Murād ( <i>restored</i> ) . . . . .	1501
—908		—1502

[Ṣafavids]

\* 'Alī and Masīḥ were rival claimants in 896.

A.H.

907—1311

92—6. SHĀHS OF PERSIA

A.D.

1052—1893

The series of the Shāhs of Persia is composed of five distinct dynasties of different races: the Ṣafavids, Afghāns, Afshārids, Zands, and Kājārs. Of these the first claimed Arab lineage, for the Ṣafavids traced their descent from the seventh Imām Mūsā -Kāzīm (†183), of the family of Hosayn the grandson of the prophet Moḥammad (p. 72). Many shaykhs of the family acquired a reputation for sanctity, and among these the most celebrated saint was Shaykh Ṣaḡīr-al-dīn of Ardabīl, from whom his descendants took their name of Ṣafawī or *Ṣafavid*. It was not till four generations after Shaykh Ṣaḡīr that one of his descendants, Haydar, added the rôle of warrior to the profession of saint. He engaged in a contest with Uzun Hasan of the White Sheep Turkomāns, and his third son Ismā'il, preserving a continuity of policy, seized Shīrwān, utterly defeated the Turkomāns at the battle of Saurūr in the spring of 1502 (907), and making Tabriz his capital proceeded to conquer all Persia. The Timūrid governors and other petty dynasts were rapidly subdued, and in a few years Shāh Ismā'il's arms had advanced through Khurāsān as far as Herūt, besides annexing the southern provinces,

till his dominions stretched from the Oxus to the Persian Gulf, from Afghānistān to the Euphrates. His territories now marched with those of the 'Othmānlis, and the religious antagonism between the Shi'ite Ṣafavids and the Sunnite 'Othmānlis, embittered by the wide-spread Shi'ite propaganda in Asia Minor, brought about a war. Selīm the Grim, after massacring or imprisoning 40,000 Shi'ites in his Asiatic dominions, led a campaign against Shāh Ismā'il. At the head of 80,000 horsemen and 40,000 foot, Selīm marched upon Persia and forced the Shāh to give battle at Chāldirān (1514), when the fine generalship of Sinān Pasha and the valour of the Janizaries won the day. Selīm entered Tabriz in triumph, and after annexing Diyār-Bakr and some surrounding districts abandoned the idea of further conquests in the East in favour of an invasion of Egypt. From this time onwards there have been frequent contests over the Turko-Persian frontier, and provinces in Georgia and Armenia have been taken and re-taken, but the general boundary has not greatly varied, except when Murād IV conquered Baghdād and annexed Mesopotamia to the Turkish Empire in 1638. In the like manner the northern frontier was long contested by the Uzbegs; and Afghānistān has been

alternately part of India and part of Persia, until the establishment of an independent dynasty by Aḥmad Durrānī in 1747. Bābar, the founder of the Mogul empire in India, was an ally of Shāh Ismā'il, and his son Humāyūn was aided in his recovery of Hindūstān by Shāh Tahmāsp. The greatest of the Šafavid kings was Shāh 'Abbās (1587-1629), who, seconded by Sir Anthony Shirley, the organizer of the Persian army, recovered several of the western provinces from the 'Othmānlīs, and whose reign was celebrated for the cultivation of the arts and literature, the increase of public works, and the observance of an enlightened foreign policy. He belonged to the great epoch which produced such rulers as Sulaymān the Great, Akbar, and Elizabeth.

The Šafavid dynasty practically ended when the *Afghāns* under Maḥmūd rose in revolt, seized Herāt and Mashhad, defeated Shāh Ḥosayn, and after a seven months' siege took the capital Iṣpahān in 1722 (1135). Members of the Šafavid family, however, still retained a vestige of authority, chiefly in Mazandarān, and after ten years of anarchy, revolts, and Russian and Turkish invasions, Nādir Kuli the *Afshārid* Turk, made use of the pretext of restoring the enfeebled Šafavids, to seize the



supreme power, to which he soon added the avowed as well as the real sovereignty in 1736 (1148). Nādir Shāh not only maintained the Persian kingdom in its fullest extent, but subdued Afghānistān, seized Kābul and Kāndahār (1737), pushed on to Lahore, defeated the Mogul army after an obstinate battle near Karnāl, and sacked Dehlī in March 1738 (1151). Peace was made, and for a time the Persian empire extended from the Indus to the Caucasus.

The Afshārid dynasty, numbering four Shāhs, ended in a period of anarchy, during which the Afghān Āzād held Adharbijān; 'Alī Mardān the Bakhtiyārī, Iṣpahān; Moḥammad Ḥosayn, the chief of the Kājārs, ruled Astarabād; and Karīm Khān the Zand fought with Shāh Rukh the Afshārid for the supreme throne. The Zand eventually got the upper hand, and from 1750 (1163) to 1779 (1193) governed all Persia except Khurāsān, where Shāh Rukh the Afshārid, though old and blind, still maintained some show of authority. On the death of Karīm Khān a contest was waged for a dozen years between his Zand successors and Ākā Moḥammad the Kājār, which ended in the triumph of the latter, whose nephew in the fourth generation now reigns over the relics of a great people from his throne at Tīhrān.



A.H.		A.D.
907—1148	92. ŠAFAVIDS	1502—1736
907	Ismā'il I . . . . .	1502
930	Ṭahmāsp I . . . . .	1524
984	Ismā'il II . . . . .	1576
985	Moḥammad Khudabanda . . . . .	1578
985	'Abbās I . . . . .	1587
1038	Šafi I . . . . .	1629
1052	'Abbās II . . . . .	1642
1077	Sulaymān I . . . . .	1667
1105	Ḥosayn I . . . . .	1694
1135	Ṭahmāsp II . . . . .	1722
1144	'Abbās III . . . . .	1731
—1148		—1736

## 93. AFGHĀNS

1135	Maḥmūd . . . . .	1722
1137	Ashraf . . . . .	1725
—1142		—1729

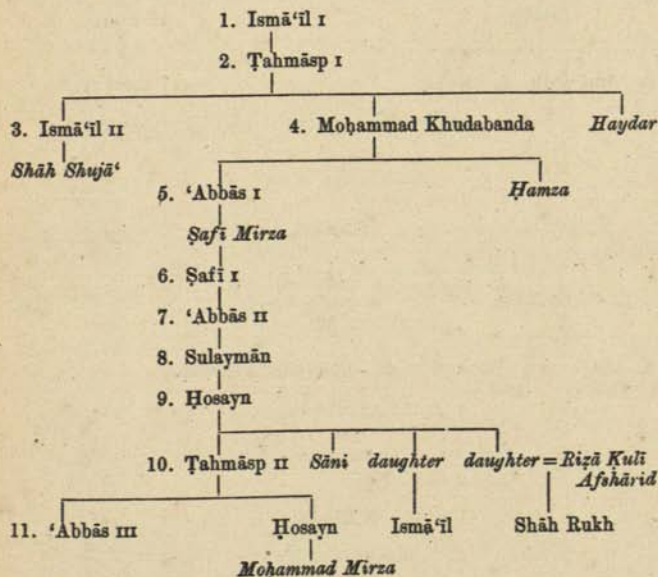
## 94. AFSHĀRIDS

1148	Nādir . . . . .	1736
1160	'Ādil . . . . .	1747
1161	Shāh Rukh . . . . .	1748
—1210		—1796

A.H.		A.D.
95. ZANDS		
1163	Ḳarīm Khān . . . . .	1750
1193	Abū-l-Faṭḥ . . . . .	1779
1193	‘Alī Murād . . . . .	1779
1193	Moḥammad ‘Alī . . . . .	1779
1193	Şādīḳ . . . . .	1779
1196	‘Alī Murād (again) . . . . .	1782
1199	Ja‘far . . . . .	1785
1203	Luṭf ‘Alī . . . . .	1789
—1209		—1794

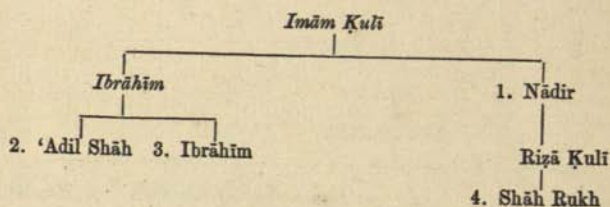
96. ḲAJARS		
1193	Aḳā Moḥammad . . . . .	1779
1211	Faṭḥ ‘Alī . . . . .	1797
1250	Moḥammad . . . . .	1834
1264	Nāṣir-al-dīn, <i>regnant</i> . . . . .	1848

## ŞAFAVIDS\*

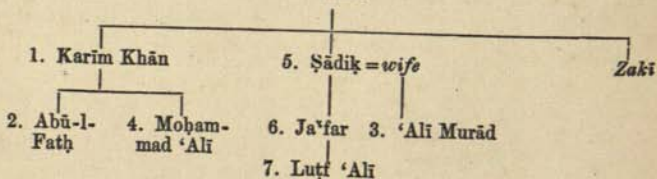


\* The pedigrees of the Shāhs of Persia are abridged from the *Catalogue of Persian Coins in the British Museum*, by R. S. Poole, LL.D.

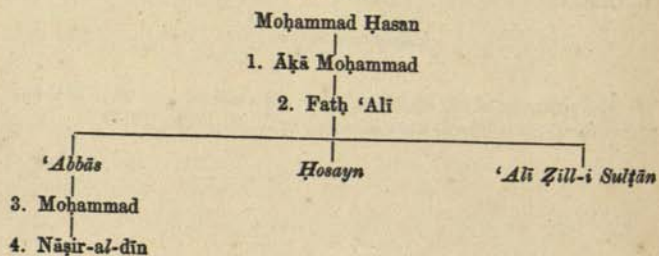
## AFSHĀRIDS



## ZANDS



## KĀJARS



### XIII. TRANSOXIANA

S/EC. XIV—XIX

- 97. TĪMŪRIDS
- 98. SHAYBĀNIDS
- 99. JĀNIDS OF ASTRAKHĀN
- 100. MANGITS
- 101. KHĀNS OF KHOḶAND
- 102. KHĀNS OF KHIVA





### XIII.—TRANSOXIANA

#### SÆC. XIV—XIX

A.H.  
771—906

97. TĪMŪRIDS

A.D.  
1369—1500

Tīmūr, or Tīmūr Lang (Tīmūr the lame), commonly corrupted into Tamerlane, was related to the family of Chingiz Kaān, and one of his ancestors had been Vizīr to Chagatāy the son of Chingiz and ruler of Transoxiana. Tīmūr, who was born in 1335 (736), was appointed to the government of Kash by Tughā-Tīmūr, (p. 220), and became Vizīr to the Chagatāy Khān Suyurghātmish, whose authority he completely usurped before 1369 (771), though he allowed the Khān and his successor Maḥmūd to retain the nominal sovereignty until 1397 (800). In 1380 (782) Tīmūr began a long series of campaigns in Persia; and in seven years overran Khurāsān, Jurjān, Mazandarān, Sijistān, Afghānistān, Fārs, Adharbijān, and Kurdistan. An invasion by Tōktāmish, the Khān of the Golden Horde, called his attention nearer home in 1388, but in 1391 (793) he inflicted a total defeat on the Khān, which, however, had to be repeated in 1395

(797). Meanwhile in 1393 he had taken Baghdād from the Jalayrs, and had reduced Mesopotamia. In 1397 he entered northern India, and in the following year (801) raided Kashmīr and Dehli. His next great movement was to the west. In 1401 he invaded Anatolia, and took Sīwās and Malatīa; and in 1402 (804) totally routed the 'Othmānī Turks at Angora and took Sultān Bāyazīd prisoner (p. 185). He reinstated the minor princes of Asia Minor, and, having subdued Syria and taken Aleppo and Damascus (803), he received the homage of their former possessor, the Mamlūk Sultān of Egypt. Whilst on the march for a still more ambitious campaign against China, Tīmūr died at Otrār, 1405 (807), aged 70.

The conquests of Tīmūr raised the kingdom of *Mawarā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus) or Transoxiana to an importance it had never before attained. Samarqand became the capital of an empire which stretched, in name at least, from Dehli to Damascus, and from the Sea of Aral to the Persian Gulf; and although much of Tīmūr's conquest was rather a raid than an annexation, yet Transoxiana remained for some time the centre of a kingdom which embraced most of Persia and Afghānistān besides the provinces beyond the Oxus. But Tīmūr's

empire was too unwieldy to be maintained in all its original vastness. When the petty dynasties of Persia, Karts and Sarbadārīds, Muẓaffarīds and Jalayrs, had been swept away, and the Turks had been driven out of Anatolia, and all Western Asia from the Hindū Kūsh to the Mediterranean trembled before one man, a reign of terror and not an organized empire had been established. As soon as the great conqueror was dead, Ottomans, Jalayrs and Turkomāns began to recover their lost provinces in the west. Although Tīmūr's descendants retained their hold of the north of Persia for a century, they were able to offer but a feeble resistance to the rising power of the Ṣafavīds; and when in the sixteenth century the line of Shaybān (of the house of Chingiz) succeeded to the capital of Tamerlane, the dominions of his descendants had shrunk to the limits which the Khānate of Bukhārā long afterwards preserved. The table (facing p. 268) of Tīmūr's descendants, who struggled with one another for the disjointed fragments of his empire, shows one cause of their weakness; there were too many rivals. Shāh Rukh, indeed, for a while succeeded in subduing the jealousies of his kinsmen and maintaining the power and dignity of the empire; but after his death in 1447 (850) his



dominions were split up into various petty principalities, which made way for the *Şafavids* in Persia and the *Şaybānids* in Transoxiana. Yet the line did not become extinct with the loss of Tīmūr's dominions. His descendant Bābar founded a new empire in Hindūstān which, known to us as that of the '*Great Moguls*,' lasted down to the present century (see XIV.).

A.H.		A.D.
771	Tīmūr . . . . .	1369
	[771 Suyūrghātmish, nominal Khān	
	790-800 Mahmūd " " ]	
807-12	Khalīl . . . . .	1404-9
807	Shāh Rukh . . . . .	1404
850	Ulugh Beg . . . . .	1447
853	'Abd-al-Laṭīf . . . . .	1449
854	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1450
855	Abū-Sa'īd . . . . .	1452
872	Aḥmad . . . . .	1467
899	Mahmūd . . . . .	1493
900	<i>Anarchy</i> . . . . .	1494
—906		—1500

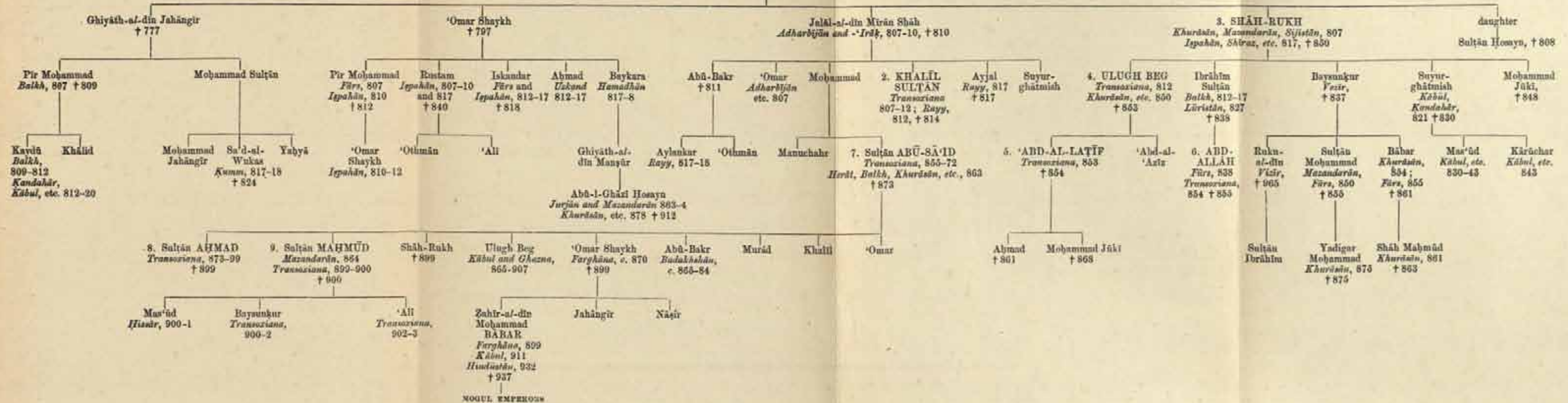
[*Şaybānids*]



# THE DESCENDANTS OF TĪMŪR AND THEIR GOVERNMENTS

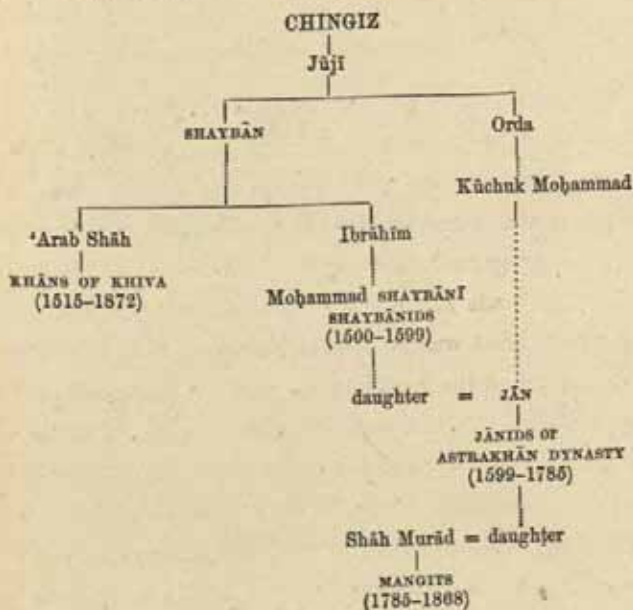
(To face p. 268)

## 1. TĪMŪR † 807





## CONNEXION OF THE TRANSOXINE KHĀNATES



A.H.		A.D.
906—1007	98. SHAYBĀNIDS	1500—1599

Whilst the three sons of Maḥmūd, the last Tīmūrid Sulṭān of Transoxiana, were fighting over the ruins of an empire, a new power was approaching, which made an end of all the princes of Mā-warā-l-nahr and re-established a strong government in the place of anarchy. This was the Uzbek horde led by Moḥammad Shaybānī, almost the last of the great warriors of the lineage of Chingiz. The early history of the family of Shaybān has been mentioned (pp. 238—40). Their home-line remained in Siberia as Czars of Tiumen; but a large proportion of the clan migrated to Transoxiana under Shaybānī, overthrew the rival princes of Tīmūr's line, and founded the Uzbek kingdom, which survived in the Khānates of Bukhārā and Khiva until their submission to Russia within the last quarter of a century. This Uzbek kingdom was ruled by several successive dynasties. First, the Shaybānids governed Transoxiana for the whole of the sixteenth century, leaving Khwārizm



(Khiva) to be ruled by its own line of Khāns (p. 278), who were also descended from Shaybān, and abandoning Khurāsān to the Ṣafavids. Next, the Jānids or Astrakhān dynasty, connected in the female line with the Shaybānids, governed the same gradually diminishing territory during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Thirdly, their connexions by marriage, the Mangits, usurped the Khānate of Bukhārā, which was now greatly restricted by the growth of the neighbouring Khānate of Khoḡand, by the rise of various independent principalities at Tashkand, Uratippa, and elsewhere, and by the aggrandizement of the Durrānids of Afghānistan. Finally Bukhārā, Khiva, and Khoḡand, all fell before the aggression of Russia in 1868-1872.

A. H.		A. D.
906	Moḥammad Shaybānī . . . . .	1500
916	Köchkünjī . . . . .	1510
937	Abū-Sa'īd . . . . .	1530
940	'Obayd-Allāh . . . . .	1533
946	'Abd-Allāh I . . . . .	1539
947	'Abd-al-Laṭīf . . . . .	1540
959	Nūrūz Aḥmad . . . . .	1551
963	Pīr Moḥammad I . . . . .	1555
968	Iskandar . . . . .	1560
991	'Abd-Allāh II . . . . .	1583
1006	'Abd-al-Mu'min . . . . .	1598
1007	Pīr Moḥammad II . . . . .	1599

[*Astrakhān*]



Samarḳand was the capital of the Shaybānids, but there was generally a powerful, and sometimes independent, government at Bukhārā. More than once the governor of Bukhārā was practically the ruler of Transoxiana, and this province became almost as much the Dauphiné of Samarḳand under the Shaybānids as Balkh was under the succeeding dynasty of Astrakhān.

## SUB-DYNASTY OF BUKHĀRĀ

A.H.		A.D.
947	'Abd-al-'Azīz . . . . .	1540
957	Yār Moḥammad . . . . .	1549
961	Burḥān Sultān . . . . .	1553
964	'Abd-Allāh ( <i>who united Sāmārḳand in 986, and became from 991 'Abd-Allāh II of the Chief Khānate, q. v.</i> )	1556

## SUB-DYNASTY OF SAMARḲAND

968	Khusrū Sultān . . . . .	1560
975	Sultān Sa'id . . . . .	1567
980	Juvanmard 'Alī . . . . .	1572
986	'Abd-Allāh of Bukhārā . . . . .	1578



A.H.

1007—1200

A.D.

99. JĀNIDS

1599—1785

## OR ASTRAKHĀN DYNASTY

When the Russians absorbed the Khānate of Astrakhān or Hājji Tarkhān (p. 229) in the middle of the 16th century, two of the dispossessed chiefs, Yār Moḥammad and his son Jān took refuge at Bukhārā with Iskandar the Shaybānid, who presently gave his daughter in marriage to Jān. The issue of this marriage, Bākī Moḥammad, succeeded (after a year's interval) his maternal uncle 'Abd-Allāh II, and he and his descendants, during most of the 17th century, ruled Samarkand, Bukhārā, Farghāna, Badakhshān, and Balkh, which last province was sometimes independent. Their power gradually decayed; the Durrānids eventually gained possession of all their Cisoxine territories (1752 ff.); a rival Khānate sprang up at Khoḡand (Farghāna) about 1700; and the Jānids were finally ousted in 1785 by the chiefs of the Mangit tribe, who had possessed the real power for some years before the actual dethronement of the last Jānid, Abū-l-Ghāzī.

A.H.		A.D.
1007	Bākī Moḥammad . . . . .	1599
1014	Vālī Moḥammad* . . . . .	1605
1017	Imām Kūlī († 1060) . . . . .	1608
1050	Nāḍir Moḥammad († 1061) . . . . .	1640
1057	‘Abd-al-‘Azīz . . . . .	1647
1091	Subḥān Kūlī † . . . . .	1680
1114	‘Obayd-Allāh ‡ . . . . .	1702
1117	Abū-l-Fayḍ § . . . . .	1705
1160	‘Abd-al-Mu‘min . . . . .	1747
1164	‘Obayd-Allāh †† . . . . .	1751
1167	<i>Moḥammad Raḥīm (Mangit)</i> . . . . .	1753
1171	Abū-l-Ghāzī . . . . .	1758
—1200		—1785

[*Mangits*]

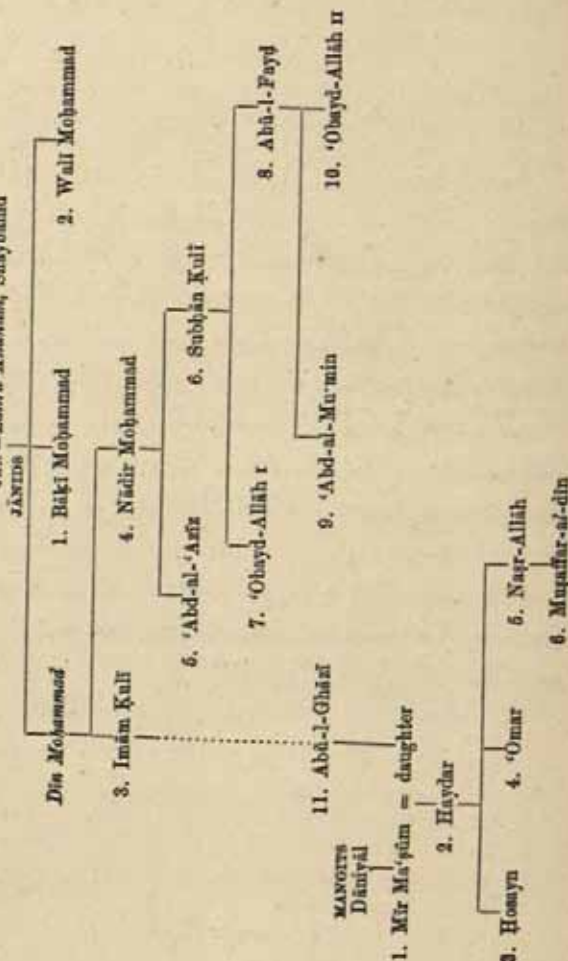
\* Governed Balkh from 1007.

† Previously ruled Balkh for 23 years.

‡ Makīm Khān held Balkh 1114-1119.

§ Ruled only beyond the Oxus.

## JÂNIDS AND MANGITS

JÂN = *Zahar Khânun*, Shaybânid



A. H.		A. D.
1200—1284	100. MANGITS	1785—1868

The Mangits, or "Flat-noses," a tribe akin to the Nogāys, left their Kipchak camping-grounds to follow the fortunes of Moḥammad Shaybānī at the beginning of the 16th century. Under the Astrakhān dynasty they gradually increased in influence, and in the second half of the eighteenth century their chiefs became the vizirs of the rulers of Bukhārā and eventually supplanted their masters. Their dominions had shrunk considerably from the wide extent of the Shaybānids' kingdom, and Ma'şūm Shāh's wars with the Durrānids for the recovery of the Cisoxine territory were rewarded with but temporary success. The present Khān has been tributary to Russia since the campaign of 1868.

A. H.		A. D.
1200	Mir Ma'şūm Shāh Murād . . . . .	1785
1215	Ḥaydar Torn . . . . .	1800
1242	Ḥosayn . . . . .	1826
1242	'Omar . . . . .	1826
1242	Naşr-Allāh . . . . .	1827
1277	Muḥaffar-al-dīn . . . . .	1860
—1284	<i>Tributary to Russia</i>	—1868

A.H.		A.D.
c. 921—1289	101. KHĀNS OF KHIVA	c. 1515—1872

Khawārizm or Khiva, which had once furnished an ambitious line of Shāhs of its own (p. 176), was an appanage of the house of Jūjī, and never properly belonged to the Khānate of Transoxiana; up to the time of Tīmūr it was held by the Golden Horde. After the confusion of the Tīmūrīd period, the Uzbegs of Moḥammad Shaybānī occupied Khiva as well as Transoxiana, and about 1515 an independent Uzbek Khānate was established there, the early history of which is exceedingly obscure. Wars were constantly waged with Bukhārā with varying success. Nādir Shāh of Persia conquered Khiva in 1740 and a Persian governor ruled there for a year. Finally General Kaufmann annexed it on the part of Russia in 1872.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 921	Ilbars I . . . . .	c. 1515
c. 931	Sultān Hājji . . . . .	c. 1525
	Hasan Kuli . . . . .	
	Şufyān . . . . .	
	Bujugha . . . . .	
	Avanak . . . . .	
	Kal . . . . .	
c. 946	Akatāy . . . . .	c. 1540
953	Dost . . . . .	1546

A.H.		A.D.
965	Hājji Moḥammad I . . . . .	1558
1011	'Arab Moḥammad I . . . . .	1602
1032	Isfandiyār . . . . .	1623
1053	Abū-l-Ghāzī I . . . . .	1643
1074	Anusha . . . . .	1663
c. 1085	Moḥammad Arank . . . . .	c. 1674
1099	Ishāk Akā Shāh Niyāz . . . . .	1687
1114	'Arab Moḥammad II . . . . .	1702
	Hājji Moḥammad II . . . . .	
1126	Yadighār . . . . .	1714
1126	Arank . . . . .	1714
1127	Shīr Ghāzī . . . . .	1715
114x	Ilbars II . . . . .	173x
1153	<i>Annexation by Nādir Shāh</i> . . . . .	1740
1154	<i>Tagir (for Nādir Shāh)</i> . . . . .	1741
1154	Abū-Moḥammad . . . . .	1741
115x	Abū-l-Ghāzī II . . . . .	174x
1158	Kaip . . . . .	1745
c. 1184	Abū-l-Ghāzī III . . . . .	c. 1770
1219	Iltazar . . . . .	1804
1221	Moḥammad Raḥīm . . . . .	1806
1241	Allāh Kūli . . . . .	1825
1258	Raḥīm Kūli . . . . .	1842
1261	Moḥammad Amīn . . . . .	1845
1271	'Abd-Allāh . . . . .	1855
1272	Qutlugh Moḥammad . . . . .	1855
1272?	Sayyid Moḥammad . . . . .	1856?
1282	Sayyid Moḥammad Raḥīm . . . . .	1865
—1289	[ <i>Annexation by Russia</i> ]	—1872

A.H. 102. KHĀNS OF A.D.  
c. 1112—1293 KHOKĀND c. 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoḳand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tāshkand was annexed by Khoḳand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 1112	Shāh Rukh Beg	c. 1700
	Raḥim	
	‘Abd-al-Ḳarīm	
	Erdeni	
1184	Sulaymān	1770
1184	Shāh Rukh II	1770
1184?	Narbuta	1770?
1216	‘Ālim	1800
1224	Moḥammad ‘Omar	1809
1237	Moḥammad ‘Alī	1822
c. 1256	Shīr ‘Alī	1840
1261	Murād	1841
c. 1261	Khudāyār	1845
1273	Malla	1857
1275	Shāh Murād	1859
c. 1277	Khudāyār (2nd reign)	1861
c. 1280	Sayyid Sultān	1864
1288	Khudāyār (3rd reign)	1871
1292	Nāṣir-al-dīn	1875
—1293	[Annexed by Russia]	—1876



XIV. INDIA  
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

- 103. GHAZNAWIDS
- 104. GHĒRIDS
- 105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ
- 106. KINGS OF BENGAL
- 107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR
- 108. KINGS OF MĀLWA
- 109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT
- 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH
- 111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN
- 112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR
- 113. NIẒAM SHĀHS OF AḤMADNAGAR
- 114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BĪDAR
- 115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS OF BĪJĀPŪR
- 116. KUTĒB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA
- 117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN
- 148. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN



A.H.  
c. 1112—1293102. KHĀNS OF  
KHOĀKANDA.D.  
c. 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoḳand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tāshkand was annexed by Khoḳand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 1112	Shāh Rukh Beg . . . . .	c. 1700
	Rahīm . . . . .	
	'Abd-al-Ḳarīm . . . . .	
	Erdeni . . . . .	
1184	Sulaymān . . . . .	1770
1184	Shāh Rukh II . . . . .	1770
1184?	Narbuta . . . . .	1770?
1215	'Ālim . . . . .	1800
1224	Moḥammad 'Omar . . . . .	1809
1237	Moḥammad 'Alī . . . . .	1822
c. 1256	Shīr 'Alī . . . . .	1840
1261	Murād . . . . .	1841
c. 1261	Khudāyār . . . . .	1845
1273	Malla . . . . .	1857
1275	Shāh Murād . . . . .	1859
c. 1277	Khudāyār (2nd reign) . . . . .	1861
c. 1280	Sayyid Sultān . . . . .	1864
1288	Khudāyār (3rd reign) . . . . .	1871
1292	Nāṣir-al-dīn . . . . .	1875
—1293	[Annexed by Russia]	—1876

XIV. INDIA  
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

S/EC. X—XIX

- 103. GHAZNAWIDS
- 104. GHĪRIDS
- 105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ
- 106. KINGS OF BENGAL
- 107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR
- 108. KINGS OF MĀLWA
- 109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT
- 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH
- 111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN
- 112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR
- 113. NIZAM SHĀHS OF AHMADNAGAR
- 114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BĪDAR
- 115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS OF BĪJĀPŪR
- 116. KUTB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA
- 117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN
- 118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN



#### XIV. INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

##### SÆC. X—XIX

No considerable part of India ever belonged to the Caliphate. Soon after their conquest of Herāt, indeed, the Arabs pushed on to Kābul in 664 (44) and thence descended to Multān; but this reconnaissance did not lead to continuous occupation. An advance from the south produced more permanent results. Piratical expeditions by sea to the mouths of the Indus were frequent in the early days of Islām, and in 711 (92) Moḥammad Kāsim, a nephew of -Ḥajjāj, the celebrated governor of -Baṣra, conquered Sind from the coast as far as Multān, and although no attempt was made to enlarge this dominion, the province continued to be ruled by Arab governors for nearly two centuries.

The conquest of Hindūstān by the Moḥammadans, however, sprang not from Sind but from Afghānistān. The early annexation by the Arabs of the mountainous country

south of the Hindū Kūsh had been nominal and temporary, and Ya'qūb b. Layth the Ṣaffārid of Sijistān (p. 129) was the first to establish a settled Moḥammadan government at Kābul. Here his dynasty was succeeded by governors appointed by the Sāmānids (p. 131), and it was Alptigīn, one of the local governors of the Sāmānids, who laid the foundations at Ghazna of the first independent Moḥammadan dynasty in Afghānistān.

Henceforward for two centuries Ghazna was the capital of a powerful dynasty to which it gave the name of *Ghaznawids*. The incursions of the Ghaznawids into India and their settlement at Lahore formed the true beginning of Muslim rule in Hindūstān. The Ghaznawid kingdom at Lahore prepared the way for Moḥammad b. Sām the Ghōrid and his successors the Sultāns of Dehli, who brought the whole of northern India under Moḥammadan sway. The invasion of the Mongols under Bābar put an end to the divisions which had weakened the Dehli kingdom in its later years, and Bābar's grandson Akbar organized the splendid Empire of the Great Moguls which lasted down to the present century.



A.H.  
351—582

103. GHAZNAWIDS

A.D.  
962—1186

(AFGHĀNISTĀN AND PANJĀB)

Among the Turkish slaves whom the Sāmānid princes delighted to honour with the chief posts in the government of their dominions, Alptigīn rose by favour of ‘Abd-al-Malik to be commander of the forces in Khurāsān, but, being deprived of this office on the death of his patron, he retired in dudgeon in 962 (351) to the city of Ghazna, in the heart of the Sulaymān mountains, where his father had been governor under the Sāmānids, and where the son had succeeded to his authority. In the mountain fastnesses he could safely defy the ill-will of his masters in the plains; but he died in a year’s time without enlarging the dominion he had assumed; nor did his son Ishāk or his slave Balkātigīn enhance the power of the Ghaznawids. The true founder of the dynasty was Sabaktigīn, another slave of Alptigīn, and the husband of his daughter. Sabaktigīn widened his territories on both sides; in India by the defeat of the Rājputs and the establishment of a government at Peshāwar: in Persia by the acquisition of Khu-

final triumph. On his return from an expedition into the heart of the old Caliphate, in which he took Iṣpahān from the Buwayhids (p. 142), Maḥmūd died at Ghazna in the spring of 1030 (421). His magnificent encouragement of science, art, and literature, was no less remarkable than his genius as a general and statesman. He founded and endowed a university at Ghazna, and his munificence drew together perhaps the most splendid 'assemblage of literary genius,' including the poet Firdausi, that any Asiatic capital has ever contained.\* Ghazna was enriched with palaces and mosques, aqueducts and public works, beyond any city of its age: for Maḥmūd had known how to learn from India, as well as how to plunder it.

The empire which had thus been founded stretched from Lahore to Samarkand and Iṣpahān; but it was soon lopped of its western limbs. In a few years the Seljūks (p. 151), after defeating Mas'ūd the son of Maḥmūd near Merv, had taken possession of all the Persian and Transoxiane provinces of the Ghaznawids, from Balkh and Khwārizm to Iṣpahān and Rayy (1037-1045); and the rulers of Ghazna learned to turn their eyes to the east, now that the west was closed to them. Lahore

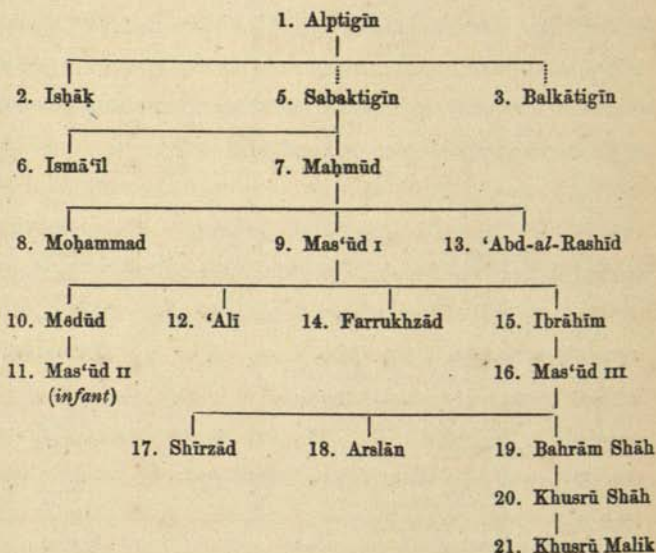
\* Elphinstone, *History of India*, 341-5 (5th ed. 1866).

became their capital when Ghazna fell to the Ghōrids in 1161. Thus the losses in the west confirmed the settlement in Hindūstān, and when in 1186 (582) the successors of of Maḥmūd, who had not emulated his ambition, gave place to the hardy Afghāns of Ghōr, the Indian provinces soon separated from the highlands; and thus began the series of independent Moḥammadan dynasties of India.

A. H.		A. D.
351	Alptigin . . . . .	962
352	Isbāk . . . . .	963
355	Balkātigin* . . . . .	966
362	Piri . . . . .	972
366	Sebaktagin . . . . .	976
387	Ismā'il . . . . .	997
388	Maḥmūd, Yamin-al-dawla . . . . .	998
421	Moḥammad, Jalāl-al-dawla . . . . .	1030
421	Mas'ūd I, Nāṣir-dīn-Allāh . . . . .	1030
432	Mōdūd, Shihāb-al-dawla . . . . .	1040
440	Mas'ūd II . . . . .	1048
440	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, Bahā-al-dawla . . . . .	1048
440	'Abd-al-Rashīd, 'Izz-al-dawla . . . . .	1049
444	Tughrit (usurper) . . . . .	1052
444	Farrukhzād, Jamāl-al-dawla . . . . .	1052
451	Ibrāhīm, Zahir-al-dawla . . . . .	1059
492	Mas'ūd III, 'Alā-al-dawla . . . . .	1099
508	Shirzād, Kamāl-al-dawla . . . . .	1114
509	Arelān, Sultān-al-dawla . . . . .	1115
512	Bahrām Shāh, Yamin-al-dawla . . . . .	1118
547	Khusrū Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dawla . . . . .	1152
555	Khusrū Malik, Tāj-al-dawla . . . . .	1160
—582	[Ghōrids]	—1186

\* On the chronology of the early Gharzawids see E. E. Oliver, *The Decline of the Sāmānīs*, in *Journ. As. Soc. Bengal*, lv. pt. i. 1886.

## GHAZNAWIDS



(..... Dotted lines indicate the relation of master to slave.)



A. H.  
543—612

104. GHŌRIDS

A. D.  
1148—1215

(AFGHĀNISTĀN, HINDŪSTĀN)

From early times the mountainous district of Ghŏr (or Ghūr), between Herāt and Ghazna, had been the seat of a small but practically independent dynasty, who usually made the fortress of Fīrūz-kōh their headquarters. Maḥmūd of Ghazna had reduced this principality in 1010 (401), when the Afghāns of Ghŏr were ruled by Moḥammad b. Sūrī; and the descendants of this chief continued to govern at Fīrūz-kōh and Bāmiyān under the orders of the Ghaznawids, with whom they allied themselves by marriage. The execution of one of the family (Kutb-al-dīn Moḥammad) by his father-in-law Bahrām Shāh the Ghaznawid was avenged by the capture of Ghazna in 1148 (543) by the murdered man's brother, Sayf-al-dīn Sūrī, the ruler of Ghŏr; but in the following year Bahrām Shāh succeeded in re-entering his capital, and tortured the invader to death. This second act of barbarity brought down a signal punishment upon Ghazna



at the hands of a third brother, 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn, surnamed Jahān-sōz, or 'world-incendiary,' from the ferocity with which he gave up the splendid city of Maḥmūd the idol-breaker to fire and sword. Contemptuously leaving the ashes of Ghazna, 'Alā-al-dīn returned to Ghōr; and after a brief captivity in the hands of Sulṭān Sinjar the Seljūk of Khurāsān, he died in 1161 (556) in a time of anarchy, when the Ghuzz Turkomāns swept over Afghānistān and for a while abolished both Ghōrid and Ghaznawid governments.

The Ghuzz soon wended their migratory way into Persia, and on their departure two brothers, nephews of the 'World-Incendiary,' became the leaders of the Ghōrid family. The elder, Ghiyāth-al-dīn b. Sām, had taken Ghazna from the Ghuzz in 1173 (569), and annexed Herāt two years later. He remained titular sovereign of all the wide possessions of his family until his death in 1202 (599). The younger brother, however, Shihāb-al-dīn, afterwards styled Mu'izz-al-dīn, and commonly known as Moḥammad Ghōrī, was the real ruler and extender of the kingdom. He conquered part of Khurāsān from the Seljūks, and then began a series of campaigns in India, in which he reduced Sind and Multan (571),

where Arab governors had made Muslim rule familiar; subdued the Ghaznawids in their last retreat at Lahore in 1186 (582); and then proceeded to attack the leader of the Chohān Rājputs, Prithwī Rāja of Ajmīr. His first onslaught was repulsed with terrible loss (587), but in the following year, 1192, a hard-fought battle on the same field of Thanesar ended in the total defeat of the Rājputs, and the death of Prithwī Rāja and many others of the 150 princes who had assembled for the defence of Hindūstān. The victory meant nothing less than the submission of nearly the whole of northern India; for Kanauj fell in 1194, and Gwālīōr, Bandal-khand, Bihār, and Bengal were successively reduced by the generals of Moḥammad Ghōrī. For the first time the whole of Hindūstān admitted, in a greater or less degree, Moḥammadan sway.

So long as his brother lived, Moḥammad Ghōrī always remained a loyal viceroy, but on Ghiyāth-al-dīn's death in 1202 (599) he succeeded to the supreme authority, when his first duty was to defend his realm against the Khwārizm Shāh, who had overrun Persia and was forcing his way into Afghānistān. In the midst of the confusion of this invasion, Moḥammad Ghōrī was assassinated by a party

of Ghakkars in 1206 (602). His dynasty did not long survive him. His nephew Maḥmūd was indeed proclaimed Sulṭān throughout the wide dominions conquered by the uncle; but the unity of the kingdom vanished with its founder. The Turkish slaves who had served as generals under Moḥammad Ghōrī assumed independent power. Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak became the first of the Slave Kings of Dehlī; Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha ruled in Sind; and Yildiz governed Ghazna. The titular successor of the great Ghōrid, from his capital of Fīrūz-kōh, reigned over little more than western Afghānistān (Ghōr and Herāt) with part of Khurāsān; and from all these the Ghōrids were expelled by the armies of the *Khwārizm Shāh* in 1215 (612). Long afterwards, however, their descendants recovered some relics of their ancient dominions, and the *Kart* princes of Herāt traced their origin to the family of Moḥammad Ghōrī.

The opposite table shows the relationship and places of government of the chief members of the Ghōrid family.\*

\* For further details see E. Thomas, *Supplementary Contributions to the Series of the Coins of the Kings of Ghazni* (1859).



# GHÖRIDS

1. 'Izz-al-din Ḥasan  
(*Ghōr*)

(To face p. 294)

Kuṭb-al-din  
Moḥammad  
(*Firūz-kōh*; killed  
by Bahrām Shāh)

2. Sayf-al-din  
Sūrī  
(*Ghōr*; *Ghazna*,  
543-4; killed by  
Bahrām Shāh, 544)

9. 'Alā-al-din  
Atsuz  
(*Ghōr*, 607-610)

3. 'Alā-al-din  
Ḥosayn Jahānsōz  
(*Ghōr*, 544-556;  
*Ghazna*, 550)

4. Sayf-al-din  
Moḥammad  
(*Ghōr*, 556-8)

5. Ghiyāth-al-din  
Moḥammad  
(*Ghōr*, 558;  
*Herāt*, 571;  
† 599)  
7. Maḥmūd  
(*Bust*, 599;  
*Ghōr and Firūz-kōh*, 603;  
† 607)

8. Bahā-al-din Sām  
(*Ghōr*, etc., 607)

Bahā-al-din  
Sām  
(*Firūz-kōh*, 544)

6. Shihāb-al-din  
Mu'izz-al-din  
Moḥammad Ghūrī  
(*Ghazna*, 569;  
*Sind*, 571;  
*Lahore*, 582;  
*Hindūstān*, 588 ff.;  
*Ghōr and Ghazna*, 599;  
† 602)

Shihāb-al-din  
Moḥammad  
(*Mādin*)

10. 'Alā-al-din  
Moḥammad  
(*Ghōr and*  
*Firūz-kōh*,  
[under 6];  
599-603;  
restored 610;  
surrenders to  
*Khwarizm Shāh*  
612)

Shujā'-  
al-din  
'Alī  
(*Khirmā*)

'Alā-al-din  
(*Ghazna*, 602-3)

BĀMIYĀN LINE

i. Fakhr-al-din  
Mas'ūd  
(550-?)

ii. Shams-al-din  
Moḥammad

iii. Bahā-al-din  
Sām  
† 602

iv. Jalāl-al-din  
602-9  
(killed by  
*Khwarizm Shāh*)





A.H.

602—962

105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ

A.H.

1206—1554

(HINDŪSTĀN)

Moḥammad Ghōrī, after conquering northern India to the mouth of the Ganges, either by his own campaigns or by those of his generals, appointed his slave Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak to act as his viceroy at Dehlī; and on the death of the master in 1206 (602) the slave proclaimed himself sovereign of Hindūstān, and founded the first Moḥammadan dynasty which ruled exclusively in India; for hitherto Moḥammadan India had been but an outlying province of the kingdom of Ghazna. This dynasty, the first of five which preceded the Mogul conquest, is commonly known as the *Slave Kings*. The greatest of the line was Altamish (more correctly Iltutmish), who subdued the governor of Sind, Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha; compelled the viceroy of Bengal to acknowledge the supremacy of Dehlī; repelled the attempt of Yildiz to revive in India the kingdom of which the Khwārizm Shāh

had robbed him at Ghazna; and in turn withstood the attempts of Jalāl-aḷ-dīn, the son of that Shāh, to set up his rule in Hindūstān when driven over the Hindū-Kūsh by the Mongols of Chingiz Khān. Fortunately for India these Mongols stopped short at the Indus, though their raids were a frequent source of alarm for many years. Altamish vigorously maintained his authority over the whole country north of the Vindhya mountains; and the Caliph of Baghdād, for the first time recognizing a distinct Moḥammadan kingdom of India, gave its sovereign the sanction of a formal diploma of investiture from the spiritual head of Islām. Ridīya, the daughter of Altamish, was the only woman who ever sat on the throne of Dehlī, until Queen Victoria figuratively took her seat there in 1858. Under the later Slave Kings the Hindūs began to pluck up the courage which had oozed away before the arms of Moḥammad Ghōrī and Altamish; and Balban had to sternly suppress many serious native outbreaks, which were in some degree the fruit of his policy of getting rid of the Slave governors—a policy which led to the subversion of his own dynasty.

The *Khaljī* Turks, the second Muslim dynasty of India, began to extend Moḥammadan rule beyond the Vindhyas

into the Deccan. 'Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad re-conquered Gujarāt, 1297; took Chitōr and temporarily subdued the Rājputs, 1303; and his eunuch general Malik Kāfūr seized Deogīri and Warangal, and founded a Deccan province of the Dehlī kingdom. The extent of the dominion, however, tended towards disruption. After power had again changed hands, and a Turkish slave had established the *Taghlaḳid* dynasty, Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ, a man of remarkable but bizarre genius, perceived the impossibility of ruling the Deccan from Dehlī, and accordingly sought to transplant by force both court and population from the northern capital to Deogīri, which he re-named Dawlatābād, the 'seat of government.' But he could not check the disintegrating process which had begun; whole provinces revolted, and he was ever on the wing from end to end of his empire to suppress rebellion; and his successors were forced to witness the separation of province after province from the central stock, until the Sultān of Dehlī sometimes commanded but a small district round his capital. The invasion of Timūr, who turned northern India into a shambles in 1398-9, hastened the catastrophe. The *Sayyids* and *Lōdis*, who followed the house of Taghlaḳ, held but one govern-

ment out of the many that now prevailed in Hindūstān. Bengal, Jaunpūr, Mālwa, and Gujarāt were the seats of independent Moḥammadan dynasties, and the Rājputs and the Hindūs of the Deccan had recovered much of their former possessions.

The irruption of the Moguls under Bābar, who established his authority over most of northern India, save Bengal, in 1526-30, was too brief to accomplish the work of re-uniting the scattered fragments of the empire of 'Alā-ud-dīn the Khaljī. After Bābar's death the Moguls were driven out of India by Shīr Shāh and the Afghāns of Bengal 1539-40 (946-7), and the courage and genius of the Afghān conqueror almost availed to restore the waning prestige of the Moḥammadan power. But the provinces refused to obey an Afghān sovereign, and their disunion opened the way for the return of Bābar's son Humāyūn in 1554 (962) and the establishment under Akbar of the famous Mogul Empire, which lasted to the present century.



## A. SLAVE KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
602	Aybak, Kuṭb-al-dīn . . . . .	1206
607	Arām Shāh . . . . .	1210
607	Altamish (Iltutmish), Shams-al-dīn . . . . .	1210
633	Firūz Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn . . . . .	1235
634	Riḍīya . . . . .	1236
637	Bahrām Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dīn . . . . .	1239
639	Mas'ūd Shāh, 'Alā-al-dīn . . . . .	1241
644	Maḥmūd Shāh I, Nāṣir-al-dīn . . . . .	1246
664	Balban, Ghiyāth-al-dīn . . . . .	1265
686	Kay-Kubād, Mu'izz-al-dīn . . . . .	1287

## B. KHALJIS

689	Firūz Shāh II, Jalāl-al-dīn . . . . .	1290
696	Ibrāhīm Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn . . . . .	1295
696	Moḥammad Shāh I, 'Alā-al-dīn . . . . .	1295
716	'Omar Shāh, Shihāb-al-dīn . . . . .	1315
716	Mubārak Shāh I, Kuṭb-al-dīn . . . . .	1316
720	Khusrū Shāh, Nāṣir-al-dīn . . . . .	1320



## C. TAGHLAKIDS

A.H.		A.D.
720	Taghlaḳ Shāh i, Ghiyāth-al-dīn . . . . .	1320
725	Moḥammad ii b. Taghlaḳ . . . . .	1324
752	Firūz Shāh iii . . . . .	1351
790	Taghlaḳ Shāh ii . . . . .	1388
791	Abū-Bakr Shāh . . . . .	1388
792	Moḥammad Shāh iii . . . . .	1389
795	Sikandar Shāh i . . . . .	1392
796	Maḥmūd Shāh ii . . . . .	1392
797	Naṣrat Shāh ( <i>interregnum</i> ) . . . . .	1394
802	Maḥmūd ii <i>restored</i> . . . . .	1399
815	Dawlat Khān Lōdī . . . . .	1412

## D. SAYYIDS

817	Khiḍr Khān . . . . .	1414
824	Mubārak Shāh ii, Mu'izz-al-dīn . . . . .	1421
837	Moḥammad Shāh iv . . . . .	1433
847	'Alīm Shāh . . . . .	1443

## E. LŌDĪS

855	Bahlōl Lōdī . . . . .	1451
894	Sikandar ii b. Bahlōl . . . . .	1488
923	Ibrāhīm ii b. Sikandar . . . . .	1517
—930	<i>Invasion of Bābar</i> . . . . .	—1526

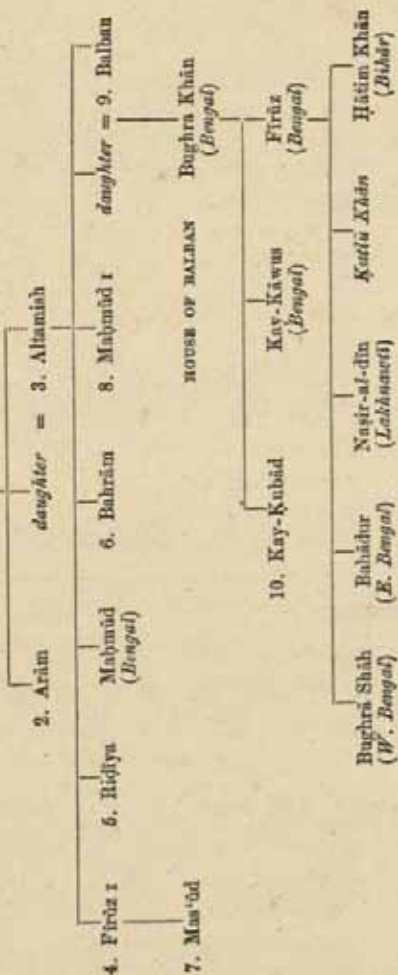
## F. AFGHĀNS

946	Shīr Shāh . . . . .	1539
962	Islām Shāh . . . . .	1545
960	Moḥammad v. 'Adil Shāh . . . . .	1552
961	Ibrāhīm iii Sūr . . . . .	1553
962	Sikandar Shāh iii . . . . .	1554

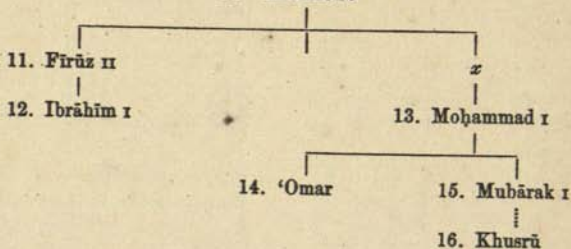
[*Mogul Emperors*]

## A. SLAVE KINGS

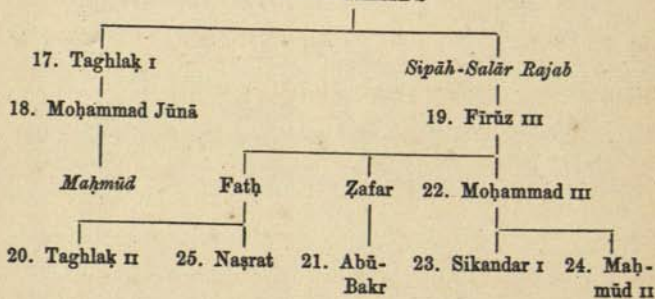
1. Kutb-al-din Aybak  
(slave of Moḥammad Gh̃orī)



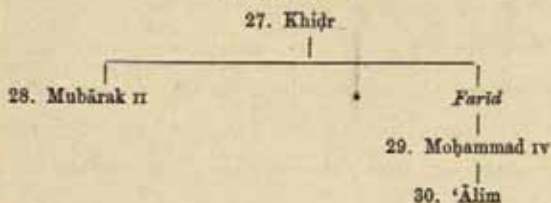
## B. KHALJĪS



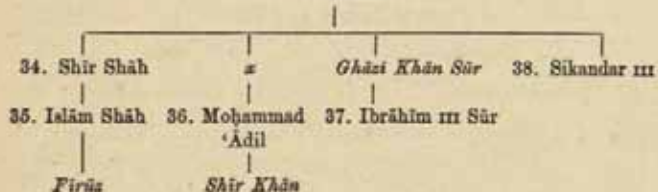
## C. TAGHLĀKIDS



## D. SAYYIDS



## F. AFGHĀNS



## PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA

The Empire of Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ included the whole of Hindūstān, together with Telingana and other districts in the Deccan. Before his death the more distant provinces began to grow into independence, and soon after the beginning of the fifteenth century the greater part of his dominions was in the hands of seven provincial Moḥammadan dynasties, besides the Hindū Rājas.

A.H.		A.D.
599—984	1. Governors and Kings of Bengal .	1202—1576
796—905	2. Sharḳī Kings of Jaunpūr .	1394—1500
804—937	3. Kings of Mālwa . . .	1401—1530
799—980	4. Kings of Gujarāt . . .	1396—1572
735—995	5. Kings of Kashmīr . . .	1334—1587
801—1008	6. Fārūkids, Kings of Khāndēsh .	1399—1599
748—933	7. Bahmanids, Kings of Kulbarga .	1347—1526

On the decay of the Bahmanids, the following five dynasties divided their dominions between them:—

890—980	8. 'Imād Shāhs of Berār . .	1484—1572
896—1004	9. Nizām Shāhs of Aḥmadnagar .	1490—1595
897—1018	10. Barid Shāhs of Bidar . .	1492—1609
895—1097	11. 'Adil Shāhs of Bijāpūr . .	1489—1686
918—1098	12. Ḳuṭb Shāhs of Golkonda . .	1512—1687

The Hindūstān dynasties were absorbed into the Mogul Empire by Akbar, and those of the Deccan succumbed to the attacks of Aurangzīb.



A.H.

599—984

A.D.

1202—1576

106 GOVERNORS AND

KINGS OF BENGAL

Moḥammad Bakhtiyār, the conqueror and first governor of Bengal, subdued but a small part of the present province, chiefly in the neighbourhood of his capital Lakhnawtī. In the early part of the thirteenth century Sonārgāon and Sātḡāon became seats of Moḥammadan governors, and the name Bangāla included these as well as Lakhnawtī. Firūzābād (Pandūah) was the capital of the triple province, until in 1446 (850) the seat of government was again moved to Lakhnawtī, which was now first called Gaur, and remained the capital until 1564 (972), when it was succeeded by Tāndah. The governors of Bengal sometimes also held Bihār, and occasionally Chittagong and Orīsa. When the Dehlī kings grew weak, the Bengal governors waxed independent, and several dynasties assumed kingly powers. Humāyūn occupied Bengal in 944-6, but after the successful defeat of the Moguls by Shīr Shāh in 1539 (946) governors were again appointed, and again (960) founded independent dynasties. In 982, however, Bihār fell before the arms of Akbar, and by 1576 (984) the Mogul was supreme in Bengal.

## A. GOVERNORS

A.H.		A.D.
599	Moḥammad Bakhtiyār Khaljī . . . .	1202
602	'Izz-al-dīn Moḥammad Shīrān . . . .	1205
605	'Alā-al-dīn Mardān . . . .	1208
608	Ghiyāth-al-dīn 'Iwaz . . . .	1211
624	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd . . . .	1226
627	'Alā-al-dīn Jānī . . . .	1229
627	Sayf-al-dīn Aybak . . . .	1229
631	'Izz-al-dīn Ṭughrīl Ṭughān Khān . . .	1233
642	Ḳamar-al-dīn Tamar Khān-Ḳirān . . .	1244
644	Ikhtiyār-al-dīn (Mughith-al-dīn) Yūsuf .	1246
656	Jalāl-al-dīn Mas'ūd Malik Jānī . . . .	1258
657	'Izz-al-dīn Balban . . . .	1258
659?	Moḥammad Arslān Tatar Khān . . . .	1260?
	Shīr Khān	
	Amin Khān	
677	Mughith-al-dīn Ṭughrīl . . . .	1278
681	*Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā Khān . . . .	1282
691	Rukn-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus . . . .	1291
702	Shams-al-dīn Firūz Shāh . . . .	1302
718	Shihāb-al-dīn Bughrā Shāh (West Bengal)	1318
710	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Bahādūr Shāh (East Bengal)	1310
719	" " (All Bengal)	1319
723-6	Nāṣir-al-dīn . . . . (Lakhnawī)	1323-5
725-31	Bahādūr Shāh restored, with Bahrām	
	(East Bengal)	1324-30
731-9	Bahrām Shāh (alone) . . . .	1330-8
726-40	Ḳadr Khān . . . . (Lakhnawī)	1325-39
724-40	'Izz-al-dīn A'zam-al-mulk . . . (Satgāon)	1323-39

\* The following six governors belonged to the family of Balban, the Sultān of Dehli, see the genealogy p. 301.

## B. KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
739—984		1338—1576
739-50	Fakhr-al-dīn Mubārak Shāh (East Bengal)	1338-49
750-3	Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzī Shāh (East Bengal)	1349-52
740-6	'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī Shāh (West Bengal)	1339-45

## HOUSE OF ILYĀS

740-6	Shams-al-dīn Ilyās Shāh (contending in West Bengal)	1339-45
746	„ (West Bengal)	1345
753-9	„ (all Bengal)	1352-8
759-92	Sikandar Shāh 1 b. Ilyās . . . . .	1358-89
792	Ghiyāth-al-dīn A'zam Shāh b. Sikandar ( <i>rebels</i> 1370) <i>reigns</i> . . . . .	1389
799	Sayf-al-dīn Ḥamza Shāh b. A'zam . . . . .	1396
809	Shams-al-dīn b. Ḥamza . . . . .	1406

## HOUSE OF RĀJA KĀNS

812	Shihāb-al-dīn Bāyazīd Shāh (with Rāja Kāns)	1409
817	Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh b. Rāja Kāns .	1414
835	Shāms-al-dīn Aḥmad Shāh b. Moḥammad .	1431

HOUSE OF ILYĀS (*restored*)

846	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh 1 . . . . .	1442
864	Rukn-al-dīn Bārbak Shāh b. Maḥmūd 1 . . . . .	1459
879	Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf Shāh b. Bārbak . . . . .	1474
886	Sikandar Shāh 11 b. Yūsuf . . . . .	1481
886	Jalāl-al-dīn Faṭḥ Shāh b. Maḥmūd 1 . . . . .	1481

## HAFSHI KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
892	Sultān Shāhzāda Bārbak . . . . .	1486
892	Sayf-al-dīn Firūz Shāh I . . . . .	1486
895	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh II b. Faṭḥ Shāh ( <i>cf. Ilyās stock</i> ) . . . . .	1489
896	Shams-al-dīn Abū-I-Naṣr Muẓaffar Shāh . . . . .	1490

## HOUSE OF ḤOSAYN SHĀH

899	'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn Shāh . . . . .	1493
925	Nāṣir-al-dīn Naṣrat Shāh b. Ḥosayn . . . . .	1518
939	'Alā-al-dīn Firūz Shāh III b. Naṣrat . . . . .	1532
939	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh III b. Ḥosayn (partial rule 1526) . . . . .	1532
—944	( <i>Conquest by Humāyūn</i> ) . . . . .	—1537

## HOUSE OF MOHAMMAD SŪR

960	Shams-al-dīn Moḥammad Sūr Ghāzī Shāh . . . . .	1552
962	Bahādur Shāh (Khidr) b. Moḥammad Sūr . . . . .	1554
968	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Jalāl Shāh b. Moḥammad Sūr . . . . .	1560
971	(Son of preceding) . . . . .	1563

## HOUSE OF SULAYMĀN KARĀRĀNĪ

971	Sulaymān Khān Karārānī (Bihār and Bengal) . . . . .	1563
980	Bāyazīd Shāh b. Sulaymān . . . . .	1572
980	Dāwūd Shāh b. Sulaymān . . . . .	1572
—984	[ <i>Mogul Emperors</i> ] . . . . .	—1576



A.H.		A.D.
796—905	107. SHARKĪ KINGS OF JAUNPŪR	1394—1500

## ('KINGS OF THE EAST')

Khawāja-Jahān, the vezīr of Maḥmūd of the house of Taghlaq, deserted his youthful sovereign and founded an independent government at Jaunpūr, whence he and his successors held sway for a time over Bihār, Oudh, Kanauj, and Barāich, with considerable state, as their noble monuments testify; and made war upon their former masters at Dehlī (which they twice besieged), and their neighbours the kings of Mālwa. In 1476 (881, or according to some historians 879) Jaunpūr was conquered by Sikandar b. Bahlōl and reunited to Dehlī; but the adherents of the banished Ḥosayn Shāh endeavoured for some years to restore the fallen dynasty.

A.H.		A.D.
796	Khawāja-Jahān . . . . .	1394
802	Mubārak Shāh . . . . .	1399
803	Shams-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharķī b. Mubārak	1400
844	Maḥmūd Shāh b. Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1440
861	Moḥammad Shāh (jointly with his father Maḥmūd) . . . . .	1456
863	Ḥosayn Shāh b. Maḥmūd . . . . .	1458
—905	died to Bengal 881, died 905	—1500

[*Sultāns of Dehlī*]



A. H.		A. D.
804—937	108. <b>KINGS OF MĀLWA</b>	1401—1530

Mālwa was among the old Rājput kingdoms which longest withstood the Moḥammadan invasion. It had boasted one of the most illustrious of the ancient Hindū dynasties, who made their capital, Ujjayn, a seat of learning and science. Three centuries of contest elapsed before it was subdued, in the time of Sulṭān Balban of Dehlī. Its natural boundaries were the Narbadā on the south, the Chambal on the north, and Gujarāt and Bandal-khand on the west and east. Under the Khaljī kings, however, it included Hūshangābād, Ajmīr, Rantambhor, and Elichpūr, and even Chitōr was sometimes forced to pay tribute. Its Moḥammadan capital, Mandū, founded by Hūshang Ghōrī, stood on a spacious plateau surrounded by precipices, and was famous for its palaces and mosques.

Two successive Moḥammadan dynasties reigned in Mālwa. The first was founded by Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, a governor of the king of Dehlī, and consisted of himself, his son, and his grandson. The second dynasty was established

by Maḥmūd Khalji, the vezīr of the grandson of Dilāwar, and fell when Mālwa was annexed in 1530 (937) by the neighbouring king of Gujarāt, with whom the rulers of Mālwa had waged perpetual war. The Khaljis were a fighting race, and had carried the arms of Mālwa to the gates of Dehli in the north and Bīdar in the south, whilst with the Rājputs of Chitōr and Chanderī their hostilities were unceasing.\*

## I. GHŌRĪS

A.H.		A.D.
804	Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī . . . . .	1401
808	Hūshang (Alp Khān) b. Dilāwar . . . . .	1405
838	Moḥammad Ghaznī Khān b. Hūshang . . . . .	1434

## II. KHALJĪS

839	Maḥmūd Shāh I Khalji . . . . .	1435
880	Ghiyāth Shāh b. Maḥmūd . . . . .	1475
906	Nāṣir Shāh b. Ghiyāth . . . . .	1500
916	Maḥmūd II b. Nāṣir . . . . .	1510
—937	[Kings of Gujarāt]	—1530

\* The list of the Kings of Kashmīr should follow here; but their chronology is so uncertain that an accurate table can hardly be constructed. See my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India*, xlvii, 68.

A.H.

A.D.

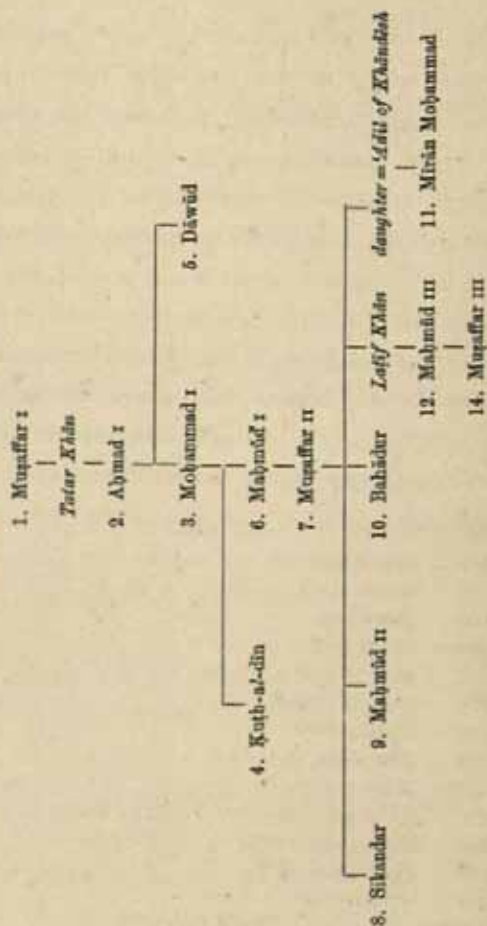
799—990      109. **KINGS OF GUJARĀT**      1396—1572

Gujarāt owed its long immunity from Moḥammadan subjection to its inaccessible position, beyond the great desert and the hills connecting the Vindhya with the Aravali range, which rendered it difficult to invade except by sea. It was not until the time of 'Alā-*al-dīn* of Dehli, at the close of the 13th century, that Gujarāt became a Moḥammadan province. At the end of the 14th century it became independent again, but its rulers were now Muslims instead of Hindūs. Zafar Khān, the son of a Rājput convert, was appointed to the government of Gujarāt in 794, and assumed independence in 1396 (799). He found himself surrounded by enemies, Rājput rājas and wild tribes of Bhīls, and possessed of but a narrow territory between the hills and the sea, including, however, a considerable stretch of the coast, as far as Sūrāt at least. He soon enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Īdar and Diu; plundered Jhalor; and even took possession of Mālwa for a space in 1407. Aḥmad Shāh I, his successor, founded Aḥmadābād, which became the capital of the dynasty and afterwards of the Mogul

province, and is still an important city. Maḥmūd Shāh I not only carried on the traditional wars of his family with Mālwa and Khāndēsh, but added the stronghold of Jūnagarh in Kattiāwār, and Champanīr, to his dominions, and kept a large fleet to subdue the pirates of the islands and to attack the Portuguese; to whom Bahādur Shāh, the conqueror of Mālwa, conceded the right to build a factory at Diu, and at whose hands he met his death. The last years of the dynasty were clouded by the intrigues of factious nobles, and the kings became mere puppets; until Akbar's conquest in 1572 (980) restored prosperity to the harassed province.

A.H.		A.D.
799	Muḥaffar Shāh I Zafar Khān . . . .	1396
814	Aḥmad Shāh I . . . .	1411
816	Moḥammad Ḳarīm Shāh . . . .	1443
855	Ḳuṭb-al-dīn . . . .	1451
863	Dāwūd Shāh . . . .	1458
863	Maḥmūd Shāh I Baykara . . . .	1458
917	Muḥaffar Shāh II . . . .	1511
932	Sikandar Shāh . . . .	1525
932	Nāṣir Khān Maḥmūd II . . . .	1525
932	Bahādur Shāh . . . .	1526
943	Mirān Moḥammad Shāh Fārūḳī (of Khāndēsh)	1536
944	Maḥmūd Shāh III . . . .	1537
961	Aḥmad Shāh II . . . .	1553
969	Muḥaffar Shāh III Ḥabīb . . . .	1561
—980	[Mogul Emperors]	—1572

## KINGS OF GUJARĀT





A.H. A.D.  
801—1008 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH 1399—1599

Nāṣir Khān, the first Moḥammad ruler of Khāndēsh who asserted his independence of the kingdom of Dehli, claimed to be descended from the caliph 'Omar. He was related by marriage to the kings of Gujarāt, from whose dominions Khāndēsh (comprising the lower valley of the Taptī) was separated only by a belt of forest. The capital Burhānpūr was founded near the fortress of Asīrgarh. Akbar took Burhānpūr and received the homage of its king in 1562; but Khāndēsh was not fully incorporated in the Mogul Empire until 1599 (1008), when Asīrgarh fell after a six months' siege.

A.D.		A.H.
772	<i>Malik Rāja</i> . . . . .	1370
801	Nāṣir Khān . . . . .	1399
841	Mīrān 'Adil Khān I . . . . .	1437
844	Mīrān Mubārak I . . . . .	1441
861	'Adil Khān II . . . . .	1467
909	Dāwūd Khān . . . . .	1503
916	'Adil Khān III . . . . .	1510
926	Mīrān Moḥammad Shāh I . . . . .	1520
942	Mīrān Mubārak II . . . . .	1535
974	Mīrān Moḥammad II . . . . .	1566
984	'Alī Khān . . . . .	1576
1005	Bahādur Shāh . . . . .	1596
—1008	[Mogul Emperors]	—1599

## THE DECCAN

A.H.

748—933

A.D.

111. BAHMANIDS

1347—1526

(KINGS OF KULBARGA, ETC.)

The Deccan was partly conquered by Moḥammadans for the first time by 'Ala-al-dīn Moḥammad of Dehli, who in 1294 seized Deogīri and Elichpūr and thus formed a new province south of the Sātpura mountains. Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ enlarged the Deccan province by an invasion of Telingana in 1322, and for a time made Deogīri (re-named Dawlatābād) the capital of his empire. Among the numerous revolts which disturbed his reign that of the recently organized province of the Deccan was the earliest to achieve independence. From 1347 for nearly two centuries the Bahmanid kings of Kulbarga, Warangal and Bidar, held sway over the northern half of the Deccan above the Kistna. Their founder was Ḥasan Gāngū, an Afghān in the employment of a Brahman at Dehli. He rose to high office under the Taghlaḳ Sultāns and received the title of Zafar Khān. When the revolt against Moḥammad b. Taghlaḳ broke out in the Deccan, Ḥasan placed himself at the head of

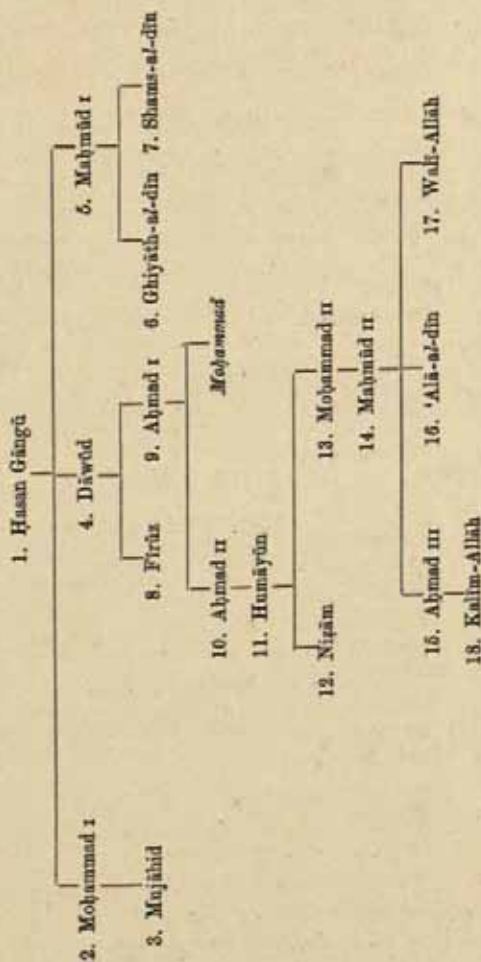
the insurgents, drove the royal troops from the country, and ascended the throne at Kulbarga under the style of 'Alā-*al*-dīn Ḥasan Gāngū Bahmanī.\* His dominions marched on the north with Berār, on the east with Telingana, whilst the river Kistna and the sea formed the southern and western boundaries. They included the greater part of the modern Bombay Presidency south of Sūrāt and most of the Nizām's territory. In addition, the Rājas of Telingana and Vijāyanagar were from time to time compelled at the point of the sword to pay homage and tribute. Under 'Alā-*al*-dīn Aḥmad II the Konkan was reduced and the neighbouring kings of Khāndēsh and Gujarāt were defeated. In 1471 Moḥammad Shāh II carried his arms into Orīsa, seized Conjeveram, and made war in the south upon the Rāja of Belgāon; so that the Bahmanids' sway extended from sea to sea and included nearly the whole of the Deccan north of Mysore. The extension of territory was followed by a new division into provinces, and the division led to disintegration. Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh, a successful general of Moḥammad Shāh II, declared the independence of the

\* See an article by James Gibb in *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. I. 91-115; and my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India in the British Museum*, lxi-lxvi.

new province of Bijāpūr; Nizām-al-mulk prepared the way for the separation of Junayr; 'Imād-al-mulk was proclaimed king in Berār, and the loss of these provinces was speedily followed by the independence of the rest and the extinction of the parent dynasty. The *'Imād Shāhs* of Berār, *Nizām Shāhs* of Aḥmadnagar, *Barid Shāhs* of Bīdar, *Adil Shāhs* of Bijāpūr, and *Kuṣb Shāhs* of Golkonda divided the kingdom of the Bahmanids amongst them.

A.H.		A.D.
748	Ḥasan Gāngū 'Alā-al-dīn Zafar Khān . . . . .	1347
759	Moḥammad Shāh I . . . . .	1358
776	Mujāhid Shāh . . . . .	1375
780	Dāwūd Shāh . . . . .	1378
780	Maḥmūd Shāh I . . . . .	1378
799	Ghiyāth-al-dīn . . . . .	1397
799	Shams-al-dīn . . . . .	1397
800	Tāj-al-dīn Firūz Shāh . . . . .	1397
825	Aḥmad Shāh I . . . . .	1421
838	'Alā-al-dīn Aḥmad Shāh II . . . . .	1435
862	'Alā-al-dīn Humāyūn Shāh . . . . .	1457
865	Nizām Shāh . . . . .	1461
867	Moḥammad Shāh II . . . . .	1463
887	Maḥmūd Shāh II . . . . .	1482
924	Aḥmad Shāh III . . . . .	1518
927	'Alā-al-dīn Shāh . . . . .	1520
929	Wālī-Allāh Shāh . . . . .	1522
932	Kalīm-Allāh Shāh . . . . .	1525
—933	[Five Deccan Dynasties]	—1526

## BAHMANIDS





A.H.		A.D.
890—980	112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS	1484—1572
	(BERĀR)	
890	Fath-Allāh . . . . .	1484
910	'Alā- <i>aḷ</i> -dīn . . . . .	1504
c. 936	Daryā . . . . .	c. 1529
c. 968	Burhān . . . . .	c. 1560
976	Tufāl (usurper) . . . . .	1568
—980		—1572
	[ <i>Nizām Shāhs</i> ]	

A.H.		A.D.
896—1004	113. NIZĀM SHĀHS	1490—1595
	(AḤMADNAGAR)	
896	Aḥmad r b. Nizām Shāh . . . . .	1490
914	Burhān I . . . . .	1508
961	Ḥosayn . . . . .	1553
972	Murtaḍā . . . . .	1565
996	Mirān Ḥosayn . . . . .	1588
997	Ismā'il . . . . .	1589
999	Burhān II . . . . .	1590
1003	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1594
1004	Aḥmad II . . . . .	1594
1004	Bahādur* . . . . .	1595
	[ <i>Mogul Emperors</i> ]	

\* Murtaḍa II reigned nominally from 1598-1607; and the province then came under the domination of Malik Amber.

# 'IMĀD SHĀHS

321

A. H.		A. D.
897—c. 1018	114. BARĪD SHĀHS	1492—c. 1609
	(BĪDAR)	
897	Kāsim I. . . . .	1492
910	Amir I . . . . .	1504
945	'Ali . . . . .	1549
990	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1562
997	Kāsim II . . . . .	1569
1000	Mirza 'Ali . . . . .	1572
c. 1018	Amir II . . . . .	c. 1609
895—1097	115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS	1489—1686
	(NIZĀRŪN)	
895	Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh. . . . .	1489
916	Ismā'il . . . . .	1511
941	Maliū . . . . .	1534
941	Ibrāhīm I . . . . .	1535
965	'Ali I . . . . .	1557
987	Ibrāhīm II . . . . .	1579
1035	Moḥammad . . . . .	1626
1070	'Ali II . . . . .	1660
—1097	[Mogul Emperors]	—1686
918—1098	116. KUTB SHĀHS	1512—1687
	(GOLKONDA)	
918	Sultān Quli. . . . .	1512
940	Jamshīd . . . . .	1543
957	Subḥān Quli . . . . .	1550
957	Ibrāhīm . . . . .	1550
989	Moḥammad Quli . . . . .	1581
1020	Abd.-Allāh . . . . .	1611
1083	Abū-l-Ḥasan . . . . .	1672
—1098	[Mogul Emperors]	—1687

A.H.		A.D.
932--1275	117. MOGUL EMPERORS	1525--1857
	OF HINDŪSTĀN	

Bābar, the Mongol conqueror of Hindūstān, was descended in the fifth generation from Timūr (see the genealogical table p. 268) and was born in 1482, in Farghāna, where his father was governor. Driven from his native province by the Uzbegs of Shaybānī about 1504, Bābar sought his recompense in the subjection of Afghānistān. He took possession of Badakhshān in 1503 (909), occupied Kābul in the following year, and annexed Kāndahār in 1507. For many years he meditated the invasion of India, but it was not until 1525 (932) that he felt himself strong enough to descend at the head of his Turks (he abhorred the name of Mongol\*) upon the Panjāb and occupy Lahore. On the 20th April 1526 he signally defeated the army of Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Lōdī of Dehli on the historic plain of Pānīpat, and the victory was followed by the rapid

\* In Arabic Mughal, whence the English Mogul or Moghul.

occupation of Dehli and Agra, and the submission of the northern parts of Hindūstān, from the Indus to the borders of Bengal. Bābar died in 1530 (937) before he could subdue the kingdoms of Bengal, Gujarāt and Mālwa; still less had he approached the Deccan.

His son Humāyūn, though but nineteen years of age, endeavoured to complete his father's work. His attempt to reduce the united kingdom of Gujarāt and Mālwa was, however, abortive; and the Afghāns of Bengal, led by the genius of Shīr Shāh, the usurping king of Bihār, succeeded after an obstinate struggle in driving Humāyūn step by step to the west. A treacherous attack on the Mogul camp at Chonsa in 1539 (946) banished them from Bengal; and a total defeat at Kanauj in the following year gave Shīr Shāh the command of all Hindūstān (but not Gujarāt), and compelled Humāyūn to seek refuge, first in Sind, and then in Persia. Fifteen years passed before the Mogul Emperor returned to re-conquer his empire. Meanwhile Shīr Shāh, after laying the foundations of the administrative organization which Akbar afterwards perfected, died, and the disunion among his successors paved the way for the invader. In 1555 Humāyūn recovered Dehli, and there died in January 1556 (963).



Humāyūn had only begun the work of reconquest; it was left to his son Akbar, a youth of fourteen, to finish it. The boy's guardian Bayrām Khān, a Turkomān, utterly defeated the Indian forces under Himū on the 5th November 1556 on the same plain of Pānīpat where Bābar had won his great victory. By this single blow Akbar found himself master of the better part of Hindūstān, and, young as he was, he soon took the reins of power into his own hands. Dehlī and Agra were his by the victory of Pānīpat; Gwālīōr fell in 1558 (966), Jaunpūr in 1559, and Mālwa and Khāndēsh were temporarily overrun in 1561-2. Rājputāna submitted after the storming of Chitōr in 1567 (975), and Gujarāt was reduced in 1572 (980). Bengal, which had nominally admitted the Mogul sovereignty, rose in rebellion, but was subdued in 1575-7 (983-4). Kashmīr was annexed in 1587 and Kāndahār six years later.\*

‘Akbar was too wise to meddle seriously in Deccan politics. All he wanted was to secure himself against invasion from the south; and with this view he annexed the rugged borderland of Khāndēsh, and used its capital,

\* See my *History of the Mogul Emperors of Hindustan illustrated by their Coins*, xii. ff.



Burhānpūr, with the rocky fastness of Aśīrgarh, [which had withstood his siege and his English gunners for six months before it succumbed in 1601 (1008),] as outposts to defend his southern frontier. He also subdued Berār and took the fortress of Aḥmadnagar (1600).<sup>\*</sup> The kings of Bījāpūr and Golkonda paid him homage and offered him tribute: but he never attempted annexation in the Deccan, beyond securing his frontier; nor had the Deccan *sūbah* or province, even in this limited sense, been organized as thoroughly as the rest of the empire at the time of his death in 1605 (1014).

The true successor of Moḥammad b. Taghlak in his dreams of Deccan conquest was Aurangzīb, the sixth Mogul Emperor. As governor during Shāh-Jahān's reign in 1636-43 he had organized the four divisions of the Deccan province — Dawlatābād (including Aḥmadnagar), Khāndēsh, Telingana, and Berār; and he made the king of Golkonda a vassal in 1656. The fratricidal struggle which preceded his accession to the throne at Dehli in 1659 (1069), and the work of ordering his administration, diverted his attention from the Deccan for some years; and it was not till 1681 that he began that long series

<sup>\*</sup> See my *Aurangzīb* (Rulers of India) pp. 144—204.

of campaigns in the south which did not end till his own death twenty-six years later. He besieged and took Bijāpūr in 1686 and Golkonda in 1687, and put an end to the dynasties of the 'Ādil and Ḳuṭb Shāhs. But against the new power of the Marāthas which had arisen in the Deccan in the middle of the 17th century he could make no head; and though his armies traversed the Deccan in all directions and took many forts, the country and its hardy mountaineers were never subdued. Yet when Aurangzīb died in 1707 his dominions stretched from Kābul to the mouths of the Hūgli, and from Sūrat across Haydarābād to Masulipatan and even Madras. All India, save the apex of the Deccan, was his in name; but except in forts and cities, the possession was nominal in the south.

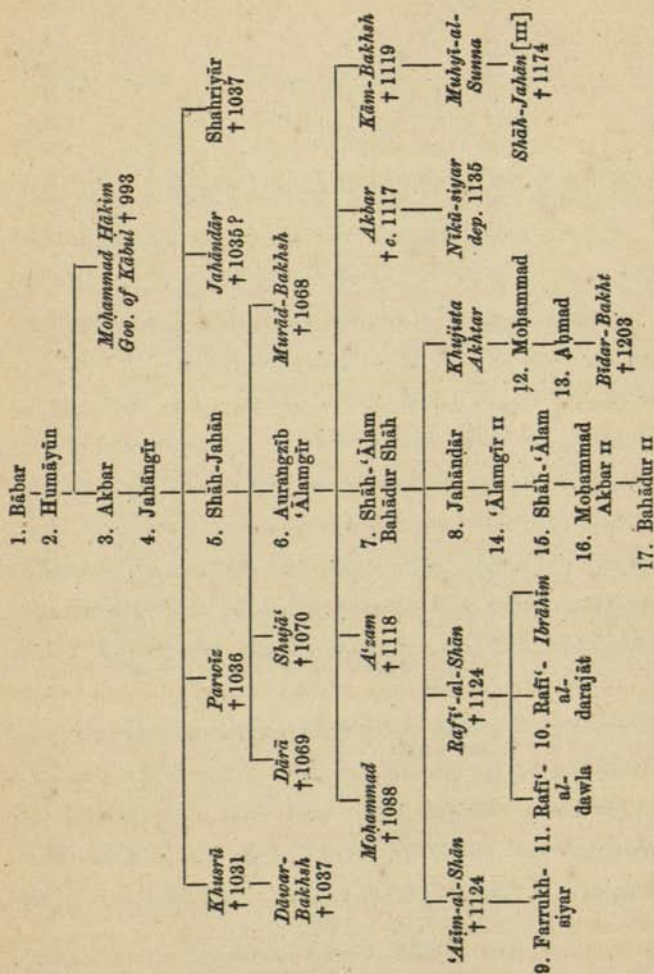
The empire of the Great Moguls began to break up after the death of Aurangzīb. His successors were for the most part weak and debauched; and the rising powers of the Sikhs, Jāts, and Marāthas were young and strong. The invasions of Nādir Shāh in 1738, and Aḥmad Durrānī in 1748, 1757, etc., were signs of the feebleness of the empire. Fifty years after Aurangzīb's death the Marāthas were supreme in the south, except where the newly-

founded dynasty of the Nizām kept them at arm's length, and were pushing their way through Gujarāt up to Dehli; the Rājputs had ceased to acknowledge the Mogul supremacy; the Sikhs were gradually winning the mastery of the Panjāb from the Afghāns; the Jāts were practically independent near Agra; Oudh was virtually a separate kingdom, and so was Bengal; though the little patches of territory at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras scarcely portended the great future of the East India Company. The progress of the Company's arms need not be related here. The battle of Plassey (1757) and Buxar (1764) laid the ghost of the Mogul Empire, though the fiction of Mogul sovereignty was maintained till 1857. The last three emperors were pensioners of the British Crown; and Bahādur II, after upsetting his puppet-throne by joining in the Mutiny, died in exile at Rangoon in 1862.

A.H.		A.D.
932	Bābar, Zahir-al-din* . . . . .	1526
937	Humāyūn, Naṣir-al-din . . . . .	1530
963	Akbar, Jalāl-al-din . . . . .	1556
1014	Jahāngir, Nūr-al-din . . . . .	1605
1037	<i>Dāwar-Bakhsh</i> . . . . .	1627-8
1037	Shāh-Jahān, Shihāb-al-din . . . . .	1628
1068	<i>Murād-Bakhsh</i> (in Gujarāt) . . . . .	1658
1068-70	<i>Shujā'</i> (in Bengal) . . . . .	1658-60
1069	Aurangzib 'Ālamgīr, Muḥyi-al-din . . . . .	1659
1118	<i>A'zam Shāh</i> . . . . .	1707
1119-20	<i>Kām-Bakhsh</i> . . . . .	1708
1119	Shāh-'Ālam Bahādur Shāh I, Ḳuṭb-al-din . . . . .	1707
1124	Jahāndār, Mu'izz-al-din . . . . .	1712
1124	Farrukh-siyar . . . . .	1713
1131	Rafi'-al-darajāt, Shams-al-din . . . . .	1719
1131	Rafi'-al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II . . . . .	1719
1131	<i>Nikū-siyar</i> . . . . .	1719
1132	<i>Ibrāhīm</i> . . . . .	1720
1131	Moḥammad, Nāṣir-al-din . . . . .	1719
1161	Aḥmad . . . . .	1748
1167	'Ālamgīr II, 'Aziz-al-din . . . . .	1754
1173-4	<i>Shāh-Jāhan III</i> . . . . .	1759-60
1173	Shāh-'Ālam, Jalāl-al-din . . . . .	1759
1202-3	<i>Bīdar-Bakht</i> . . . . .	1788
1221	Moḥammad Akbar II . . . . .	1806
1253	Bahādur Shāh II . . . . .	1837
-1275	[Great Britain]	-1857

\* Bābar and most of his successors had the Arabic name Moḥammad in addition to their Persian names. In the list, the names of usurpers and pretenders are printed in italics.







A.H.

A.D.

1160—1311 118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN 1747—1893

The modern history of Afghānistān as an independent State begins in 1747. After the deposition of the Ghōrids, the country ceased to possess a dynasty of its own,\* and merely formed part of a larger kingdom. It became a province of the Īl-khāns of Persia, and then of the Timūrid empire; and after the establishment of the Moguls in India, it was sometimes part of their dominions and sometimes belonged to the Shāhs of Persia; or, more often, was divided between the two. Kābul and Kandahār were generally in the possession of the Moguls until after the death of Aurangzīb, whilst Herāt belonged to Persia. In 1737 Nādir Shāh, the Afshārid ruler of Persia, seized Kābul and Kandahār and made his memorable descent upon India. After his assassination in 1747 the Afghāns resolved to be independent of Persia, and chose Aḥmad Khān the chief of the Abdālī or Durrānī tribe to be their Shāh. The post of vezīr, or second man in the state, was conferred

\* The line of the Kart Maliks were a local exception at Herāt (p. 252).

upon Jamāl Khān the hereditary chief of the rival tribe of the Bārakzais. Henceforward for nearly a century this arrangement subsisted: the Shāh was a Durrānī and the Vezīr a Bārakzai.

Aḥmad Shāh reduced all Afghānistān, conquered Herāt and Khurāsān, invaded India repeatedly, occupied Dehli for a time, and annexed Kashmīr, Sind, and part of the Panjāb; but his Indian possessions gradually passed over to the growing power of the Sikhs, who had become masters of the Panjāb before the end of the 18th century. A massacre of the Bārakzais by Zamān Shāh, Aḥmad's grandson, instead of diminishing, increased the influence of the hereditary vezīrs, who exercised the chief power during the nominal reign of Maḥmūd Shāh and the early reign of Shāh Shujā'. Several attempts were made to oust them from their dominant position; but the blinding and murder of Faṭḥ Khān Bārakzai in 1818 was the signal for the deposition of the Durrānī dynasty, and after some years of anarchy Dost Moḥammad, the brother of the murdered Vezīr, took possession of the throne (1826), as the first Bārakzai Amīr of Afghānistān.

During the decline of the later Durrānīs the claim of Persia to the possession of Herāt had been pressed by force

of arms. Since its conquest by Aḥmad Shāh the city had been held by various Afghān princes, with little dependence upon the central government. In 1816 the Persians had attacked Herāt, but had been repulsed by Faṭḥ Khān the Bārakzai. In 1837, urged on by Russia, the Shāh of Persia again advanced upon the 'key of Afghānistān,' and again, after a ten months' siege, protracted by the splendid defence of Eldred Pottinger, was forced to retire (1838). When Dost Moḥammad showed signs of encouraging Russian overtures, the British Government of India, excited by the narrow escape of Herāt, and alarmed at the unfriendly attitude of the Amīr, declared war, and the Afghān campaigns and disasters of 1839-1842 ensued. Shāh-Shujā', the representative of the deposed Durrānīs, was in an evil day restored to the Amīrate, and Sir William Macnaghten was posted at Kābul as British Resident. Dost Moḥammad had surrendered and remained passive, but his son Akbar Khān continued the resistance of the Bārakzais. In Nov. 1841 Macnaghten and Burnes were treacherously murdered, and of the sixteen thousand British troops and camp followers who left Kābul under a safe-conduct only one escaped to tell the tale of slaughter. The massacre was avenged by Pollock's army



in 1842, and the Afghāns thenceforward, for nearly forty years, were allowed to manage their own internal affairs. Dost Moḥammad died in 1863, the subsidized ally of England; and the history of Afghānistān since his death has consisted chiefly in the struggles of his sons and grandsons for the throne. A second attempt to force a British Resident at Kābul upon the Amīr, as a check upon the envoys of Russia, led to the defeat and deposition of Shīr 'Alī, the murder of Cavagnari, and the campaigns of Stewart and Roberts in 1879-81. The Amīr 'Abd al-Raḥmān, then established by the British, has since, on the whole, succeeded in holding the mastery over his refractory subjects.

A. H.	DURRĀNĪS*	A. D.
1160	Aḥmad Shāh . . . . .	1747
1187	Timūr Shāh . . . . .	1773
1207	Zamān Shāh . . . . .	1793
1216	Shujā'-al-mulk (Shāh Shujā') . . . . .	1801
1216	Maḥmūd Shāh . . . . .	1801
1218	Shujā' (2nd reign) . . . . .	1803
1224	Maḥmūd (2nd reign; latterly at Herāt, to 1245) . . . . .	1809
1233	'Alī Shāh (at Kābul) . . . . .	1817
1233	Ayyūb Shāh (at Peshāwar and Kashmīr) . . . . .	1817
1245	Kāmrān (at Herāt, to 1258) . . . . .	1829
1255	Shujā' (3rd reign) . . . . .	1839
1258	Faṭḥ Jang (fled the same year) . . . . .	1842

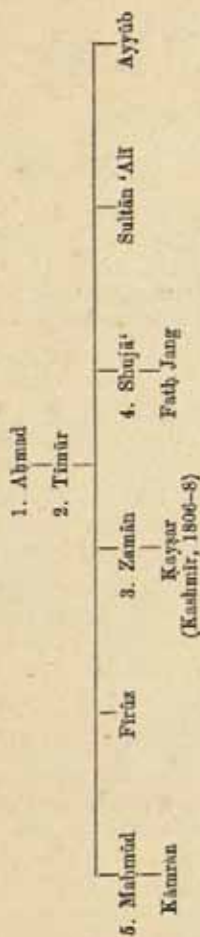
## BĀRAKZAIS

1242	Dost Moḥammad . . . . .	1826
1255-8	Shujā' restored . . . . .	1839-42
1280	Shīr Ali . . . . . (Afḍal and 'Azīm at Balkh and Kābul 1865-7)	1863
1296	Ya'qūb Khān . . . . .	1879
1296	'Abd-ul-Raḥmān Khān <i>regnant</i> . . . . .	1879

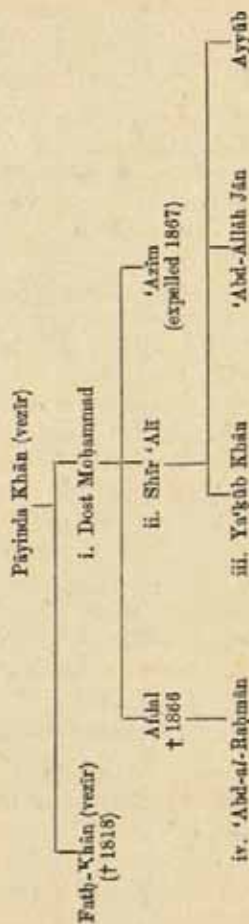
\* The list and pedigree of the Durrānīs is adapted from an article by M. Longworth Dames in the *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. viii. 325-63 (1888).

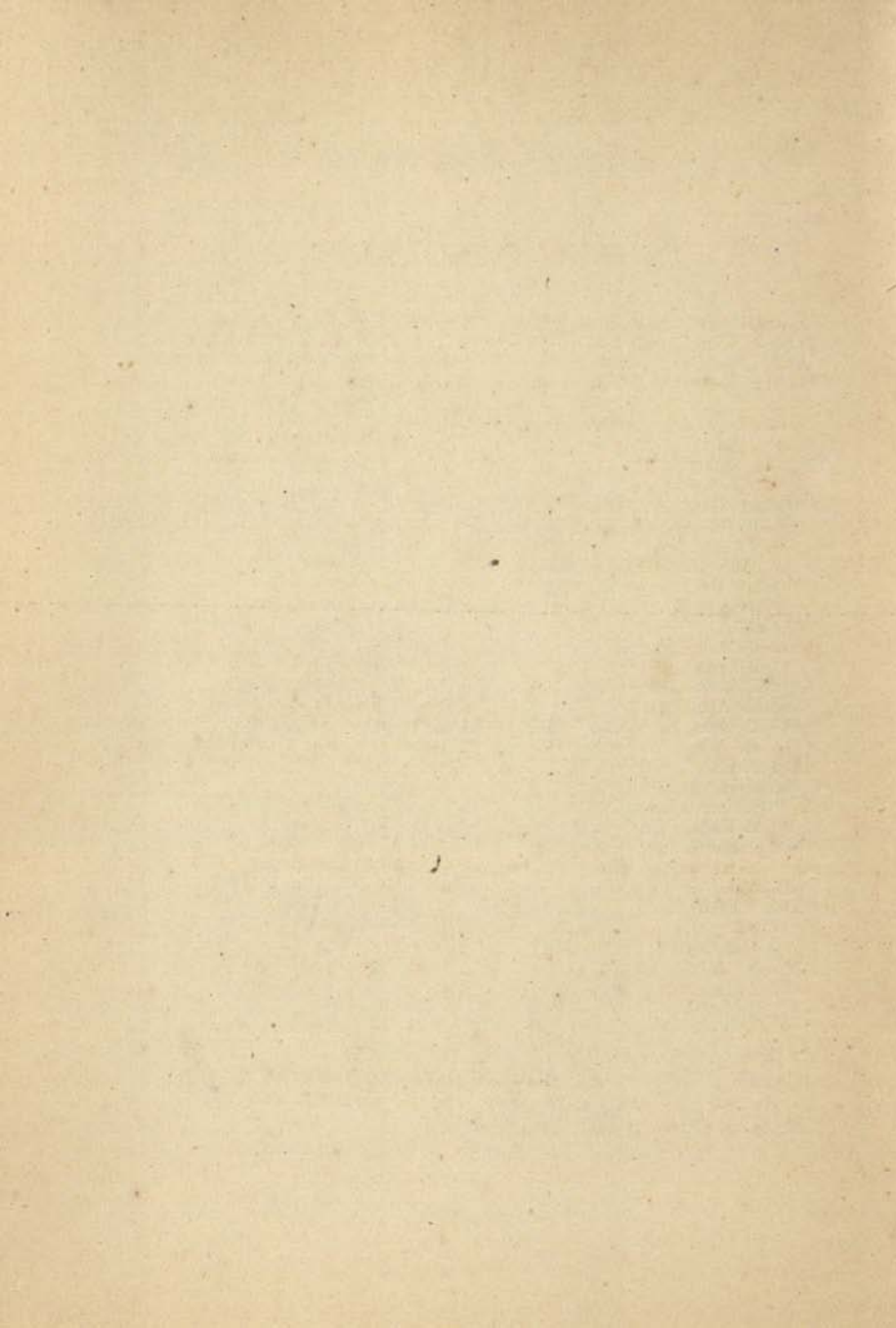


## DURRĀNĪS



## BĀRAKZAIS





## INDEX TO RULERS\*

- 'Abd-al-Hamīd, 'Othmānī, 195  
 Abāgā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Abak, *Bārid*, 161  
 'Abbād - Mu'tadid, 'Abbādid, 25  
 'Abbādid, 25; 20, 27, 42  
 'Abbās, uncle of Moḥammad, 3  
 'Abbās, *Khedives*, 85  
 'Abbās, *Safavids*, 259  
 'Abbās, *Zuray'īd*, 97  
 'Abbāsīd CALIPHS, 12, 13; 3, 6, 7, 19, 34, 36, 42, 60, 67, 68, 69, 74, 89, 109, 111, 123, 140, 161, 165, 188, 217, 286, 296  
 'Abbāsīd CALIPHS OF EGYPT, 3  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz Maṣṣūr, 'Amīrīd, 26  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Du'afid*, 125  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Ḥafīd*, 50  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Jānīd*, 276  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Marīnīd*, 57  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, 'Othmānī, 195  
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Shaybānīd*, 272  
 'Abd-al-Ḥakīm, *Marīnīd*, 57  
 'Abd-al-Ḥalīm, *Marīnīd*, 57  
 'Abdālīs see DURRĀNĪS  
 'Abd-al-Kādir, *Fa'furīd*, 91  
 'Abd-al-Karīm Sataḳ, *Ilak*, 135  
 'Abd-al-Karīm, *Khāṣṣand*, 280  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Aghlabīd*, 37  
 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravīd*, 41, 42  
 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil, *Almohad*, 47  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Fāṭimīd*, 71  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Hamdānīd (Yaman)*, 95  
 'Abd-Allāh Abū-l-Ḥayjā, *Hamdānīd of -Māṣīl*, 111  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*, 61  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Khiva*, 279  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Marīnīd*, 58  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Shaybānīd*, 271, 272  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Tūḥīrīd*, 128  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Timūrīd*, 268  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Zayrīd*, 25  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Fa'furīd*, 91  
 'Abd-Allāh, *Zayṣīd*, 91  
 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Shaybānīd*, 271  
 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Timūrīd*, 268  
 'Abd-al-Majīd, *Fāṭimīd*, 71  
 'Abd-al-Majīd, 'Othmānī, 195  
 'Abd-al-Malik, 'Amīrīd, 26  
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Ḥasanī Sharīf*, 61  
 'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Jahwarīd*, 25  
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Omayyad*, 9  
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Sāmānīd*, 132  
 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Almohad*, 45, 47  
 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Jānīd*, 275  
 'Abd-al-Murīn, *Shaybānīd*, 271  
 'Abd-al-Nabī, *Mahdīd*, 96  
 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Afghān*, 334  
 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 'Abd-al-Raḥmān, *Marīnīd*, 58

\* The first number refers to the dynastic list in which the name occurs. In the case of identical names the alphabetical order of the dynasties is followed. Where two or more identical names occur in the same dynasty, the dynastic name is put in the plural. Prefixed words like Abū-, Banū, Ibn, must be sought under the second name.

- 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Umayyads of Cordova*, 21; 6, 19, 20  
 'Abd-al-Rahmān Abū-Tāshfin, *Ziyānids*, 51  
 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznavids*, 289  
 'Abd-al-Razzāk, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 'Abd-al-Wahhāb, *Tahirid* (Yaman), 101  
 'Abd-al-Wāhid -Makhlu', *Almo-had*, 47  
 Abd-al-Wāhid -Rashīd, *Almo-had*, 47  
 'Abish, *Salgharid*, 173  
 Abū-Bakr, *Almoravid*, 42, 43  
 Abū-Bakr, 'Amirid, 26  
 Abū-Bakr, *Atabeg of Adharbijān*, 171  
 Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78  
 Abū-Bakr Shāh, *Dehli*, 300  
 Abū-Bakr I -Shadīd, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Abū-Bakr II Abū-Yahyā -Muta-wakkil, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Abū-Bakr Abū-Yahyā, *Marīnid*, 57  
 Abū-Bakr, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 4, 9  
 Abū-Bakr, *Salgharid*, 173  
 Abū-l-Hasan, *Nasrid*, 28  
 Abū-Sa'īd, see Sa'īd, Abū-ADHARNĪĀN, ATABEGS OF, 171; 160  
 -'Adid Abū-Mohammad 'Abd-Allāh, *Fātimid*, 71  
 'Adil, *Afsharid*, 259  
 -'Adil, *Almo-had*, 47  
 -'Adil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, (Saphadin), *Ayyūbid*, 76-8  
 -'Adil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 -'Adil Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 -'Adil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -'Adil -Musta'in ('Abbāsīd Caliph), *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -'Adil Badr-al-dīn Salāmish, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -'Adil, *Ortuqid*, 168  
 'Adil Khān, *Khāndīsh*, 315  
 'Adil Shāh, *Dehli*, 300  
 'ADIL SHAHs, 321; 318  
 Adsal, *Mongol*, 215  
 'Adud - al - dawla Abū - Shujā'  
 Khusrū, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 'Aḡud-al-dīn Alp-Arslān, *Seljuq*, 153; 151  
 -Aḡdal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Aḡdal, *Afghān*, 334  
 -Aḡdal - 'Abbās, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 AFGHĀNISTĀN, AMĪRS OF, 330-5  
 AFGHĀNS OF DEHLĪ, 300, 303  
 AFGHĀNS, SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 259  
 Afrāsiyāb, *Hazāraspids*, 175; 174  
 AFSHĀRIDS, SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 259  
 -Aghlab Abū-'Akāl, *Aghlabid*, 37  
 AGHLAIDS, 36, 37; 6, 70  
 Ahmad Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 257, 326, 330  
 Ahmad, *Aghlabid*, 37  
 Ahmad, *Āk-Kuyunlū*, 254  
 Ahmad, *Armenia*, 170  
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318  
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Ahmad Mu'izz-al-dawla, *Bucay-hid*, 141; 139, 140  
 Ahmad, *Dulafid*, 125  
 Ahmad, *Fātimid*, 71  
 Ahmad -Dhahabī, *Filālī Sharif*, 61  
 Ahmad, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Ahmad Sayyid, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Ahmad Shuykh, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Ahmad Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Ahmad I -Fadl, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Ahmad II -Mustansir, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Ahmad, *Hasanī Sharifs*, 61  
 Ahmad Nasrat-al-dīn, *Hazāraspid*, 175  
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muqtadir, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Ahmad -Musta'in, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Ahmad Abū-l-Fawāris, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 Ahmad Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135



- Aḥmad, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Aḥmad Sultān, *Jalayr*, 246-8  
 Aḥmad, *Mamlūks*, 83  
 Aḥmad -Mustanṣir, *Marinid*, 58  
 Aḥmad, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Aḥmad, *Mogul*, 328  
 Aḥmad Sultān, *Muḥaffarīd*, 248  
 Aḥmad -Maṣṣūr, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Aḥmad, *Othmānīd*, 195  
 Aḥmad, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Aḥmad, *Sāmānīd*, 132  
 Aḥmad, *Timūrīd*, 268  
 Aḥmad, *Tūlūnīd*, 68, 67  
 Aḥmad, *Wat'asīd*, 58  
 Akā Moḥammad, *Kājār*, 260  
 Akāl, Abū-, *Aghlabīd*, 37  
 Akatāy, *Khira*, 278  
 Akbar, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328;  
 305, 313, 315, 324-5  
 Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328  
 Akbarji, *Mongol*, 216  
 Akhras, *Selyūks of Syria*, 154  
 ĀK-KUYUNLĪ (*Turkomāns of the White Sheep*), 254  
 Āksunkur Badr-al-dīn, *Armen.*, 170  
 Alā-al-dawla Moḥammad, *Kāk-wayhid*, 145  
 Alā-al-dawla Mas'ūd, *Ghaznawīd*, 289; 288  
 Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanīd*, 318  
 Alā-al-dīn 'Alī, *Bengal*, 307  
 Alā-al-dīn Firōz, *Bengal*, 308  
 Alā-al-dīn Hosayn, *Bengal*, 308  
 Alā-al-dīn Jānī, *Bengal*, 306  
 Alā-al-dīn Mardān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Alā-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Dehlī*, 299; 297, 316  
 Alā-al-dīn Hosayn Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrīd*, 292  
 Alā-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Khawārizm Shāh*, 177; 176, 179  
 Alā-al-dīn, *Selyūks of Rūm*, 155  
 Alām-al-dīn Abū-l-Ma'ālī Kū-raysh, *Okaylīd*, 117  
 Alamgīr Aurangzīb, *Mogul*, 325-8  
 Alamgīr II, 'Azīz-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328  
 Alfonso of Leon, 27, 42  
 Algū, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Alī-Sa'id, *Almohad*, 47  
 Alī, *Almoravid*, 43  
 Alī-Afdal, *Ayyūbīd*, 78  
 Alī Kūehuk, *Begtinīd*, 165  
 Alī Fakhr-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 Alī 'Imād-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141; 136, 139  
 Alī, *Carmathian*, 91  
 Alī, *Chagatāy*, 242; 241  
 Alī Ikbal-al-dawla, *Denia*, 26  
 Alī-Zāhir, *Fātimīd*, 71  
 Alī, *Ghaznawīd*, 289  
 Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Hamdānīd*, 112  
 Alī Sayf-al-dawla, *Hamdānīd*, 112  
 Alī-Wahīd, *Hamdānīd* (Yam.), 95  
 Alī-Nāṣir, *Hamūdīd*, 21, 23  
 Alī, *Idrisīd*, 35  
 Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69  
 Alī Gürkān Jalāl-al-dīn, *Ilak*, 135  
 Alī, *Pir*, *Kart*, 252  
 Alī Khān, *Khāndēsh*, 315  
 Alī, *Mahdīd*, 96  
 Alī, *Mamlūks*, 81  
 Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Marinīd*, 57  
 Alī, Abū-, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Alī Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyadīd*, 119  
 Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Naṣrīd*, 28  
 Alī, *Okaylīd*, 117  
 Alī, *Orthodox Caliph*, 9; 3, 6  
 Alī Alpi, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Alī b. Rasūl, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Alī-Mujāhid, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Alī-Mu'ayyad, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 Alī Shams-al-dīn, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 Alī Abū-Kāmil, *Ṣulayhīd*, 92, 94  
 Alī, *Tāhīrīd* (Yaman), 101  
 Alī Murād, *Zand*, 260  
 Alī, *Zayrīd*, 40  
 Alī, *Zuray'id*, 97  
 Alī-A'azz-Murtadā, *Zuray'id*, 97  
 Alids, 127; 6, 33, 35, 129, 136  
 Ālim, *Khokānd*, 280  
 Ālim Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300



- Allāh Qulī, *Khiva*, 279  
 Almanzor (*Fatir*), 20  
 ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS), 45-47; 27, 39, 43, 49  
 ALMORAVIDES (-MURĀMIDS), 41-43; 20, 27, 39, 45  
 Alp-Arghū Shams-al-dīn, *Hazār-aspid*, 175  
 Alp-Arslān 'Aqūd-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153; 151  
 Alp-Arslān -Akhras, *Seljūk*, 154  
 Alpi, *Ortukids*, 168  
 Alptigin, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 285  
 Altamish, *Dehli*, 299; 295-6  
 Alwand, *Al-Kuyunli*, 254  
 -Amīn, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 Amīn Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Amīn Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 Amir-al-Umarā, 140, 171  
 -Amir, Abū-'Alī-Manṣūr, *Fātimid*, 71  
 'Amr Abū-Thābit, *Marinid*, 57  
 'Amir, *Tāhirids* (Yaman), 101  
 'AMIRIDS (Valencia), 25  
 'Amr b. -Layth, *Saffārid*, 130  
 Amurath, 'Othmānīd, 195; 185  
 Anax, *Burid*, 161  
 Anusha, *Khiva*, 279  
 Anūshīrwān, *Il-Khān*, 220  
 Anūshīrwān, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 Anushtigin, *Khacārizm Shāh*, 177  
 Arab chiefs, 89, 109 ff.  
 'Arab Shāh, *Gold Herd*, 230; 239  
 'Arab Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 Arām Shāh, *Dehli*, 299  
 Arank, *Khiva*, 279  
 Arank Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 Arghūn, *Il-Khān Persia*, 220; 174  
 Arikbuka, *Mongol*, 211  
 ARMENIA, *Suāhs or*, 170  
 Arpā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Arslān, *see* Alp-Arslān, Karā-Arslān, Kipī-Arslān, etc.  
 Arslān Tatar Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 Arslān Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135  
 Arslān Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 Arslān, *Seljūk of -Irāk*, 154  
 Arslān, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153  
 Arslān, *Zangids*, 163  
 As'ad, *Yāfurid*, 91  
 Ashraf, *Shāh of Persia*, 259  
 -Ashraf Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 -Ashraf Muḥaffar -al-dīn Mūsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 -Ashraf Chūpāni, 220  
 -Ashraf Sayf -al-dīn Bars-bey, *Mamlūk*, 83 [83]  
 -Ashraf Sayf -al-dīn Ināl, *Mamlūk*,  
 -Ashraf Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Ashraf Sayf -af -dīn Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Ashraf Kānshūh -Ghūrī, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Ashraf Salāh -al-dīn Khalil, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Ashraf 'Alā -al-dīn Kājūk, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Ashraf Nāṣir -al-dīn Sha'bān, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Ashraf Tūmān-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Ashraf Ismā'il, *Rasūlids*, 99  
 -Ashraf 'Omar, *Rasūlids*, 99  
 ATĀKES, 157 ff.  
 'Atiya Abū-Du'āba, *Mirdāsids*, 116  
 Atsiz, *Khacārizm Shāh*, 177  
 Aurangzib 'Alamgir, *Mogul*, 325-8  
 Avanak, *Khiva*, 278  
 -Awḥad Najm -al-dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Aybak, *Bengal*, 306  
 Aybak, *Ḳuṭb -al-dīn, Dehli*, 298; 294-5  
 Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 AYDIN AMIRS, 184-5  
 Aynān, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57  
 Ay-Timūr, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 Ayyūb Shāh, *Afghān*, 334  
 Ayyūb, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78, 80, 98  
 AYYŪBIDS, 74-79; 67, 80, 167, 170  
 AYYŪBIDS of the Yaman, 98  
 A'zam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307

- A'zam Shāh, *Mogul*, 328  
 'Azīm, *Afghān*, 334  
 -'Azīz Ghīyāth-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 -'Azīz 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 -'Azīz Abū-Manṣūr Nazār, *Fātimid*, 71  
 -'Azīz, *Hamādīd*, 40  
 - Azīz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83 [328  
 'Azīz-al-dīn 'Alamgīr II, *Mogul*,  
 'Azīz Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 230  
  
 BĀBAR, Zahir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328;  
 257, 298, 322  
 Bād of Kayfā, 118  
 Bādīs, *Hamādīd*, 40  
 Bādīs, *Zayrid*, 25, 40 [138  
 Badr Naṣīr-al-dīn, *Hasanwayhid*,  
 Badr-al-dīn Aksunkur, *Armen*, 170  
 Badr-al-dīn Lu'lu', *Zangid*, 162-3  
 Bahā-al-dawla Firūz, *Buwayhid*,  
 141, 117  
 Bahā-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Bahā-al-dawla, *Mazyadīd*, 119  
 Bahādūr Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 Bahādūr Shāh, *Bengal*, 306  
 Bahādūr Shāh Khidr, *Bengal*, 308  
 Bahādūr Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Bahādūr Shāh, *Khāndesh*, 315  
 Bahādūr Shāh, *Mogul*, 328; 327  
 Bahlōl Lōdī, *Dehlī*, 300  
 BAHMANIDS, 316-319  
 Bahrām Shāh, *Bengal*, 306  
 Bahrām Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Bahrām Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Bahrām, *Seljuk* of *Kirmān*, 153  
 BARRI MAMLŪKS, 80-82  
 Bajazet (Bāyazīd), 'Othmānī, 195;  
 184, 187, 266  
 Bakhtiyār Khaljī, *Bengal*, 306  
 Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 Bākī Moḥammad, *Jānīd*, 275  
 Balak, *Ortukid*, 167  
 Balban 'Izz-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170  
 Balban, *Bengal*, 306  
 Balban, *Dehlī*, 299; 296, 306n  
 Balkātin, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 176  
 BANŪ-Naṣr, etc. See NAṢRIDS, etc.  
 Baraka, *Golden Horde*, 230; 225  
 Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 BĀRAKZAYS, 334; 331-3  
 Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307  
 Barbarossa, *Khayr-al-dīn*, 49, 55,  
 189; *Urūj*, 55  
 Bargiyārūk Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljuk*, 153  
 BARID SHĀHS, 321; 318  
 Barqūk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83; 247  
 Bars-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Bātū, *Golden Horde*, 230; 208-9,  
 222-4, 226, 233, 238  
 Bāyān, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Bāyazīd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Bāyazīd, *Jalayr*, 248  
 Bāyazīd (Bajazet), 'Othmānī, 195;  
 184, 187, 266  
 Baybars, *Mamlūks*, 81  
 Baydū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Baysunkur, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 254  
 Beg Pālād, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 BEGTIGINIDS, 165  
 Begtimur Sayf-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170  
 BENGAL, GOVERNORS OF, 306  
 BENGAL, KINGS OF, 307  
 Berbers, 33, 39, 41, 70  
 Beys of Tunisia, 56  
 Bīdar-Bakht, *Mogul*, 328  
 Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Biliktu, *Mongol*, 216  
 Birdi-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224  
 Bīstūn, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 BLUE HORDE, 224, 230  
 Bōabdīl of Granada, 28; 27  
 Bodi, *Mongol*, 216  
 Bughra Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Bughra Khān Maḥmūd, *Ilak*, 135  
 Bughra Khān Hārūn, *Ilak*, 135  
 Bughra Shāh, *Bengal*, 306  
 Bujuḡha, *Khiva*, 278  
 Bulukkin, *Hamādīd*, 40  
 Bulukkin Yūsuf, *Zayrid*, 39, 40

- Bundukdāri Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Burāk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Burāk, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Burāk Hajīb, *Kutluğh Khān*, 179  
 Burhān Sultān, *Shaybānīd*, 272  
 BŪRIDS, 161  
 BURJĪ MAMLŪKS, 83  
 BUWAYHIDS, 139-144; 109, 112, 117, 118, 132, 136, 137, 138, 288  
 Būyān Kulī, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Buyantu, *Mongol*, 215  
 Būzūn, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Buzurg Hasan, *Jalayr*, 248  
  
 CALIPHS, 3-15; see 'ABBĀSĪD  
 CARMATHIANS, 90, 91, 126  
 Chagar Beg Dāwūd, *Seljūk*, 151, 287  
 CHAGATĀY KHĀNS, 241-2; 205, 210  
 Chaghratigin, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Chakra, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Charles Martel, 5  
 Charles V, 49, 55  
 Chintāy, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Chingiz Khān, *Mongol*, 215; 77, 177, 179, 202-4, 296  
 Chūpān, 218-220  
 Cid, 42  
 COKDOVA, OMAYYADS OF, 21, 22  
 COISAIRS, 49, 55-6  
 CRIMEA, KHĀNS OF, 236  
 Crusaders, 75-6, 80, 166-7  
  
 DĀMIGHĀNĪ, *Sarbaddārid*, 251  
 DĀNISHMANDIDS, 156  
 Dānishmandja, *Chagatāy*, 242; 241  
 Dārā, *Mogul*, 329  
 Dārā, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 Darwish, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Dāwar-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328  
 Dawlat Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 Dawlat Khān Lōdī, *Dehli*, 300  
 Dāwūd -Nāsir, *Ayyubid*, 78  
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308  
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313  
  
 Dāwūd Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315  
 Dāwūd, *Ortukids*, 168  
 Dāwūd, *Rasulid*, 99  
 Dāwūd Chagar Beg, *Seljūk*, 151, 287  
 Dāwūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154  
 Dayan, *Mongol*, 216; 213  
 Daylami, *Rassid Imām*, 102  
 DAYLAMIDS, see BUWAYHIDS  
 DEHLĪ, SULTĀNS OF, 299-301  
 Delbek, *Mongol*, 215  
 DENIA, KINGS OF, 26  
 Deys of Algiers, 56  
 Dhahabi, *Filālī Sharif*, 61  
 Dhū-l-Nūn, *Dānishmandid*, 156  
 DHŪ-L-NŪNIDS, 25  
 Dhū-l-Yamīdayn, *Tāhirid*, 128  
 Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, *Māhe*, 311  
 Dost, *Khiva*, 278  
 Dost Mohammad, *Afghān*, 331 4  
 Dragut (Totghūd), *Corsair*, 56, 189  
 Dubays, *Nūr-al-dawla Mazyad*, 119  
 Dukāk, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154  
 Dulaf, *Dulafid*, 125  
 Dulaf Abū-Kāsim, *Dulafid*, 125  
 DULAFIDS, 125  
 DURRĀNĪS, 330-5  
 Duwā Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Duwā Tīmūr, *Chagatāy*, 242  
  
 ELBEK, *Mongol*, 215  
 Engke Soriktu, *Mongol*, 215  
 Erdani, *Khokand*, 280  
  
 FADĀ'IL, Abū-l-, *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Fadl, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Fadl-Allāh, *Sarbaddārid*, 251  
 -Fāiz Abū-l-Kāsim 'Isā, *Fātimid*, 71  
 Fakhr-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Bucayhid*, 142  
 Fakhr-al-dīn Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Fakhr-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252  
 Fakhr-al-dīn Karā-Arslān, *Ortukids*, 168



-Fakih Muhammad, *Nagrid*, 28  
 Faraj, *Mamluk*, 83  
 Faramarz Zahir-al-din, *Kakwayhid*, 145  
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hasani Sharif*, 61  
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Fāris, Abū-, *Ma'inid*, 58  
 Fāris - Mutawakkil, *Marinid*, 58  
 Farrukh-nivar, *Mogul*, 328  
 Farrukhzād, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 FARUKI KINGS OF KHANDĀSH, 315  
 Fārūki Shāh, *Gujarat*, 313  
 Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Fath 'Alī, *Kājar*, 260  
 Fath Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 Fath, Abū-l-, *Zand*, 260  
 -Fātik, *Najāhid*, 92  
 Fātima, 60, 70  
 FĀTIMIDS, 70, 73; 39, 41, 67, 74, 112, 114, 118  
 Fawāris, Abū-l-, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 Fayd, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275  
 Fiḍā, Abū-l-, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 79  
 FILALI SHARIPS, 61  
 Firūz, Tāj-al-din, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Firūz Shāh, *Bengal*, 306  
 Firūz, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 Firūz Shāh, *Dehli*, 299  
 Fullād Sattūn Abū-Mansūr, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 GANGU, HASEN, *Bahmanid*, 316-8  
 Gaykhātū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Gegen, *Mongol*, 215  
 -Ghadanfūr, *Hamādanid*, 112  
 -Ghālib, *Nagrid*, 28  
 -Ghānī, *Nagrid*, 28  
 Gharāt, Abū-l-, *Zuray'id*, 97  
 Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Ghāzi, *Dānishmandid*, 156  
 Ghāzi Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 Ghāzi, *Zangid*, 163  
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275  
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Khiva*, 279  
 GHAZNAWIDS, 289; 7, 132, 137

Ghiyāth-al-din Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Ghiyāth-al-din 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306  
 Ghiyāth-al-din A'ṣam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Bahādur Shāh, *Bengal*, 306 [308]  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Jalāl Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Balban, *Dehli*, 299  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Taghlaq, *Dehli*, 300  
 Ghiyāth-al-din b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Tōktāmish, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Hasdraspid*, 175  
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Kart*, 252  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Pīr 'Alī, *Kart*, 252  
 Ghiyāth Shāh, *Mālewa*, 311  
 Ghiyāth-al-din Moḥammad, *Seljuq*, 183 [154]  
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Seljuqs of -Irāk*, 155  
 Ghiyāth-al-din, *Seljuqs of -Rūm*, 155  
 GHŌRIDS, 291-4; 176, 289  
 GHŌRIS (KINGS OF MĀLWA), 311  
 -Ghūrī, *Mamluk*, 83  
 Ghuzz, 183, 292  
 Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 GOLDEN HORDE KHĀNS, 222-231  
 GUJARĀT, KINGS OF, 312  
 Gumishtigin, *Dānishmandid*, 156  
 Gun-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215  
 Gürkān 'Alī, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 GURKHĀNS, 176, 293-4

HABBS, Zayrid, 25  
 HADSHI KINGS OF BENGAL, 308  
 -Hādī, *Abbāsid*, 12 [103]  
 -Hādī Moḥammad, *Imām of San'a*, 103  
 -Hādī - Mujīd, *Imām of San'a*, 103  
 -Hādī Najm-al-din Yahyā, *Rassid Imām*, 102

- Hādī Yāhyā, *Rassid*, 91, 102  
 -Hāfiz Abū-l-Maymūn 'Abd-al-Majid, *Fātimid*, 71  
 Hāfiz, *Kart*, 252  
 Hāfiz, Abū, *Almohad*, 47  
 Hāfiz, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 50  
 HAFSIDS, 49, 50; 46, 55  
 Hajjāj, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Hājji, *Mamlūks*, 81  
 Hājji Girāy, *Krim*, 235, 237  
 Hājji Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 -Hakam I, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21  
 -Hākim Abū -'Alī -Manṣūr, *Fātimid*, 71  
 Hākim Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 -Hamās, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95  
 HAMDĀNIDS, 111-113  
 HAMDĀNIDS of the Yaman, 95  
 HAMĪD AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Hammād, *Hammādīd*, 40  
 HAMMĀDIDS, 39, 40; 43, 46  
 Hammū, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51  
 HAMMŪDIDS, 23, 24, 25; 21  
 Hamza, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 254  
 Hārūn a'-Rashid, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 36  
 Hārūn, *Ilak Khāns*, 135  
 Hārūn, *Tulunīd*, 68  
 -Hasan, *Alids*, 127, 129  
 Hasan, Uzun, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 253-5  
 Hasan Gāngū, *Bahmanīd*, 316-8  
 Hasan Rukn-al-dawla, *Bucayhid*, 142; 139  
 Hasan Kūchuk Chūpānī, 219, 220  
 Hasan, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 -Hasan, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Hasan Buzurg, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 220, 246  
 -Hasan, *Idrīdīd*, 35  
 -Hasan Tigīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 -Hasan Abū -'Alī, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Hasan Kulī, *Khiva*, 278  
 Hasan 'Alī, *Karā-Kuyunlū*, 253  
 -Hasan Abū-Hāshim, *Rassid*, 102  
 -Hasan Nāsir - al - dawla, *Hamdānīd*, 112  
 Hasan -Mustanṣir, *Hammūdīd*, 23  
 -Hasan -Dāmighānī, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 -Hasan, *Zayrid*, 40  
 Hasan, Abū-l-, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69  
 HASANĪ SHARĪFS, 61  
 HASANWAYHIDS, 138  
 Hātim, *Hamdānīd* (Yaman), 95  
 Haydar -Kaṣṣāb, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 Haydar Tora, *Mangit*, 277  
 Haydar, *Safavid*, 255  
 Hazam, Abū-l-, *Jahwarīd*, 25  
 HAZĀRASPID, 174, 175  
 Hasan, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 Himyar, Abū-Sabā, *Ṣulayhid*, 94  
 Hishām, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 Hishām, *Hamdānīd* (Yaman), 95  
 Hishām, *Omayyad*, 9; 19  
 Hishām, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21  
 HOẒĪNE KHĀNS, TURKISTĀN, 134-5  
 HORDE, GOLDEN, 222-231  
 Hosayn Shāh, *Bengal*, 308  
 Hosayn Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292  
 -Hosayn, *Hamdānīd*, 112  
 Hosayn, *Hazāraspid*, 175 [253  
 Hosayn, *Jalayr*, 248; 219, 246,  
 Hosayn Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309  
 Hosayn, *Mangit*, 277  
 -Hosayn, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Hosayn, *Safavid*, 259, 257  
 Hosayn, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153  
 -Hosayn (Vezir), *Ziyādīd*, 91  
 HŪDIDS, 26; 43 [217  
 Hūlāgū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220;  
 Humāyūn Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanīd*, 318  
 Humāyūn Nāsir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328; 257, 298, 305, 323  
 Ḥusām-al-dawla -Muḥallad, *'Okay-ūid*, 117  
 Ḥusām-al-dīn Timurtāsh, *Ortuḳīd*, 168  
 Ḥusām - al - dīn Yūluḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳīd*, 168  
 Hūshang Shams-al-dīn, *Hazāraspid*, 175  
 Hūshang Alp Khān, *Māwca*, 311



IBISAN, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Ibrāhīm, *Aghlabids*, 37  
 Ibrāhīm, *Almoravid*, 43  
 Ibrāhīm Zahir-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170  
 Ibrāhīm, *Bukhārā*, 239  
 Ibrāhīm, *Dānishmandid*, 156  
 Ibrāhīm Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300, 322  
 Ibrāhīm, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Ibrāhīm I Abū - Ishāk, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Ibrāhīm II - Mustanşir, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Ibrāhīm Abū-Tāhir, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Ibrāhīm, *Hamdānid*, 111  
 Ibrāhīm Tufghāj, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharķi, *Shams-al-dīn, Jaunpūr*, 309  
 Ibrāhīm, *Khedive*, 85; 67  
 Ibrāhīm Abū-Sālim, *Marinid*, 57  
 Ibrāhīm, *Mogul*, 328  
 Ibrāhīm, 'Okaylid, 117  
 Ibrāhīm, *Omayyad*, 9  
 Ibrāhīm, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Ibrāhīm, 'Othmānid, 195  
 Ibrāhīm, *Sāmānid*, 132  
 Ibrāhīm, *Timūrid*, 175  
 Ibrāhīm, *Ya'furid*, 91  
 Ibrāhīm, *Ziyādid*, 91  
 Idiku, 229  
 Idris - Ma'mūn, *Almoḥad*, 47  
 Idris, *Hammūdid*, 23  
 Idris, *Idrisids*, 35; 6  
 IDRISIDS, 35; 6, 36, 39, 70  
 'Ikbāl-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 IKHSHĪDIDS, 69; 6, 67, 112  
 Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Bengal*, 307  
 Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Yūsbak, *Bengal*, 306  
 ILAK KHĀNS OF TURKISTĀN (HÖEHE), 134, 135; 132, 286  
 İl-Arslān, *Khvārizm Shāh*, 177  
 Ilbān, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Ilbars, *Khiva*, 278, 279  
 Ilchikadāy, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 İldigiz Shams-al-dīn, *Atābeg of Adhārbājan*, 171

İl-Ghāzī, *Ortukids*, 166-8  
 İL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA, 217-221;  
 156, 172, 205, 330  
 İltazar, *Khiva*, 279  
 İltutmish, *Dehli*, 299  
 İlyās Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 'Imād-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Bucayhid*, 141; 136, 139  
 'Imād-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 'Imād - al - dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 'Imād-al-dīn Abū-Kālīnjār - Marzubān, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 'Imād - al - dīn 'Alī Alpī - 'Adil, *Ortukid*, 168  
 'Imād-al-dīn Kāward, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153  
 'Imād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163  
 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī, *Zangids*, 163  
 'Imād-al-mulk, *Berār*, 318  
 'IMĀD SHĀHS, 320; 318  
 Imām Kulī, *Jānid*, 275  
 İMĀMS, the Twelve, and the Seven, 72, 255  
 İMĀMS OF SA'DA AND SAN'Ā, 102-3  
 'Imrān, *Zuray'id*, 97  
 İnāl, *Mamluk*, 83  
 İnāyat Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 İnjū, 245, 249  
 İrān Shāh, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153  
 'İsā, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 'İsā, *Fatimid*, 71  
 'İsā, *Ortukid*, 168  
 İsfandiyār, *Khiva*, 279  
 İsfandiyār, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 İshāk, *Almoravid*, 43  
 İshāk, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 286  
 İshāk Akā Niyāz, *Khiva*, 279  
 İshāk Abū-l-Jaysh, *Ziyādid*, 91  
 İshāk, Abū-, İnjū, 245, 249  
 Iskandar, *Karā-Kuyunli*, 253  
 Iskandar, *Shaybānid*, 271  
 İslām Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 İslām Shāh, *Dehli*, 300  
 İsmā'il, *Ayyūbids*, 78, 79, 98

- Ismā'il, *Būrid*, 161  
 Ismā'il -Zāfir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25  
 Ismā'il, *Fātimids*, 71  
 Ismā'il -Samīn, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 Ismā'il, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Ismā'il, *Khedive*, 84, 85  
 Ismā'il -Sāliḥ, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Ismā'il, *Naṣrīds*, 28  
 Ismā'il, *Rasūlīds*, 99  
 Ismā'il, *Safavids*, 259; 245, 254-6  
 Ismā'il, *Sāmānid*, 132  
 Ismā'il -Sāliḥ, *Zangid*, 163  
 Ismā'il Kuṭb-al-dīn, 170  
 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306  
 'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 'Izz-al-dawla 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljuks of -Rum*, 155  
 'Izz-al-dīn A'zam-al-mulk, *Bengal*, 306  
 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Armenia*, 170  
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Bengal*, 306  
 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Zangids*, 163  
 'Izz-al-dīn Shirān, *Bengal*, 306  
 'Izz-al-dīn Tughril Tughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 JABAR Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Ja'far, *Zand*, 260  
 Jahāndār, *Mogul*, 328  
 Jahāngīr, *Āk-Kuyuntū*, 254  
 Jahāngīr Nūr-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328  
 Jahān-Shāh, *Karā-Kuyuntū*, 253  
 Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292  
 Jahān-Tīmūr, *Īl-Khān*, 220  
 Jahwar Abū-l-Ḥazam, 25  
 JAHWARIDS, 25  
 Jakmak, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Jalāl-al-dawla Naṣr, *Mi'dāsīd*, 115  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Faṭḥ Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mas'ūd Malik Jānī, *Bengal*, 306  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Firūz, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Īlak Khān*, 135  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Moḥammad Shāh, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbartī, *Khawārizm Shah*, 177; 208, 296  
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *see Akbar, Mogul*  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarid*, 250  
 Jalāl-al-dīn Malik Shāh, *Seljuks*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176  
 JALAYRS, 246-248; 219, 220  
 Jamāl-al-dawla Farrukh-zād, *Ghaznawid*, 289  
 Jamāl-al-dīn Moḥam., *Būrid*, 161  
 Jān, 273-4  
 Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Jānī, *Bengal*, 306  
 Jānī-Beg Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224  
 Jānī-Beg Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 JĀNIDS (ASTRAKHĀN), 274  
 -Jāshankīr, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 JAUNPŪR, KINGS OF, 309  
 Jawhar, 70  
 Jaysh Abū-l-'Asākīr, *Tūlūnid*, 68  
 Jaysh, Abū-l-, *Ziyādid*, 91  
 Jayyāsh, *Najāhid*, 92  
 Jingishay, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Jiyaghatu, *Mongol*, 215  
 John, St., *Knights of*, 56, 188  
 Jūjī, *Mongol*, 205, 222 ff.  
 Juvanmard 'Alī, *Shaybānid*, 272  
 KĀBŪS Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 -Kādi, *Āmirid*, 26  
 -Kādir, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Kādir, *Āmirid*, 26  
 -Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25  
 Qadr Khān, *Bengal*, 306



Kādr Khān, *Ilak Khāns*, 135  
 Kāfūr Abū-l-Misk, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 -Kāhīr, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Kāid, *Hammādīd*, 40  
 -Kā im, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Kā'im Abū-l-Kāsim Moḥammad,  
*Fātimīd*, 71  
 Kā'imāz, 165  
 Kaip, *Khiva*, 279  
 Kāit-Bey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 KĀJĀRS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 260  
 KĀKWAYHIDS, 145  
 Kal, *Khiva*, 278  
 Kalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Kalīm-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanīd*, 318  
 Kālīnjār, Abū-, *Buwayhids*, 141  
 Kām-Bukhsh, *Mogul*, 328  
 Kamāl-al-dawla Shīrīzād, *Ghaz-  
 navīd*, 289  
 Kamar-al-dīn Tamar, *Bengal*,  
 -Kāmil Moḥammad, *Ayyūbīd*, 77,  
 78; 167  
 -Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn-Sha'bān, *Mam-  
 lūk*, 81  
 Kāmil, Abū-, *Okayīd*, 117; *Maz-  
 yādīd*, 119; *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Kamrān, *Afghān*, 334  
 Kānšūh, *Mamlūks*, 83  
 Kaplan Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 Karā-Arslān, *Ortukīd*, 168  
 Karā-Arslān, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153  
 Karā-dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 Karā-Hūlāgū, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 KARĀ-KUYUNLĪ (Turkomāns of the  
*Black Sheep*), 253; 167  
 Karā-Moḥammad, *K-Kuyunlī*, 253  
 Karā-Yūluk, *Ak-Kuyunlī*, 254  
 Karā-Yūsuf, *K-Kuyunlī*, 253; 247  
 KARAMĀN AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Karārānī Sulaymān, *Bengal*, 308  
 KARĀSTĪ AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Karbukā, 117  
 Karīm Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Karīm Khān, *Zand*, 260  
 KARMAṬHIANS, 90, 91, 126  
 KARMIYĀN AMĪRS, 184-5

KART MALIKS, 252; 245, 294  
 KASHMĪR, KINGS OF, 304, 311n  
 -Kāsim, *Dulafīd*, 125  
 -Kāsim -Ma'mūn, *Hammūdīd*, 21-3  
 -Kāsim -Wāthik, *Hammūdīd*, 25  
 Kāsim, *Kazimof*, 234  
 -Kāsim -Manšūr, *San'ā*, 103  
 -Kāsim -Manšūr, *Rassīd*, 102  
 -Kāsim -Mukhtār, *Rassīd*, 102  
 Kāsim -Rassī Tarjumān-al-dīn,  
*Rassīd Imām*, 102  
 Kāsim, Abū-l-, *Ikhshidīd*, 69  
 Kāsim, *Mongol*, 229  
 -Kaṣṣāb, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 Kāwām-al-dawla, *Buwayhīd*, 141  
 Kāwām-al-dawla Karbukā, 117  
 Kāward Beg 'Imād-al-dīn Karā-  
 Arslān, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153  
 Kaydū, *Mongol*, 209, 212  
 Kay-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306  
 Kay-Kāwus 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljuks  
 of -Rūm*, 155  
 Kay -Khusru Ghiyāth - al - dīn,  
*Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155  
 Kay-Kubād, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Kay-Kubād 'Alā-al-dīn, *Seljuks of  
 -Rūm*, 155  
 Kazan, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Khāghān, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Khālid, Abū-l-Bakā, *Ḥafṣīd*, 50  
 KHALĪFA, 3; see CALIPHS  
 Khalīl, *Ak-Kuyunlī*, 254  
 Khalīl, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Khalīl, *Timūrid*, 268  
 Khaljī, Moḥammad Bakhtiyār,  
*Bengal*, 306  
 KHALJIS, SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ, 299,  
 302; 296-7  
 KHALJIS, KINGS OF MĀLWA, 311  
 KHĀNDESH, KINGS OF, 315  
 Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa, 49, 55, 189  
 KHEDIVES, 84, 85  
 Khidr Khān, *Dehlī*, 300  
 Khidr, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Khidr Khān, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 KHIVA, KHĀNS OF, 278; 239

- KHOĠAND, KHĀNS OF, 280  
 Khubilāy, *Mongol*, 215; 211, 212  
 Khudabanda Moḥammad, *Ṣafavīd*, 259  
 Khudāyār, *Khoḡand*, 280  
 Khumārawayh, *Tālūnīd*, 68  
 Khūshkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Khusrū, *Buwayhīds*, 141  
 Khusrū Firūz Abū-Naṣr -Raḥīm, *Buwayhīd*, 141  
 Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznavīd*, 289  
 Khusrū Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznavīd*, 289  
 Khusrū Sultān, *Shaybānīd*, 272  
 Khwājā-Jahān, *Jauṣpūr*, 309  
 KHWĀRIZM SHĀHS, 176-178; 171-2, 204, 217, 294-6  
 Kibak, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Kibak, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Kildī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Kilij-Arslān, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155  
 Kilij Taḡhāj Khān, *Ilak*, 135  
 Kīrwāsh, *Okayīd*, 117  
 Kirmān Shāh, *Seljuks*, 163  
 Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 KIZIL-AḤMADLĪ AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān, *Atābeg of Adharbijān*, 171  
 Köchkünji, *Shaybānīd*, 271  
 Koirijak, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 KRIM KHĀNS, 233-236  
 Krim Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 Kubācha, *Nāṣir-al-dīn*, 294-5  
 Kubla Khān, 212  
 Kūchi, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Kūchuk Moḥammad, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229  
 Kudang, *Mongol*, 216  
 Kūjūk, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Kūkburi Muzaḥḥar -al-dīn, *Beg-tigīnīd*, 165  
 Kūli, *Chagatāy*, 242; *Jānīds*, 275; *Khiva*, 278  
 Kūlnā, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Kuluk, *Mongol*, 215  
 Kunjuk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Kurds, 74, 138  
 Kushala, *Mongol*, 215  
 Kuṭb al-dawla Aḥmad, *Ilak*, 135  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak, *Dehlī*, 299; 294-5  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Mubārak, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī, *Ortukīd*, 168  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Sukmān, *Ortukīd*, 168  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Mōdūd, *Zangīd*, 163  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Moḥamm. Zangīd, 163  
 Kuṭb-al-dīn Ismā'īl, 170  
 KUṬB SHĀHS, 321; 318  
 KUTLUGH KHĀNS, 179, 180  
 Kutlugh Khātūn, 179  
 Kutlugh Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Kutlugh Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 Kuṭuz, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Kuyuk, *Mongol*, 215; 208-9  
 LĀJĪN, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Lamtuna Berbers, 41, 42  
 Layth, *Ṣaffārid*, 129  
 Lingdan, *Mongol*, 216  
 Lōdīs, 300  
 Lu'lu Badr-al-dīn, *Zangīd*, 162-3  
 Luṭf 'Alī, *Zand*, 260  
 Luṭf-Allāh *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 MA'ADD, *Fāṭimīds*, 71  
 Maghrawa Berbers, 39  
 -Mahdī, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Mahdī Moḥammad, *Almoḥad*, 45  
 -Mahdī Abū-Moḥammad 'Obayd-Allāh, *Fāṭimīd*, 70, 71  
 -Mahdī, *Hammūdīd*, 23, 25  
 -Mahdī, *Imāms of Ṣan'ā*, 103  
 -Mahdī, *Rassīd Imāms*, 102  
 -Mahdī, *Mahdīd*, 96



- Mahdī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 MAHDIDS, 96  
 Maḥmūd, *Afghān*, 334; 331  
 Maḥmūd, *Afghān Shāh of Persia*, 259; 257  
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318  
 Maḥmūd, *Bengal*, 306  
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307-8  
 Maḥmūd Shihāb-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161  
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300  
 Maḥmūd, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 286-8, 291  
 Maḥmūd, *Ghōrid*, 294  
 Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Maḥmūd, *Ilak Khāns*, 135  
 Maḥmūd Ghāzān, *Il-Khān*, 220  
 Maḥmūd Shāh Injū, 245, 249  
 Maḥmūd Shāh, *Jauṣpūr*, 309  
 Maḥmūd Sultān, *Khwarizm*, 177  
 Maḥmūd Shāh Khalji, *Mālwa*, 311  
 Maḥmūd, *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Maḥmūd, *Mongol*, 210, 265  
 Maḥmūd, *Muzaffarid*, 250  
 Maḥmūd -Sālih, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Maḥmūd, *Othmānīs*, 195; 193  
 Maḥmūd Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154; 167  
 Maḥmūd Nāsir-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153  
 Maḥmūd, *Timūrids*, 268  
 Maḥmūd, *Zangids*, 163  
 Maḥmūdak, *Kazan*, 234  
 Majd-al-dawla Abū-Tālib Rustam, *Buwayhid*, 142; 145 [163]  
 Majd-al-dīn 'Isā -Zāhir, *Ortukid*,  
 -Majid Moḥammad, *San'ā*, 103  
 -Makhlū, *Almohad*, 47  
 Makḥsūd Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 Malik Rājā, *Khāndesh*, 315  
 Malik Shāh Jalāl-al-dīn, *Seljuks*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176  
 Malik Shāh Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154  
 Malik Shāh, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155  
 Malla, *Khoḡand*, 280  
 MĀLWA, *KINGS OF*, 310, 311  
 Mamāy, 227  
 MAMLŪK SULTĀNS, 80-85; 77, 101, 217, 226  
 -Ma'mūn, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 123  
 -Ma'mūn, *Almohad*, 47  
 -Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25  
 -Ma'mūn, *Hammūdīd*, 21, 23  
 Ma'n, *Hamdānid (Yaman)*, 95  
 Manchus, 214  
 Mandaghol, *Mongol*, 216  
 Mangbarti Jalāl-al-dīn, *Khwarizm Shāh*, 177; 208, 296  
 MANGITS, 277  
 Mangli Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 Mangū, *Mongol*, 215; 211  
 Mangū-Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 230; 233, 238-9  
 -Manşūr, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Manşūr, *Amirid*, 26  
 -Manşūr, *Armenia*, 170  
 -Manşūr Moḥammad, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 -Manşūr Ismā'il, *Fātimid*, 71  
 -Manşūr, *Fātimids*, 71  
 -Manşūr, *Hammādīd*, 40  
 -Manşūr, *Imāms of San'ā*, 103  
 -Manşūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Manşūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr 'Alā-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr Nūr-al-dīn-'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr Sayf - al - dīn Qalā'ūn, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr Ḥusām - al - dīn - Lājīn, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr Salāh-al-dīn-Moḥammad, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Manşūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Manşūr, *Marwānid*, 118  
 Manşūr, *Bāhā - al - dawla Abū-Kāmil, Mazyadīd*, 119  
 Manşūr Shāh, *Muzaffarid*, 250  
 -Manşūr, *Najāhid*, 92



- Manšūr (Almanzor), 20  
 -Manšūr Ahmad, *Ortuqid*, 168  
 -Manšūr Ortuğ-Arslan, *Ortuqid*, 168  
 -Manšūr 'Abd-Allāh, *Rassid*, 102  
 -Manšūr 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 -Manšūr 'Omar, *Kasūlid*, 99  
 -Manšūr, *Sāmānids*, 132  
 -Manšūr Sabā, *Šulayhid*, 94  
 -Manšūr Tāj - al - dīn 'Abd - al Wahhāb, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101  
 -Manšūr, *Tojibid*, 26  
 -Manšūr, *Zayrid*, 40  
 -Manšūr, *Zuray'id*, 97  
 -Manuchahr, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 -Mardān, *Bengal*, 306  
 -Mardāwīj, *Ziyārid*, 136, 137  
 -Mardūd, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 -MARĪNIDS, 57-59; 47, 51  
 -Marjān (*Vezir*), *Ziyādid*, 91  
 -Marwān, *Omayyads*, 9  
 -Marwān, Abū-, *Hasani Sharīfs*, 61  
 -MARWĀNIDS, 118  
 -Marzubān, *Bucayhids*, 141  
 -Masmuda Berbers, 42, 45  
 -Mas'ūd Yūsuf, *Ayyubid*, 98  
 -Mas'ūd, *Bengal*, 306  
 -Mas'ūd Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299  
 -Mas'ūd, *Ghaznavids*, 289  
 -Mas'ūd, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 -Mas'ūd Wajih-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 -Mas'ūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljuq of -Irāk*, 154; 160; of -Rum, 155  
 -Mas'ūd, *Zangids*, 163  
 -MAS'UD, BANU, 97  
 -Ma'sūm Shāh Murād, *Mangit*, 277  
 -MAZYADIDS, 119, 120  
 -Miknasa Berbers, 39  
 -Ming, 213  
 -Mirān Moḥammad Shāh Fārūki, *Gujarāt and Khāndesh*, 313, 315  
 -MIRDĀSIDS, 114, 115  
 -Misk, Abū-l-, Kāfūr, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 -Mo'āwiya, *Omayyads*, 9; 3  
 -Mōdūd, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 -Mōdūd, *Ortuqid*, 168  
 -Mōdūd, *Zangid*, 163  
 -MOGUL EMPERORS, 328; 298, 305, 313, 315, 322-7  
 -Moḥammad, the Prophet, 3, 188  
 -Moḥammad, *'Abbāsids*, 25  
 -Moḥammad, Dost, *Afghān*, 331-4  
 -Moḥammad, *Aghlabids*, 37  
 -Moḥammad, *Āk-Kuyunlī*, 254  
 -Moḥammad, *'Alid*, 127  
 -Moḥammad b. Tūmart, *Almohad*, 45  
 -Moḥammad -Nāṣir, *Almohad*, 47  
 -Moḥammad -Mansūr, *Armenia*, 170  
 -Moḥammad -Pahlawān Jahān, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171  
 -Moḥammad, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78  
 -Moḥammad Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318  
 -Moḥammad Šūr, *Bengal*, 308  
 -Moḥammad, *Būrid*, 161  
 -Moḥammad, *Chaghtāy*, 242  
 -Moḥammad Gumishtigin, *Dānish-mandid*, 156 [316  
 -Moḥammad Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299, 300,  
 -Moḥammad b. Taghlaq, *Dehlī*, 300; 297, 316  
 -Moḥammad, *Fātimid*, 71  
 -Moḥammad, *Filālī Sharīfs*, 61  
 -Moḥammad, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 -Moḥammad b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292-4  
 -Moḥammad Būlak, *Gold. Horde*, 230  
 -Moḥammad Karīm, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 -Moḥammad Kūchuk, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229  
 -Moḥammad, *Hafsid*, 50  
 -Moḥammad, *Hamdānid*, 111  
 -Moḥammad -Mahdī, *Ḥammūdids*, 23, 25 [23  
 -Moḥammad -Musta'li, *Ḥammūdids*,  
 -Moḥammad, *Hasanī Sharīfs*, 61  
 -Moḥammad, *Idrīsīd*, 35  
 -Moḥammad, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 -Moḥammad, *Il-Khān*, 220  
 -Moḥammad Abū-l-Walid, *Jah-wariid*, 25  
 -Moḥammad Shāh, *Jaupūr*, 309  
 -Moḥammad, *Kājār*, 260; 258

Mohammad 'Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja'far, *Kakwayhid*, 145  
 Mohammad Amīn, *Kazan*, 234  
 Mohammad, Ulugh, *Kazan*, 234-5  
 Mohammad Mirān, *Khāndēsh*, 313, 315  
 Mohammad 'Alī, *Khedive*, 84, 85; 67  
 Mohammad Raḥīm, *Khiva*, 275,  
 Mohammad 'Alī, *Khokand*, 280  
 Mohammad 'Omar, *Khokand*, 280  
 Mohammad 'Alā-al-dīn, *Khucārizm Shāh*, 177; 176, 179  
 Mohammad Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Khucārizm Shāh*, 177  
 Mohammad Girāy, *Krim*, 236  
 Mohammad, *Kutluḡh Khāns*, 179  
 Mohammad Ghazūi, *Mālwa*, 311  
 Mohammad, *Mamlūks*, 81, 83  
 Mohammad, *Marīnds*, 57-8  
 Mohammad, *Mazyadīd*, 119  
 Mohammad Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328  
 Mohammad Nāsir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328  
 Mohammad, *Muzaffarīd*, 250; 249  
 Mohammad, *Nagrids*, 28  
 Mohammad, 'Oḡaylīd, 116  
 Mohammad, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 Mohammad, 'Ortūḡīd, 168  
 Mohammad, 'Othmānīs, 195; 185-7  
 Mohammad, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Mohammad, *Salgharīds*, 173 [259  
 Mohammad Khudabanda, *Safavid*,  
 Mohammad Ghiyath-al-dīn, *Seljūḡ*, 153; 166  
 Mohammad Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūḡs of Kirmān*, 153  
 Mohammad, *Seljūḡs of -'Irāk*, 154  
 Mohammad, *Shaybānīd*, 271; 239  
 Mohammad Kāsim, *Sind*, 283  
 Mohammad, *Tāhīrīd*, 128  
 Mohammad, *Wat'asīds*, 58  
 Mohammad, *Ya'furīds*, 91  
 Mohammad 'Alī, *Zand*, 260  
 Mohammad, *Zangīd*, 163  
 Mohammad, *Ziyādīd*, 91  
 Mohammad, *Zuray'īds*, 97

Mohammad, Abū-, *Khiva*, 279  
 Molon, *Mongol*, 215  
 MONGOLS, 199-242; 3, 7, 77, 155, 172, 174, 177, 179, 183, 296;  
 see MOGULS  
 -Murayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Mu'ayyad Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Mu'ayyad Najāh, *Najāhīd*, 92  
 -Mu'ayyad, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 -Mu'ayyad Dāwūd, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 -Ma'ayyad -Hosayn, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 -Mu'ayyad Moḥammad, *San'ā*, 103  
 -Mu'ayyad, *Sarbadārīd*, 251  
 Mu'ayyid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 -Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā, *Ayyūbīd*, 78  
 -Mu'azzam Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbīd*, 77, 78, 98  
 Mubārak Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Mubārak Mirān, *Khāndēsh*, 315  
 Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Mubārak Shāh, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Mubārak Shāh, *Dekli*, 299, 300  
 Mubārak Shāh, *Jaunpūr*, 309  
 Mubārīz-al-dīn, *Muzaffarīd*, 250  
 -Mufaddal Moḥammad, *Rasūlīd*, 99  
 Muṣṭafī, 126  
 MUGHAL, see MOGUL  
 Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūḡs of -'Irāk*, 154; of Kirmān, 153 [306  
 Mughith-al-dīn Tughril, *Bengal*,  
 Muḥassin, *Hammādīd*, 40  
 -Muhtadī, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Muḥyi-al-dīn, *Seljūḡs Kirmān*, 153  
 Mu'in-al-dawla Sukmānī, *Ortūḡīd*, 168; 166  
 Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūḡs of -'Irāk*, 154  
 -Mu'izz Abū - Tamīm Ma'add, *Fātimīd*, 71  
 -Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Mu'izz, *Zayrīd*, 40  
 Mu'izz-al-dawla Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznawīd*, 289



- Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-'Ulwān Tamāl, *Mu'dāsīd*, 115  
 Mu'izz-al-dawla Abu-l-Hosayn Ahmad, *Buwayhid*, 141; 139-40  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Ismā'il, *Ayyubid*, 98  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Bahrām, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn K. Kubād, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292-4  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Jahandār, *Mogul*, 328  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjar, *Seljuk*, 153; 152, 292  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163  
 Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjēr Shāh, *Zangid*, 163  
 Mujaḥid Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 -Mujaḥid, *Denia*, 26  
 -Mujaḥid 'Alī, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 -Mujaḥid Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101  
 -Mujaḥid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidin, *Muzaffarid*, 250  
 Mujaḥid-al-dīn Kā'imāz, 165  
 Muḥir-al-dīn Abak, *Burid*, 161  
 -Muḥallad, *Oḡaylid*, 117  
 -Mukarram Ahmad, *Ṣulayhid*, 94  
 -Muḥtaḍi, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Muḥtadīr, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Muḥtadīr, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 -Muḥtafi, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Muḥtafi, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Mumahhid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Marwānid*, 118  
 -Mundhir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 -Mundhir, *Tujībīd*, 26  
 -Muntaḥik, Banū-, 116, 119  
 -Muntaṣir, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Muntaṣir, *Marīnid*, 58  
 -Muntaṣir Dāwūd, *Rassīd*, 102  
 -MURABITS, 41-3; 20, 27, 39, 45  
 -Murād, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 254  
 -Murād, *Khāns of Khokand*, 280  
 -Murād (Amurath), *Othmānīd*, 195; 185, 187, 192, 256  
 -Murād-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328  
 -Murād Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 -Murād Shāh Ma'sūm, *Mangit*, 277  
 -Murid Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 -Murtadā, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 -Murtadā, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 -Murtadā Moḥammad, *Rassīd*, 102  
 -Mūsā, *Ayyūbīd*, 77, 78  
 -Mūsā, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 -Mūsā, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 -Mūsā, *Marīnid*, 58  
 -Mūsā Abū-Hammū, *Ziyānīd*, 51  
 -Musharraf-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 -Muslim, *Oḡaylid*, 117  
 -Mustadī, *Abbāsīd*, 13  
 -Muṣṭafā, *Othmānīd*, 195  
 -Musta'in, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Musta'in, *Abbāsīd of Egypt*, 83  
 -Musta'in, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 -Musta'in, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 -Mustakfi, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Mustakfi, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 -Musta'li, Abū-l-Ḳasim Ahmad, *Fātimīd*, 71  
 -Musta'li, *Hammūdīd*, 23  
 -Mustanḡid, *Abbāsīd*, 13, 119  
 -Mustanṣir, *Abbāsīd*, 13  
 -Mustanṣir, *Almohad*, 47  
 -Mustanṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'add, *Fātimīd*, 71  
 -Mustanṣir, *Hofṣīd*, 50  
 -Mustanṣir, *Hammūdīd*, 23  
 -Mustanṣir, *Marīnid*, 58  
 -Mustanṣir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 -Mustarshid, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Musta'sim, *Abbāsīd*, 13  
 -Mustaḡhir, *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 -Mustaḡhir, *Omayyad* (Cordova), 21  
 -Muta'ayyad, *Hammūdīd*, 23  
 -Mu'tadd, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 -Mu'taqīd, *Abbāsīd*, 25  
 -Mu'taqīd, *Abbāsīd*, 12, 111  
 -Mu'tali, *Hammūdīd*, 21, 23  
 -Mutaman, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 -Mutamaṣṣik, *Nasrid*, 28  
 -Mu'tamid, *Abbāsīd*, 25

-Mu'tamid, 'Abbāsīd, 12, 129  
 Mu'tamid-al-dawla Kirwāsh, 'Oḡay-  
 līd, 117  
 -Mu'taṣīm, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Mu'taṣīm, Almohad, 47  
 -Mutawakkil, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Mutawakkil, Imāms of San'a, 103  
 -Mutawakkil, Marīnīd, 58  
 -Mutawakkil, Rassīd Imāms, 102  
 -Mu'tazz, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Muṭī', 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Muttakī, 'Abbāsīd, 12  
 -Muwaffak, 'Abbāsīd, 129  
 -Muwaffak, Hammūdīd, 23  
 MUWAḤḤIDS, 45-7; 27, 39, 43,  
 49  
 -Muẓaffar, 'Amīrīd, 26  
 -Muẓaffar Ghāzī, Ayyūbīd, 78  
 -Muẓaffar 'Omar, Ayyūbīd, 79, 165  
 -Muẓaffar Sulaymān, Ayyūbīd, 98  
 Muẓaffar Shāh, Bengal, 308  
 Muẓaffar Shāh, Gujarāt, 313  
 Muẓaffar Aḥmad, Mamlūk, 83  
 -Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars  
 -Jāshankīr, Mamlūk, 81  
 -Muẓaffar Sayf - al - dīn - Ḥājī,  
 Mamlūk, 81  
 -Muẓaffar Sayf - al - dīn Ḳuṭuz,  
 Mamlūk, 81  
 -Muẓaffar Dāwūd, Ortukīd, 168  
 -Muẓaffar Yūsuf, Lāsūlīd, 99  
 -Muẓaffar, Tojībīd, 26  
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Ūzbeḡ, Atābeg of  
 Adharbijān, 171  
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā, Ayyūbīd, 78  
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkbūrī, Beg-  
 tiginīd, 165  
 Muẓaffar-al-dīn, Mangit, 277  
 MUẒAFFARIDS, 249-50; 179, 219,  
 245  
 NĀDIR, Afshārīd, 259; 257-8,  
 278, 326, 330  
 Nādir Moḥammad, Jānīd, 275  
 Nafīs, 91  
 Najāh, 90, 92

NĀJĀHIDS, 92, 93  
 Najm-al-dīn, Ayyūbīd, 77, 78  
 Najm-al-dīn Alpī, Ortukīd, 168  
 Najm - al - dīn Ghāzī 1 - Sa'id,  
 Ortukīd, 168  
 Najm-al-dīn Īl-Ghāzī, Ortukīd,  
 166-8  
 Najm, Abū-I, Badr, Ḥasanwayhid,  
 138  
 Narbuta, Khokand, 280  
 -Nāṣir, 'Abbāsīd, 13; 7  
 -Nāṣir Hasan, Alīd, 127  
 -Nāṣir, Almohad, 47  
 -Nāṣir Ayyūb, Ayyūbīd, 98  
 -Nāṣir Ṣalāh - al - dīn Dāwūd,  
 Ayyūbīd, 78  
 -Nāṣir Ṣalāh-al-dīn, 77; see Saladin  
 -Nāṣir, Hammūdīd, 40  
 -Nāṣir, Hammūdīd, 21, 23  
 -Nāṣir, Omayyad of Cordova, 21  
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Mamlūk, 81  
 -Nāṣir Faraj, Mamlūk, 83  
 -Nāṣir Hasan, Mamlūk, 81  
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, Mamlūks, 81-3  
 -Nāṣir, Naḡrīd, 28  
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Rassīd Imām, 102  
 -Nāṣir - Daylamī, Rassīd, 102  
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, Rassīd, 102  
 -Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh, Rasūlīd, 99  
 -Nāṣir Aḥmad, Rasūlīd, 99  
 -Nāṣir Moḥammad, San'a, 103  
 Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū - Moḥammad  
 - Ḥasan, Hamdānīd, 111, 112  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Armēnīa, 170  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Bengal, 306  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kājār, 260  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Khokand, 280  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Badr, Ḥasanwayhid,  
 138  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā, Bengal, 306  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Humāyūn, Mogul,  
 329  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Khusrū, Dehlī, 299  
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kubācha, Sind, 294-5  
 Nāṣir - al - dīn Maḥmūd, Bengal,  
 307-8

- Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Ortuḳid*, 168  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Seljuḳ*, 153  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Mogul*, 328  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Naṣrat, *Bengal*, 308  
 Nāsir-al-dīn Ortuḳ-Arslān-Manṣūr *Ortuḳid*, 168  
 Nāsir-dīn-Allāh Mas'ūd, *Ghazna-wid*, 289  
 Nāsir Khān Maḥmūd, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Nāsir Khān, *Khāndēsh*, 315  
 Nāsir Shāh, *Mālwa*, 311  
 Naṣr, *Ilak Khāns*, 135  
 Naṣr, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Naṣr, *Mirdāsids*, 115  
 Naṣr, Abū-l-Juyūsh, *Naṣrid*, 28  
 Naṣr, *Sāmānids*, 132  
 Naṣr, Abū-, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Naṣr-al-dawla Abū Naṣr Aḥmad, *Marwānīd*, 118  
 Naṣr-Allāh, *Mangit*, 277  
 Naṣrat Shāh, *Bengal*, 308  
 Naṣrat Shāh, *Dehli*, 300  
 NAṢRID, 27-29; 46  
 Nazār, *Fātimid*, 71  
 Nikpāy, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Nikū-siyar, *Mogul*, 328 [118]  
 Nizām-al-dawla Naṣr, *Marwānīd*,  
 Nizām-al-mulk, 318  
 Nizām Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 NIZAM SHĀHS, 320; 318  
 Normans, 36, 40, 41, 71, 75  
 Nouredin, 163  
 Nūh, *Sāmānids*, 132; 286  
 Nūr-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Nūr-al-dawla Dubays, *Mazyad*, 119  
 Nūr-dawlat, *Krim*, 236  
 Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Nūr-al-dīn Arslān, *Zangids*, 163  
 Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd (Nouredin), *Zangid*, 163; 74-5  
 Nūr-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ortuḳid*, 168  
 Nūr-al-Ward, *Hazārāspid*, 175  
 Nūshirwān, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Nūrūz Aḥmad, *Shaybānīd*, 271  
 Nūrūz-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 'OBAYD-ALLĀH, *Fātimid*, 70, 71  
 'Obayd-Allāh, *Jānids*, 275  
 'Obayd-Allāh, *Shaybānīd*, 271  
 Ochiali, *Corsair*, 56  
 Ogotāy, *Mongol*, 215; 172, 179, 205, 207-10, 241  
 'OKAYLIDS, 116-117; 115  
 'Omar Abū-Hafṣ -Murtaḍa, *Almohad*, 47 [165]  
 'Omar, Takī-al-dīn, *Ayyūbid*, 79,  
 'Omar Shāh, *Dehli*, 299  
 'Omar, *Dulafid*, 125  
 'Omar Abū-Hafṣ, *Hafṣids*, 50  
 'Omar, *Mangit*, 277  
 'Omar, *Omayyad*, 9  
 'Omar, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9  
 'Omar, *Rasūlids*, 99  
 'Omar, *Zangid*, 163  
 'Omar, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57  
 Omayya, 3  
 OMAYYAD CALIPHS, 3-6, 9, 10, 11, 67  
 OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA, 19-22; 6  
 Orda, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Orgāna Khātun, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Orkhān, 'Othmānī, 195  
 ORTHODOX CALIPHS, 3, 9  
 Ortuḳ, 160, 166  
 Ortuḳ-Arslān, *Ortuḳid*, 168  
 ORTUḲIDS, 166-169  
 'Othmān -Kādī, *Amirid*, 26  
 'Othmān, *Atābeg Adharbijān*, 171  
 'Othmān -'Aziz, *Ayyūbid*, 77  
 'Othmān Abū-'Amr, *Hafṣid*, 50  
 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 'Othmān, *Marinids*, 57  
 'Othmān, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9  
 'Othmān, 'Othmānī, 195  
 'Othmān, *Ziyānids*, 51



'OTHTMANLI or Ottoman SULTĀNS,  
186-197; 4, 49, 55, 56, 67, 84,  
101, 103, 108, 152, 183, 256, 266  
Oways, *Jalayrs*, 246-8

-PAHLAWĀN JAHĀN, *Atābeg of Ad-  
harbijān*, 171

PERSIA, SHĀHS OF, 258-62

Persians, 123, 245

Pir 'Alī, *Kart*, 252

Pir Moḥammad, *Shaybānids*, 271

Pirī, *Ghaznawid*,

Prithwī Rāja, 293

Pülād, *Golden Horde*, 232

Pülād Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230

RABĪ', Abū-l-, *Marinid*, 57

-Rāḍī, *'Abbāsīd*, 12

Rafī' al-darajāt, *Mogul*, 328

Rafī' al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II,  
*Mogul*, 328

-Raḥīm Khusrū Firūz, *Bucayhid*,  
141

Raḥīm, *Khoḡand*, 280

Raḥīm Kulī, *Khiva*, 279

Rāja Kāns, *Bengal*, 307

Rajipeka, *Mongol*, 215

-Rāshīd, *'Abbāsīd*, 12

-Rāshīd, *'Abbāsīd*, 12

-Rāshīd, *Almohad*, 47

-Rāshīd, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61

Rāshīd-al-dawla Maḥmūd, *Mir-  
dāsīd*, 115

-Rāshīdūn, *Khalīfa*, 3

RASSID IMĀMS, 102

RASŪLIDS 99-100; 77

REYES DE TAIPAS, 23-27; 20

Rhodes, Knights of, 56, 188

Ridīya, *Dehlī*, 299; 296

Ridwān, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154

Rintshenpal, *Mongol*, 215

Roger of Sicily, 40

Rukh, Shāh, *Afshārid*, 259

Rukh, Shāh, *Khoḡand*, 280

Rukh, Shāh, *Timūrid*, 267-8

Rukn-al-dawla Abū-'Alī Ḥasan,  
*Bucayhid*, 142

Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd, *Ortūḡid*,  
168

Rukn-al-dīn K-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306

Rukn-al-dīn Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307

Rukn-al-dīn Firūz, *Dehlī*, 299

Rukn-al-dīn Ibrāhīm, *Dehlī*, 299

Rukn-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135

Rukn-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252

Rukn-al-dīn Khōjat-al-Ḥaḡḡ,  
*Kutlugh Khān*, 179

Rukn-al-dīn Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81

Rukn-al-dīn Mōdūd, *Ortūḡid*, 168

Rukn-al-dīn Bargiyārūḡ, *Seljūk*,  
163

Rukn-al-dīn Tughril Beg, *Seljūk*,  
153; 145, 151, 172

Rukn-al-dīn Sultān Shāh, *Seljūk  
of Kirmān*, 153

Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155

Rushd (vezir), *Ziyādīd*, 91

Rustam, *Al-Kuyunlī*, 254

Rustam, *Bucayhid*, 142

SA'ĀDAT GIRĀY, *Krim*, 236, 237

Sabā, *Sulayhid*, 94

Sabā, *Zuray'id*, 97

Sabaktigīn, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 285-6

Sabīḡ Abū-l-Faḡā-il, *Mirdāsīd*,  
115

Sa'd-Musta'in, *Nasrid*, 28

Sa'd, *Salgharid*, 173; 172

Sa'd-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma'ālī Sharīf,  
*Hamdānid*, 112

SA'DA, IMĀMS OF, 102

ŠADAKA Sayf-al-dawla, *Mazyadids*,  
119

Šādīk, *Zand*, 260

Šafā Girāy, *Krim*, 237

ŠAFAVIDS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 259;  
245, 254, 255-7, 268

-Saffāh, *'Abbāsīd*, 12

ŠAFFĀRIDS, 129, 130; 7, 284

Šafī, *Safavid*, 259

Šafwat-al-dīn, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179

- Saghir, *Nagrid*, 28  
 Şahib Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 -Sa'id, *Almohad*, 47  
 Sa'id, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112  
 Sa'id, *Khedive*, 85  
 -Sa'id Baraka Khān, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Sa'id, *Marinid*, 57, 58  
 Sa'id - Abūwal, *Najāhid*, 92  
 -Sa'id Ghāzi, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Sa'id Sultān, *Shaybānid*, 272  
 -Sa'id Shaykh Wat'as, *Wat'asid*, 58  
 Sa'id-al-dawla, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Hazāraspid*, 175  
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220; 218, 249, 251  
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Marinid*, 68  
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Shaybānid*, 271  
 Sa'id, Abū-, *Timūrid*, 268  
 Saladin, 77; 46, 67, 71, 74-5, 165  
 Şalāh-al-dīn Dāwūd, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Şalāh-al-dīn Yūsuf - Nāṣir, *Ayyūbid*, 77; see Saladin  
 Şalāh-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 Sulāmat Girāy, *Krim*, 236-7  
 Salāmish, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Salghar, 160, 172  
 SALGHARIDS, 172, 173  
 -Şālih Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 80  
 -Şālih Ismā'il, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 -Şālih Hajji, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Şālih Ismā'il, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 -Şālih Moḥammad, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 -Şālih Şālih, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Şālih, *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Şālih, *Ortukid*, 168  
 -Şālih, Ismā'il, *Zangid*, 163  
 Sālim, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57  
 Samā-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 SĀMĀNIDS, 131-133; 7, 127, 129  
 -Samīn, *Filālī Sharif*, 61  
 Samṣām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār - Marzubān, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 Samṣām-al-dawla, *Mirdāsīd*, 116  
 ŞAN'Ā, IMĀMS OF, 103  
 Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyadid*, 119  
 Sanhāja Berbers, 39  
 Saphadin, 76-78  
 SAKRADĀRID, 250; 219, 245  
 Sartak, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 SARŪ-KHĀN AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Sasaktu, *Mongol*, 216  
 Sāsānids, 4, 5  
 Sāsibūka, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Sāti-Beg, *Il-Khān*, 220; 219  
 Sattān, *Bucayhid*, 141  
 Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112  
 Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Sayf-al-dīn, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78  
 Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur, *Armen.*, 170  
 Sayf-al-dīn Aybak, *Bengal*, 306  
 Sayf-al-dīn Firūz, *Bengal*, 306  
 Sayf-al-dīn Hamza, *Bengal*, 308  
 Sayf-al-dīn Şūrī, *Ḡhōrid*, 291  
 Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī, *Zangid*, 163  
 Sayf-al-Islām Tuḡtigin, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 98  
 Sayf-al-Islām Tuḡtigin, *Būrid*, 161; 160  
 Sayyid Aḥmad, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Sayyid Moḥammad, *Khiva*, 279  
 Sayyid Sultān, *Khokand*, 280  
 SAYYIDS, 300, 303  
 Selim, *Othmānīs*, 195; 3, 84, 188, 256  
 Selim Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237  
 Seljūk Shāh, *Salgharid*, 173  
 SĒLJŪQS, 149-155; 134, 140, 145, 156, 158-62, 166, 167, 170-2, 176, 183-6, 287-8, 292  
 Setzen, *Mongol*, 216  
 Shu'bān, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Shādī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 -Shadid, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163  
 Shāh-'Alam Bahādūr Shāh, *Mogul*, 328  
 Shāh-'Alam, Jalāl-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328

- Shāh-Jahān, *Kutluğ Khān*, 179  
 Shāh-Jahān, *Moguls*, 328  
 Shāh Rukh, *Afshārid*, 259  
 Shāh Rukh, *Khokand*, 280  
 Shāh Rukh, *Timūrid*, 268  
 Shāh Shujā', *Afghān*, 334  
 Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarid*, 250  
 Shāhin Girāy, *Krim*, 237  
 SHĀHS OF ARMENIA, 170  
 SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 258-262  
 Shajar-al-durr, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 Shams-al-dawla Abū-Tāhir, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 Shams-al-dīn Ildigiz, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171  
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 307  
 Shams-al-dīn Ahmad, *Bengal*, 307  
 Shams-al-dīn Firūz, *Bengal*, 306  
 Shams-al-dīn Ilyās, *Bengal*, 307  
 Shams - al - dīn Moḥammad Sūr Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 308  
 Shams-al-dīn Muḥaffar, *Bengal*, 308  
 Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Bengal*, 307  
 Shams-al-dīn Altamish, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Shams-al-dīn, *Kart*, 282  
 Shams-al-dīn Salih, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Shams-al-dīn, *Rassid Indm*, 102  
 Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Sarbadārīd*, 261  
 Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Siyārid*, 137  
 Shams-al-mulk, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Shams-al-mulūk Ismā'il, *Bārid*, 161  
 Sharaf - al - dawla Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 Sharaf-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muḥim, *Okayid*, 117  
 Sharaf-al-dīn Isā, *Ayyubid*, 78  
 Sharaf-al-dīn, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Sharif Abū-l-Ma'ālī, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Sharif, *Marinid*, 58  
 SHARIFS OF MOROCCO, 60-63  
 SHARḤI KINGS OF JAUNPŪR, 309  
 Shaybān, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 238-240  
 Shaybān, *Tātunid*, 68  
 SHAYBĀNIDS, 269-273; 239, 268, 278, 322  
 Shaykh, *Hasani Sharif*, 61  
 Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 SHEEP, TURKOMĀNS OF THE BLACK AND WHITE, 252-4  
 Shihāb-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Naṣr, *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Shihāb-al-dawla Mōdūd, *Ghasnawid*, 289  
 Shihāb-al-dawla, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Shihāb - al - dīn Bāyazīd, *Bengal*, 307  
 Shihāb-al-dīn Bughrā, *Bengal*, 306  
 Shihāb-al-dīn Mahmūd, *Bārid*, 161  
 Shihāb-al-dīn 'Omar, *Dehlī*, 299  
 Shihāb-al-dīn Moḥammad, *Ghōrid*, 292-4  
 Shī'ites, 37, 70, 102, 112, 124, 140, 149, 256  
 Shīr 'Alī, *Afghān*, 333-4  
 Shīr 'Alī, *Khān of Khokand*, 280  
 Shīr Ghāzi, *Khān of Khiva*, 279  
 Shīr Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Shīr Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300; 294, 305, 322  
 Shīrzād, *Ghasnawid*, 289  
 Shīr Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 Shirān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Shujā' - al - mulk, *Afghān*, 334; 331-3  
 Shujā', *Mogul*, 328  
 Sikandar Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Sikandar Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300  
 Sikandar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 Sinjar, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Sinjar Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Seljuḡ*, 153; 152, 292  
 Sinjar Shāh, *Zangid*, 163  
 SLAVE KINGS OF DEHLI, 299, 301; 294-6  
 Subhān Kulī, *Jānid*, 275  
 Sufyān, *Khira*, 278  
 Sukmān - Kutbt, *Armenia*, 170



- Sukmān Nāsir-al dīn, *Armenia*, 170  
 Sukmān, *Ortukids*, 168 ; 166  
 SULAYHIDS, 94  
 Sulaymān, *Ayyūbids*, 98  
 Sulaymān Karārānī, *Bengal*, 308  
 Sulaymān, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61  
 Sulaymān -Musta'in. *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Sulaymān, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Sulaymān, *Khojand*, 280  
 Sulaymān Abū-l-Rabī', *Marīnid*, 57  
 Sulaymān, *Omayyad*, 9  
 Sulaymān -Musta'in, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21  
 Sulaymān, *Othmānīs*, 195 ; 188-9  
 Sulaymān, *Safavid*, 259  
 Sulaymān, *Seljūks of -Irāk*, 154  
 Sulaymān, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155  
 Sultān, 140, 286 n  
 Sultān-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141  
 Sultān -al-dawla Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 Sultān Hājī, *Khiva*, 278  
 Sultān Sa'īd, *Shaybānid*, 272  
 Sultān Shāh Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 163  
 Sultān Shāh, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154  
 Sunkur, *Salgharid*, 173 ; 172  
 Sūrī, Sayf-al-dīn, *Ghōrid*, 291  
 Su'ūd, Abū-, *Zurayids*, 97  
 Suyūrghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179  
 Suyūrghātmish, *Mongol*, 268 ; 210, 265  
 TAFKAJ Khān, *Īlak Khān*, 135  
 Taghlaq Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300  
 TAGHLAKIDS, 300, 302  
 Taghlib, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Tagir, *Khiva*, 279  
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Hazāraspid*, 175  
 Tāhīr, *Saffarid*, 130  
 Tāhīr Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, *Tāhīrid*, 128 ; 7  
 TĀHIRIDS, 128, 129  
 TĀHIRIDS of the Yaman, 101  
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 Tāhīr, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Tahmāsp, *Saffavids*, 259  
 -Tā'i', *Abbāsīd*, 12  
 Taifas, Reyes de, 23-7  
 Taisong, *Mongol*, 215  
 Tāj-al-dawla Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 Tāj-al-mulūk Būrī, *Būrid*, 161  
 Takī-al-dīn 'Omar, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 165  
 TAKKA AMĪRS, 184-5  
 Takla, *Hazāraspid*, 175  
 Takla, *Salgharid*, 173  
 Tālib, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142  
 Talha, *Tāhīrid*, 128  
 Tālikū, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Tamāl, *Mirdāsīd*, 115  
 Tamar Khān-Kirān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Tamerlane, *see* Timūr  
 Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 25  
 Tamīm, *Zayrid*, 40  
 Tamīm, Abū-, *Fātimids*, 71  
 Tandū, *Jalayr*, 247  
 Tarjumān-al-dīn, *Rassīd*, 102  
 Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 43  
 Tāshfīn, Abū-'Omar, *Marīnid*, 57  
 Tāshfīn, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51  
 Tatar Khān, *Bengal*,  
 Tatār, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Tawfīq, *Khedive*, 85  
 Thābit, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57  
 Thābit, Abū-, *Ziyānids*, 51  
 -Thā'ir, *Alid*, 127  
 Temujin (Chingiz), 202  
 Teval, *Mongol*, 222, 240  
 Timūr (Tamerlane), 265-8 ; 185, 227-8, 242, 247-53, 297, 322  
 Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 TIMURIDS, 265-268 ; 175, 255, 330  
 Timūr Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Timūr Kutlugh, *Golden Horde*, 232  
 Timūr Malik, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Timūr Shāh, *Afghān*, 334  
 Timurtāsh, *Ortukid*, 168  
 Tīnī-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230

Tirmasharīn, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 TIUMEN, CZARS OF, 239  
 TOJIBIDS, 26  
 Töktakya, *Golden Horde*, 231  
 Töktämish Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 231; 225, 227-9, 265  
 Töktü, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Torghūd (Dragut), *Corsair*, 56  
 Töda-Mangū, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Tufghāj 'Imād-al-dawla Ibrāhīm, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Tughā-Timūr, *Il-Khān*, 220, 265  
 Tughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306  
 Tughān Sharaf-al-dīn, *Ilak*, 135  
 Tughān-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215; 213  
 Tughril, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 Tughril Khān, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Tughj, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 Tughril, *Bengal*, 306  
 Tughril, *Seljuks of -Irāk*, 154  
 Tughril Beg, Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljuks*, 153; 145, 151, 172, 287  
 Tughril Shāh Muhyi-al-dīn, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153  
 Tughtigin, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 98  
 Tughtigin Sayf-al-Islām Zahir-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161  
 Tūka-Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Tūka-Timūr, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 233 ff.  
 Tukush, *Khwarizm Shāh*, 177  
 Tūla-Bughā, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 Tūlūn-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230  
 TūLUNIDS, 68; 6  
 Tulūy, *Mongol*, 205, 211-217  
 Tūmān-Bey, *Mamluk*, 83  
 Turakina, *Mongol*, 215  
 Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbid*, 74, 77, 78, 98  
 Tūrān Shāh, *Seljuks of Kirmān*, 153  
 TURKISTĀN, KHĀNS OF, 134-5  
 Turkomāns, 245-7, 253-4  
 Turks, 7, 49, 150 ff., 159  
 Tutush, *Seljuks of Syria*, 154; 160, 162, 166

'UDDAT-al-dawla Abū - Taghlib  
 -Ghādānūr, *Hamdānid*, 112  
 Ukektu, *Mongol*, 216  
 'Ulā, Abū-l-, *Almohad*, 47  
 Uljai-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215  
 'Uljai-tū, *Mongol*, 215  
 Uljai-tū, *Il-Khān of Persia*, 220  
 Ulugh Beg, *Timūrid*, 268  
 Ulugh Moḥammad, *Kazan*, 334-5  
 Ulāj 'Alī (Ochiali), *Corsair*, 56  
 Ūngūr Abū-l-Kāsim, *Ikhshidid*, 69  
 Urang Timūr, *Krim*, 233  
 Urūj Barbarossa, 55  
 Ūrās, *Golden Horde*, 231; 227, 229  
 Ussukhal, *Mongol*, 215  
 Ūzbek, Muḥaffar-al-dīn, *Atābeg of Adharbijān*, 171  
 Ūzbek, *Golden Horde*, 230; 238  
 Uzun Ḥasan, *Ak-Kuyunlū*, 253-5  
 Wājīh-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 Walad, Shāh, *Jalayr*, 247-8  
 Walī-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Wālī Moḥammad, *Jānid*, 275  
 Walid, *Hasanī Sharif*, 61  
 -Walid, *Omayyad*, 9  
 Washmagir Zahir-al-dawla, *Zayyārid*, 137  
 WAT'ASIDS, 58  
 -Wāthik, *Abbāsid*, 12  
 -Wāthik Abū-l-'Ulā, *Almohad*, 47  
 -Wāthik, *Hamūdīd*, 25  
 -Wāthik, *Marīnid*, 58  
 WHITE HORDE, 231; 226  
 YADIGHĀR, *Khiva*, 279  
 YA'FURIDS, 90, 91  
 Yaghi (or Ya'kūb) Arslān, *Dānishmandid*, 156  
 Yagmorasan, *Zayyānid*, 51  
 Yahyā - Mu'tasim, *Almohad*, 47  
 Yahyā - Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26  
 Yahyā - Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26



- Yahyā Abū-Zakaryā, *Hafsid*, 60  
 Yahyā, *Hammādid*, 40  
 Yahya - Mu'tali, *Hammādid*, 21, 23  
 Yahyā, *Idrisid*, 35  
 Yahyā Shāh, *Muḥaffarid*, 248  
 Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 Yahyā, *Sarbadārid*, 261  
 Yahyā - Muḥaffar, *Tajidid*, 26  
 Yahyā, *Zayrid*, 40  
 Yahyā, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 60  
 Yahyā, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57  
 Ya'kūb, *Afghān*, 334  
 Ya'kūb, *Al-Kuyunlū*, 254  
 Ya'kūb Abū - Yūsuf - Maṣṣūr, *Almohad*, 47  
 Ya'kūb, Abū Yūsuf, *Marinid*, 57  
 Ya'kūb, *Marinid*, 58  
 Ya'kūb b. - Layth, *Ṣaffarid*, 128-130; 284  
 Ya'kūb, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47  
 Yamin-al-dawla, see Mahmūd and Bahrām, *Ghaznavid* [274]  
 Yār Moḥammad, *Shaybānid*, 272;  
 - Yazid, *Filālī Sharif*, 61  
 Yazid, *Omāyyad*, 9  
 Yazid b. Hātim, 34, 36  
 Yildiz, 294-5  
 Yissugāy, 202  
 Yisūnbughā, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Yisū Mangū, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242  
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215  
 YUEN, 213  
 Yūluḡ-Arlān, *Ortūkid*, 168  
 Yūsuf, *Adil Shāh*, 317, 321  
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Almohad*, 47  
 Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, *Almoravid*, 42, 43  
 Yūsuf, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78, 98  
 Yūsuf Zayn-al-dīn, *Bektiginid*, 165  
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Bengal*, 307  
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Hazraspid*, 175  
 Yūsuf - Mu'taman, *Hūdīd*, 26  
 Yūsuf, *Ilak Khān*, 135  
 Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Marinid*, 57  
 Yūsuf - Nāṣir, *Nayrid*, 28  
 - Yūsuf-Dā'i, *Rasūlid*, 102, 103  
 Yūsuf, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 Yūsuf Bulukkin, *Zayrid*, 40  
 Yūsuf, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47  
 Yūsuf, Abū, *Marinid*, 57  
 Yūzbak, *Bengal*, 306  
 ZAFAR KHĀN, *Bahmanid*, 318  
 Zafar Khān, *Gujarāt*, 313  
 - Zāfir, *Dhul-Nānid*, 25  
 - Zāfir Abū-l-Manṣūr Ismā'il, *Fāṭimid*, 71  
 - Zāfir Ṣalāh-al-dīn 'Amir, *Ṭahirid* (Yaman), 101  
 Zaghal, *Nayrid*, 28  
 - Zāhir, *Abbāsid*, 13  
 - Zāhir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Ayyūbid*, 78  
 - Zāhir Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī, *Fāṭimid*, 71  
 Zāhir, *Hasanwayhid*, 138  
 - Zāhir Barkūk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83  
 - Zāhir Baybars - Bundukdārī, *Mamlūk*, 81  
 - Zāhir Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir Jaḥmaḡ, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir Kānsūh, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir Khūshkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir Tatār, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83  
 - Zāhir, *Ortūkid*, 168  
 - Zāhir, Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99  
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ghaznavid*, 289  
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ziyārid*, 137  
 Zāhir-al-dīn Ibrahim, *Armenia*, 170  
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Kākwayhid*, 145  
 Zāhir-al-dīn see Bābar  
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251  
 - Zāim Abū-Thābit, *Ziyārid*, 61  
 Za'im - al - dawla Abū - Kāmil Baraka, *Okaylid*, 117  
 Zakaryā Abū-Yahyā, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Zakaryā, Abū-, *Hafsid*, 50  
 Zaman Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 331

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ZANDS(SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 260; 258         | Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, <i>Begtinid</i> , 165 |
| Zangī, <i>Salgharid</i> , 173            | ZAYRIDS (Granada), 25                    |
| Zangī, <i>Zangids</i> , 163              | ZAYRIDS (Tunis), 39, 40, 41, 43          |
| ZANGIDS, Atābegs, 162-4; 74-5,           | Ziyād, <i>Ziyādid</i> , 91               |
| 160, 165                                 | Ziyādat-Allāh, <i>Aghlabids</i> , 37     |
| Zāwī, <i>Zayrid</i> , 25                 | ZIYĀDIDS, 89, 90, 91                     |
| Zaydān, <i>Hasanī Sharīf</i> ,           | Ziyān, Abū-, <i>Marinid</i> , 57         |
| Zaydites, 102, 127                       | Ziyān, Abū-, <i>Ziyānids</i> , 51        |
| Zayn-al-'Ābidīn, <i>Muẓaffarid</i> , 250 | ZIYĀNIDS, 51; 46, 57                     |
| Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk, <i>Beg-</i>     | ZIYĀRIDS, 136, 137                       |
| <i>iginid</i> , 165                      | ZURAY'IDS, 97                            |

THE END



*BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE*

- The Life of Edward William Lane.** 8vo, pp. 138. Williams and Norgate. 1877.
- The People of Turkey.** By a Consul's Daughter. Edited. Two vols. 8vo, pp. xxii, 281; x, 352. Murray. 1878.
- Lane's Selections from the Kuran.** Edited with Introduction. 8vo. Frontispiece. pp. cxii, 173, 2. Trübner's Oriental Series. 1879.
- Egypt.** Illustrated. Fcp. 8vo, pp. xii, 200. Sampson Low. 1881.
- The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad.** 18mo, pp. lxiii, 196. Macmillan's Golden Treasury Series. 1882; reissue, 1893.
- Le Koran, sa Poésie et ses Lois.** 24mo, pp. vi, 112. Leroux. 1882.
- Studies in a Mosque.** 1883. *Second Edition.* 8vo, pp. viii, 326. Remington. 1893.
- Arabian Society in the Middle Ages.** Edited. 8vo, pp. xvi, 283. Chatto. 1883.
- Pictureque Palestine, Sinai, and Egypt.** Vol. IV.—Egypt. 4to, pp. 121-234. Illustrated. Virtue. 1883.
- Social Life in Egypt: a Description of the Country and its People.** (Supplement to *Pictureque Palestine*.) 4to. Illustrated. pp. vi, 138. Virtue. 1883.
- Selections from the Prose Writings of Jonathan Swift.** Portrait. Preface, and Notes. 8vo, pp. xxx, 284. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1884.
- Notes for a Bibliography of Swift.** 8vo, pp. 36. Elliot Stock. 1884.
- Letters and Journals of Jonathan Swift.** With Commentary and Notes. 8vo, pp. xv, 292. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1885.
- The Life of General F. R. Chesney, R.A.** By his Wife and Daughter. Edited, with Preface. Portrait. 8vo, pp. xxiii, 279. Allen. 1885; reissue, 1893.
- The Art of the Saracens in Egypt.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 264. Published for the Committee of Council on Education by Chapman and Hall. 1886.
- The Moors in Spain.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xi, 285. Unwin. 1887.
- Turkey.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xiz, 373. Unwin. 1888.
- The Life of the Rt. Hon. Stratford Canning, Viscount Stratford de Redcliffe, K.G.** From his Memoirs and Papers. Three Portraits. Library Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, pp. xxix, 519; xviii, 475. Longmans. 1888.
- Popular Edition.* pp. xi, 377. Longmans. 1890.
- Thirty Years of Colonial Government.** From Papers of the Rt. Hon. Sir G. F. Bowen, G.C.M.G. Portrait. 2 vols. pp. viii, 450; viii, 467. Longmans. 1889.
- The Barbary Corsairs.** Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 316. Unwin. 1890.
- Sir Richard Church, C.B., G.C.H., Commander-in-Chief of the Greeks in the War of Independence.** With two Plans. 8vo, pp. iv, 73. Longmans. 1890.
- Stories from the Arabian Nights.** 16mo. 3 vols. pp. vii, 318, 317, 346. Six Illustrations. Putnam. 1891.
- The History of the Moghul Emperors illustrated by their Coins.** pp. cixxvii. Constable. 1892.

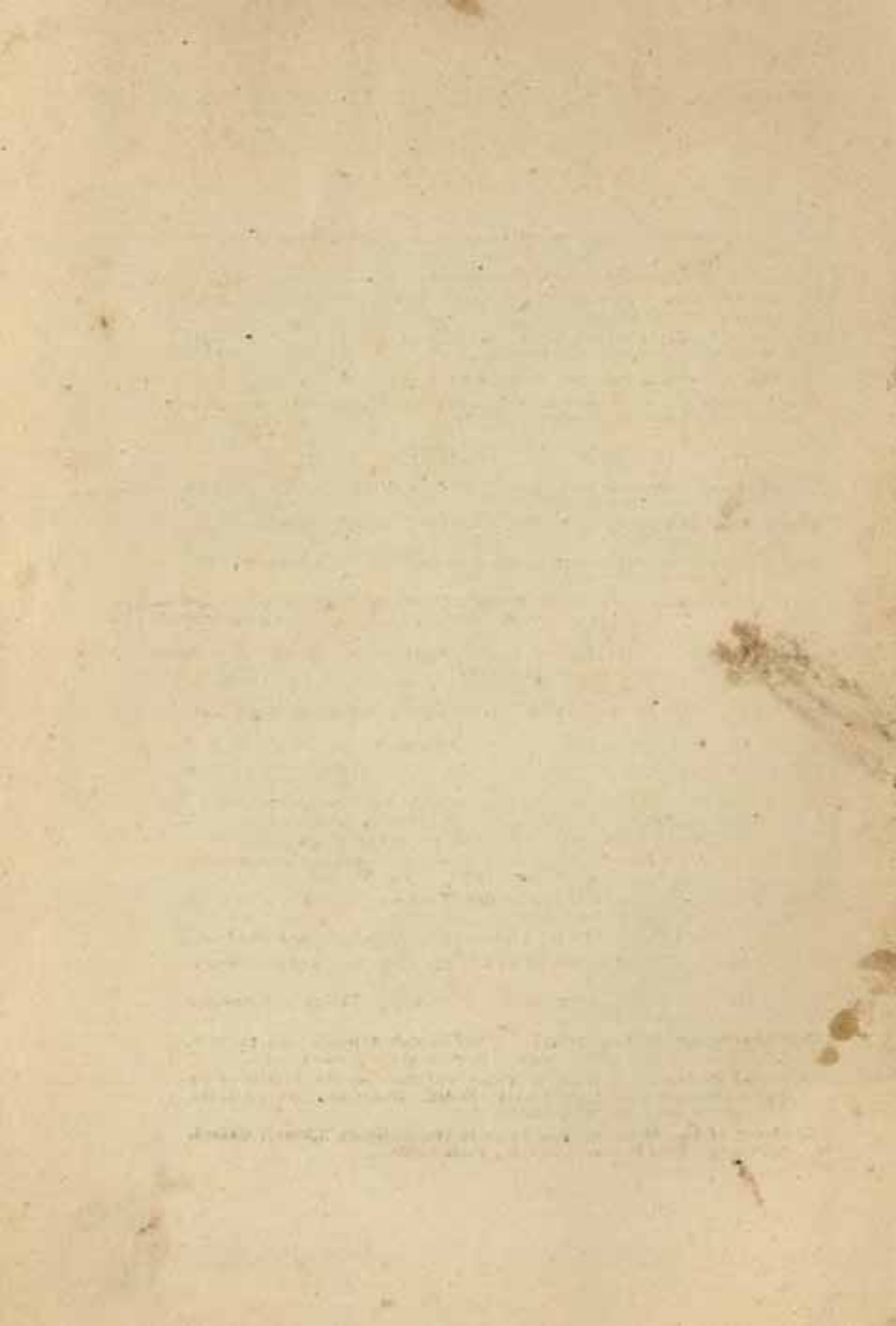
BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

- Cairo: Sketches of its History, Monuments, and Social Life. Numerous Illustrations. 8vo, pp. xiv, 320. Virtue, 1892.
- Aurangzeb. Rulers of India Series. 8vo, pp. 212. Clarendon Press. 1893.
- The Mohammadan Dynasties: Chronological and Genealogical Tables. 8vo, pp. xxviii, 361. Constable. 1893.
- The Life of Sir Harry Parkes, K.C.B., late H.M. Minister in Japan and China. 2 vols. 8vo. Macmillan. *In the Press*.
- The Life of Saladin. Putnam. *In preparation*.
- Lane's Arabic-English Lexicon. Vols. 6-8. Imp. 4to, pp. xxxix, 2221-3064. Edited. Williams and Norgate. 1877-1893.

NUMISMATIC WORKS

- Catalogue of the Guthrie Collection of Oriental Coins. pp. viii, 38. Five Autotype Plates. Austin. 1874.
- International Numismata Orientalia. Part II.—Coins of the Turkumans. 4to, pp. xii, 44. Six Plates. Trübner. 1875.
- Essays in Oriental Numismatics. First, Second, and Third Series. Plates. 8vo. 3 vols. 1874, 1877, 1892.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 10 vols. (Ouvrage couronné par l'Institut de France, 1881.)
- Vol. I. THE KHALIFS. pp. xx, 263. Eight Autotype Plates. 1875.
- II. MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES. pp. xii, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1876.
- III. THE TURKUMANS. pp. xxvi, 305. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1877.
- IV. EGYPT. pp. xxx, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1879.
- V. THE MOORS and ARABIA. pp. lii, 173. Seven Autotype Plates. 1880.
- VI. THE MONGOLS. pp. lxxv, 300. Nine Autotype Plates. 1881.
- VII. BUKHARA. pp. xlviii, 131. Five Autotype Plates. 1882.
- VIII. THE TURKS. pp. li, 431. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1883.
- IX., X. ADDITIONS: 1875-1889. 2 vols. pp. 420, 460. Twenty Autotype Plates, and General Index. 1889, 1890.
- Catalogue of Indian Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 3 vols.
- Vol. I. SULTANS of DEHLI. pp. xiv, 199. Nine Autotype Plates. 1884.
- II. MOHAMMADAN STATES. pp. lxxx, 239. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1885.
- III. MOGHUL EMPERORS. pp. cliii, 401. Thirty-three Autotype Plates. 1892.
- Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights in the British Museum. 8vo, pp. xxxv, 127. Nine Autotype Plates. Printed by order of the Trustees. 1891.
- Coins and Medals: their Place in History and Art. By the Authors of the British Museum Official Catalogues. Edited. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. x, 286. Elliot Stock, 1885. *Second Edition*. 1892.
- Catalogue of the Mohammadan Coins in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. pp. xvi, 55. Four Plates. Clarendon Press. 1888.







ci

Col  
N 29/13/76

N.º

